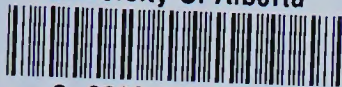


University Of Alberta



0 0003 06083 50

ASIA WITH FOCUS ON SOUTHEAST ASIA



CURRICULUM

A STUDY IN DEPTH

GEOGRAPHY • HISTORY • CULTURE • ECONOMICS • GOVERNMENT



Ex libris
UNIVERSITATIS
ALBERTAENSIS



ASIA WITH FOCUS ON
SOUTHEAST ASIA



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2020 with funding from
University of Alberta Libraries

ASIA WITH FOCUS ON SOUTHEAST ASIA

WILLIAM A. WITHINGTON

MARGARET FISHER HERTEL

Dr. William A. Withington is known internationally as a geographer and as an author of geographical articles on Southeast Asia. He is Associate Professor of Geography at the University of Kentucky. Dr. Withington has spent two years in research and teaching in Sumatra, and has traveled extensively in Southeast Asia. He is a member of the Association of American Geographers and the Association of Asian Studies. Mrs. Hertel is an author and editor of textbooks. She has also traveled extensively in Asia. As a former teacher, she is keenly aware of the needs and interests of elementary and secondary school students. Together, Dr. Withington and Mrs. Hertel have described Asia and Southeast Asia in a vivid and comprehensive manner that students can easily understand.

Copyright, 1964, 1966, by The Fideler Company.
All rights reserved in the U.S.A. and foreign countries. This book or parts
thereof must not be reproduced in any form without permission.
Printed in the U.S.A. by offset lithography.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CATALOG CARD NUMBER: 66-16533

EDITORS AND ADVISORS

Curriculum Editor
Manuscript Editors

Raymond E. Fideler
Wayne M. McDowell
Joyce Ann Kortes
Betty O'Connor
Juanita G. Seifer
Marion Smith
Elaine Thompson

Picture Editor
Index Editor
Art Editor
Map Editors

Ruth Moen
Mary Mitus
Alan Adsmond
James K. Davis
Patricia Guikema

Geographical Editors

Herold J. Wiens
Department of Geography
Yale University

L. A. Peter Gosling
Department of Geography
University of Michigan

Waldo R. Tobler
Department of Geography
University of Michigan

G. Etzel Pearcy
The Geographer
U.S. Department of State

DEPTH-STUDY TEXTBOOKS

EUROPE With Focus on GERMANY

ASIA With Focus on CHINA

ASIA With Focus on SOUTHEAST ASIA

AFRICA • CARIBBEAN LANDS • CHINA • INDIA • JAPAN

SOUTH AMERICA • SOUTHEAST ASIA • SOVIET UNION

ASIA WITH FOCUS ON SOUTHEAST ASIA



William A. Withington and Margaret Fisher Hertel

THE FIDELER COMPANY

GRAND RAPIDS

TORONTO

CONTENTS

To the Student	7
----------------------	---

Part 1 Asia

1 A Global View of Asia	10
A Continent of Contrasts	23
2 Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia	26
3 Soviet Asia	33
4 Southwest Asia	39
5 South Asia	49
6 East Asia	60
7 A Part of the Underdeveloped World	74
Asia's Contributions to the World	84

Part 2 Southeast Asia

An Overview of Southeast Asia	88
8 Land	92
9 Climate	106
10 History	114
11 People	132
12 Agriculture	143
13 Fishing	154
14 Natural Resources	159
15 Crafts and Industry	170
16 Transportation and Communication	179
17 Festivals and Recreation	188
18 Arts	195

Part 3 Countries of Southeast Asia

19 Indonesia	204
20 The Philippines	212
21 Burma	221
22 Thailand	227
23 Cambodia	234
24 Vietnam	241
25 Laos	252
26 Malaysia	257
The Eleven Malayan States	262
Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei	268
27 Singapore	271
Learning Map Skills	274
Glossary	280
Appendix	295
Index	299

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY
OF ALBERTA

Ann. Lab.

LIST OF MAPS

Part 1—Asia

A Global View of North America and Asia	10
A Global View of Eurasia and Africa	11
Asia	12 and 13
World Population Distribution	16 and 17
Asia in 1910	19
Communist and Non-Communist Nations	21
Land Regions of Asia	24 and 25
Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia	27
World Average Annual Precipitation	30 and 31
Soviet Asia	34
Political Divisions of Southwest Asia	40
Geographical Divisions of Southwest Asia	43
South Asia	50
East Asia	61
China Regions	66
World Food Consumption	78 and 79
Extent of World's Major Religions	85

Part 2—Southeast Asia

Political Relief	90 and 91
Geographical Divisions	93
Land Bridges	98
Temperature Graph	107
Exploring Climate With Maps	109
Migrations	114
Trade Routes About 1500	119
Exploring History With Maps	124
Cities	136
Exploring Population With Maps	138
Exploring Agriculture With Maps	149
Mineral Resources	160
Industries	173
Main Roads	182
Railroads	185
Main Airways	186

Part 3—Countries of Southeast Asia

Main Islands of Indonesia	206
The Philippines	215
Regions of Burma	221
Regions of Thailand	227
Cambodia	234
Vietnam	241
Laos	252
The Eleven Malayan States	262
The Island of Borneo	268
Singapore	271

2039245

EDITORIAL AND MAP ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Grateful acknowledgment is made to Scott, Foresman and Company for the pronunciation system used in this book, which is taken from the *Thorndike-Barnhart Dictionary Series*.

Grateful acknowledgment is made to the following for permission to use cartographic data in this book: McGraw-Hill Book Company: Pages 16, 17, 30, and 31; Nystrom Raised Relief Map Company, Chicago, Illinois 60618: Pages 24, 25, 27, 40, 43, 50, and 61; Panoramic Studios: Pages 10 and 11; Rand McNally & Company: Pages 78 and 79 from *The Earth and You* by Norman J. G. Pounds; page 85 and the homolographic maps on page 277 from *Goode's World Atlas*; U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of Census: Adapted map on page 278.

PICTURE ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Grateful acknowledgment is made to the following for permission to use the illustrations found in this book: Alfred Palmer: Pages 99, 111, 133, 137, 140 (lower), 146 (lower), 155, 162, 175 (lower), 178, 180, 182, 184, 192 (lower), 196, 199, 200, 212, 228, 232, and 233; Almasy — Paris, France: Pages 92, 94, 97, 103, 104, 105, 121, 135 (lower), 141, 151, 161, 183, 195, 219, 236, 237, 240, 242, 246, and 265; Annan Photo Features: Page 101 (upper); Arabian American Oil Company: Page 44 (upper); Bernadine Bailey: Pages 71 and 72; British Information Services: Page 266 (upper); Cash — London, England: Pages 20, 38, 39, 45, 46 (both), 50, 52 (lower), 55 (both), 56, 59, 70 (both), 181, 187, 263, and 272; Consulate General of Japan: Page 69; Cover: Designed by Barb M. Roys and painted by Janet Johnson; C. S. Wong — Bangkok, Thailand: Page 110; Devaney, Inc.: Pages 15, 60, and 81; Eastfoto: Pages 27, 29 (lower), 32, 36 (upper), 66, 82, 250, and 251; East-West Photographic Agency: Page 65; Embassy of Cambodia: Pages 118 and 197; Embassy of Malaysia: Pages 117, 258, and 260; Embassy of South Vietnam: Page 189 (lower); Embassy of South Vietnam — Manila, Philippines: Pages 171 and 203 (lower); Embassy of the U.S.S.R.: Page 37 (upper); Galloway: Pages 14, 26, 28, 29 (upper), and 75; Government of India Information Services: Pages 53 and 84 (lower); Harrison Forman: Pages 18 and 267; Information Office of Indonesia: Pages 100 (upper), 130 (lower), and 202; Information Services of the Federation of Malaya: Page 266 (lower); Israel Office of Information: Page 47; Jeffery R. D. Crockett: Page 261; K.L.M. Royal Dutch Airlines — The Hague, Netherlands: Pages 198 and 205; L. A. Peter Gosling: Pages 96, 157, and 164; Le anh Tai — Saigon, South Vietnam: Pages 95, 129, 146 (upper), 244, 247, and 248; Magnum Photos, Inc.: Page 67 (upper); pages 67 (lower) and 224 by Cartier-Bresson; page 77 by Glinn; page 62 by Riboud; Malaysian Information Service: Page 259; Ministry of Culture — Singapore: Page 257; Nguyen Cao Dam — Saigon, South Vietnam: Pages 169 and 189 (upper); Orient Travel and Hotel Review — Manila, Philippines: Pages 152, 153, 188, and 217; Peabody Museum of Salem: Page 63; Peter Hickman: Pages 23 (lower), 191, 235, and 254; Philippine Tourist and Travel Association, Inc.: Pages 113, 125, and 218; Photo Researchers, Inc.: Pages 112, 132, and 159; pages 49 and 58 (lower) by Ayer; pages 22 and 176 by Dinkins; pages 37 (lower), 48, 57, and 115 by Holton; pages 139 and 190 by J. Bucher; pages 100 (lower), 213, 253 (upper), and 273 by Krainin; page 41 by Smith; page 42 by Teuffen; pages 54, 87, 116, 122, 147, and 238 by V. Bucher; page 58 (upper) by Von Meiss; pages 194 and 249 by Werle; Pix, Inc.: Page 74 by Breitenbach; Popper — London, England: Page 179; Rapho-Guillumette: Page 256; R. Bunnag — Bangkok, Thailand: Pages 108, 140 (upper), 142, 154, 166, 167, 168, 177, 185, and 186; Roberts: Pages 3, 9, 40, 64, 84 (upper), 126, 128, 172, 203 (upper), 208, and 220; Roger and Gloria Slykhouse: Page 44 (lower); Shell — London, England: Page 101 (lower); Sovfoto: Page 35; Tass — Moscow, U.S.S.R.: Pages 23 (upper), 33, and 36 (lower); The Tin Industry Board — Ipoh, Malaya: Page 163 (both); Three Lions: Pages 106, 135 (upper), 143, 145, 150 (upper), 170, 175 (upper), 201 (both), 216, 223, 225, 229, 230, and 264; page 144 by Evans; pages 150 (lower), 174, 207, 211, 269, and 270 by Horace Bristol; Tourist Organization of Thailand: Page 231; Trans World Airlines, Inc.: Page 51; United Nations: Pages 83, 102, 130 (upper), 134, 148, 156, 158, 165, 192 (upper), 193, 222, 226, and 253 (lower); United States Army Photograph: Pages 123 and 127.

TO THE STUDENT

Why geography is important to you.

There are two ways of living. A person can live in ignorance, never quite understanding why things happen to him. The same person can find out what is really going on around him and see what he can do about it. If he chooses the second way to live, he probably will find life to be more interesting. Also, he probably will be able to determine the course of his life more effectively.

A knowledge of geography is one of the things that can help you live this second way. It will help you to have a better understanding of the world events that influence your life. With this knowledge, you will be able to make better decisions about many things. For example, at times of national and state elections, you will be able to listen to the speeches of different candidates more intelligently and decide which men have the best understanding of world problems, needed for wise leadership.

The problem-solving method is the best way of studying geography. Since you have a serious reason for wanting to understand the important geographic concepts that influence your life, you need to use the best possible study method. You could just read a geography book and memorize answers for a test, but if you did so, you would probably forget much of the information soon after the test was over. Therefore, we suggest a better way of gaining an understanding of geographic concepts. This is the problem-solving method. In using it, you will need to follow these steps:

Step one. Do some general background reading about a continent, country, or region you want to explore.

Step two. Choose a really important, interesting problem that you would like to solve about this continent, country, or region. (Note the sample problems on page 8.) Write it down so that you will have clearly in mind what you want to find out. If there are smaller problems that need to be solved in order to solve your big problem, list them, too.

Step three. Carefully think about what the possible solutions to your problem might be and write them down. We call possible solutions like these "educated guesses," or hypotheses. You will try to solve your problem by proving that these hypotheses are true or false.

Step four. List all the different places where you might find information to prove or disprove your hypotheses. Now begin your research. Keep notes of the information that is related to your hypotheses. If the information in different books conflicts, check further and try to decide which book is correct.

Step five. Carefully study your notes. Have you proved or disproved your hypotheses? What new facts have you learned? Do you need to do further research? Remember that when you started out on this project you were on a search for truth. Do you think you found it? If so, write a clear, interesting report about your research project. You may decide to illustrate it with maps, pictures, or drawings, which will help other people share the things that you have come to understand.

The problem-solving method can help you in two ways. The problem-solving method can help you gain a better understanding of the important geographic concepts that influence your life. It can also help you in another way. By using it, you will learn a way of dealing with problems that will help you throughout life. Most successful scientists, businessmen, and government leaders use a careful, systematic method of solving their problems. This helps to explain their success.

Where you can find information for solving your problems about Asia. When you use the problem-solving method, you need all the information you can find to arrive at a correct solution. Listed below are some of the places where you can find information about Asia. Perhaps you can think of others.

... This Depth-Study Textbook contains four sources of information: pictures, maps, chapter text, and glossary. To locate the specific information you want, you may use the Table of Contents, the List of Maps, and the Index.

... Many traditional geography books contain chapters about Asia. These will give you a preview of Asia, which will help prepare you to do deeper research on special problems about this continent.

... Newspapers and magazines frequently contain articles about Asia. It would be helpful if you began to keep a scrapbook or clipping file of these articles.

... Your school and community libraries contain many good sources of information such as encyclopedias, almanacs, atlases, and yearbooks. The Readers' Guide and the library card catalog will help you find magazine articles and books about the subject you are investigating. Ask your

librarian to show you or your class how to use these reference guides. Guard against using out-of-date information.

... Other sources of information are museums, and people in your community who have been to Asia.

Sample problems to solve. You may choose between investigating problems about Asia as a whole, or about one region or country on this continent. The following sample problems are about the region of Southeast Asia:

1. Since World War II, Southeast Asia has been one of the world's most troubled areas. Why has there been so much unrest in this region? The following questions suggest hypotheses to consider in solving this problem:
 - a. How does Southeast Asia's past help to explain why it is a troubled region today?
 - b. How does lack of industry and transportation facilities contribute to the unrest in this region?
 - c. What part does Communist intervention play?
2. Southeast Asia is a region of islands and peninsulas, located between the mainland of Asia and the continent of Australia. How is Southeast Asia affected by its location? In making hypotheses, you will want to consider how location has affected or is now affecting the following:
 - a. Southeast Asia's climate
 - b. its importance in world trade
 - c. its relations with the neighboring countries of India and China



PART 1 — ASIA





1 A Global View of Asia

Problems To Solve

1. Your life is directly influenced by events that take place in Asia. For example, members of your family may be fighting in the Asian country of South Vietnam. **Why is Asia of such special importance to the United States?** In forming hypotheses about this problem, you will want to consider the following:
 - a. the size and location of Asia
 - b. the size of Asia's population
 - c. the natural resources of Asia
2. The vast majority of people in Asia are very poor. This is also the case in Africa and Latin America. In all of these areas, the people are becoming impatient with their poverty and are demanding a better way of life. **What results is this "revolution of rising expectations" having in Asia?**
 - a. How is this revolution affecting governmental stability in the countries of Asia?
 - b. What role is this revolution playing in the Cold War?

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.



If you could view the earth from a space station, you would notice that its curved surface is covered mainly with water. Lying like enormous islands in the water are several great masses of land. By far the largest of these masses is Eurasia, which is located on the opposite side of the earth from North America.

Eurasia is divided into two main parts. Long ago, the people in the westernmost part of this land mass developed a civilization that differed greatly from the civilizations in the eastern part. As time went on, the western part of Eurasia came to be called Europe. The rest of this land mass came to be known as Asia,

or the East. Geographers today generally agree that Europe and Asia are divided by an imaginary line that extends from the Caspian Sea northward along the Ural Mountains to the Arctic Ocean. To the south, Europe and Asia are separated by the Caucasus Mountains and by the Black and Aegean seas. (See map on pages 12 and 13.)

The world's largest continent. Asia is larger than any of the other continents on the earth. It extends from below the equator to above the Arctic Circle, and stretches nearly halfway around the world. About one third of the total land



NORTH AMERICA

GREENLAND

ATLANTIC OCEAN

ICELAND

BERING STRAIT

NORTH POLE

Permanent Ice Pack

ARCTIC OCEAN

SIBERIA

EUROPE

ASIA

MONGOLIAN PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC

GOBI

URALS

CAUCASUS MTS

BLACK SEA

EGEAN SEA

LEBANON SYRIA IRAQ JORDAN

JAPAN

KOREA

SEA OF OKHOTSK

SEA OF JAPAN

SEA OF OKHOTSK

SEA OF JAPAN

SEA OF OKHOTSK

SEA OF JAPAN

SEA OF OKHOTSK





ASIA

Scale of Miles
0 100 200 400 600 800

⊗ National Capitals • Other Cities

Shading from green through yellow, brown, and red indicates increase in altitude. Figures show approximate altitude in feet for corresponding color.

Altitude (ft.)	Color Description
10,000	Dark Red
5,000	Red
2,000	Yellow
1,000	Light Green
500	Dark Green

COPYRIGHT BY
RAND MC NALLY & CO.
MADE IN U.S.A.

surface of the globe is included in this giant continent. The map on pages 12 and 13 shows that there are many different countries in Asia. Some are large and some are very small.

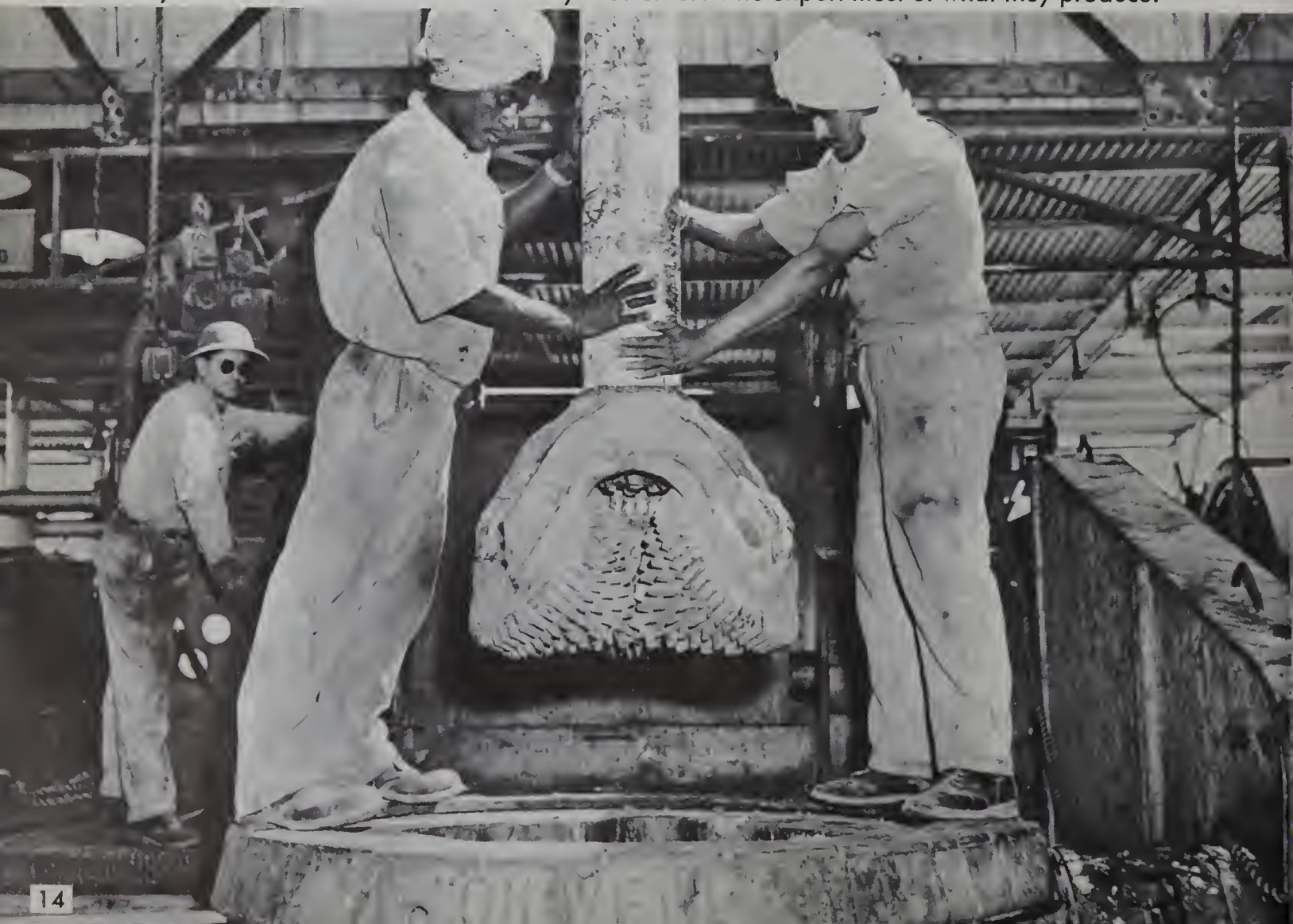
All of the earth's continents except South America and Antarctica are near Asia at some point. Besides bordering Europe, Asia is a close neighbor of Africa. In the northeast, the mainland of Asia is separated by only about fifty miles of water from the North American mainland. In the southeast, islands lead like stepping-stones to the continent of Australia.

A continent of poorly used riches. Some parts of Asia are endowed with vast natural wealth. Almost one half of the earth's

coal and an even larger part of its petroleum reserves are located on this continent. More than half the tin and tungsten mined in the world each year comes from Asia. In addition, Asia has more than one fourth of the world's forest land and many rushing rivers that could be used to produce hydroelectricity. Much of the continent is too mountainous, cold, or infertile for farming, but there are good farmlands here also.

Although there are many natural resources in Asia, most of the countries here are very poor. The people of these countries have not utilized their resources as well as they could to achieve a high standard of living. Chapter 7 discusses some of the reasons for this problem.

Drilling for oil in Saudi Arabia. Asia has huge reserves of oil, coal, and waterpower, but these riches are not evenly distributed. Much of Asia's natural wealth is still unused. Many mines and oil fields here are run by Westerners who export most of what they produce.





A crowded waterway in Hong Kong. About six tenths of the world's people live in Asia. Most of this vast number of people are crowded into South and East Asia, where the climate and land are good for crops. Asia also has dry, cold, or rugged areas that are very thinly populated.

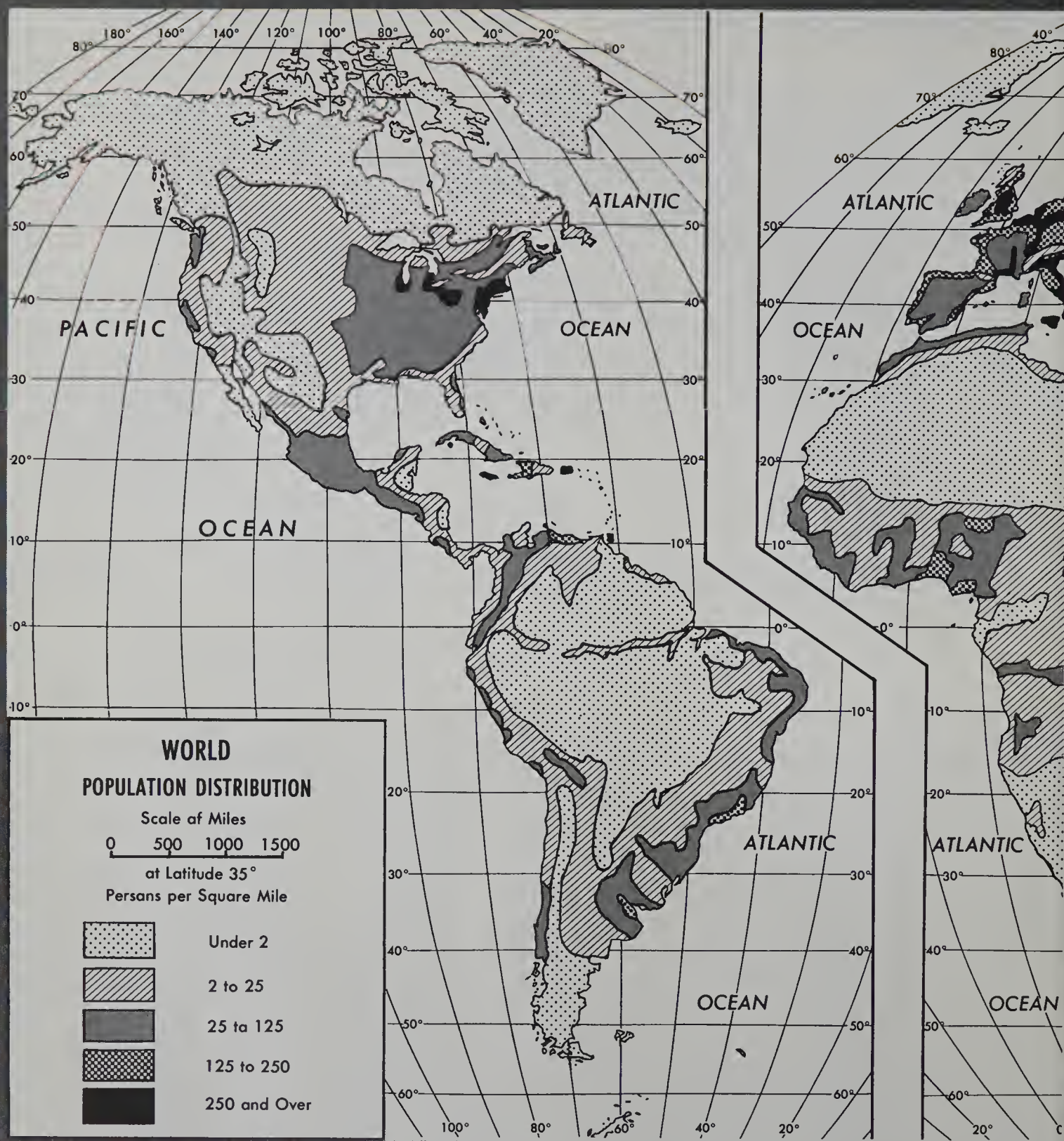
The home of about six tenths of the world's people. In a continent so large and as rich in natural resources as Asia, you would expect to find many people. The map on page 17 shows that this assumption is correct. About six tenths of the world's people live in Asia. They are divided into a great many tribes and nationalities that differ in language, customs, and religion.

All parts of Asia are not equally crowded. As the map on page 17 shows, a large part of the continent has almost no inhabitants. Other parts are densely populated. The maps on pages 12, 13, and 31 will help to explain this uneven distribution.

A continent of many newly independent nations. Since such a large part of the world's population lives in Asia, you might think that the countries of this

continent would have an important voice in world affairs. Until recently, however, this has not been true. One reason is that until the twentieth century the people in many parts of Asia put the interests of their own small tribe or nationality first, and did not form unified nations that were strong enough to defend themselves. Another reason is that they were industrially behind the nations of the Western world. (See Chapter 7.) These weaknesses made it possible for politically unified, industrially advanced nations such as Great Britain, France, and the Netherlands to take over large parts of Asia. (See map on page 19.)

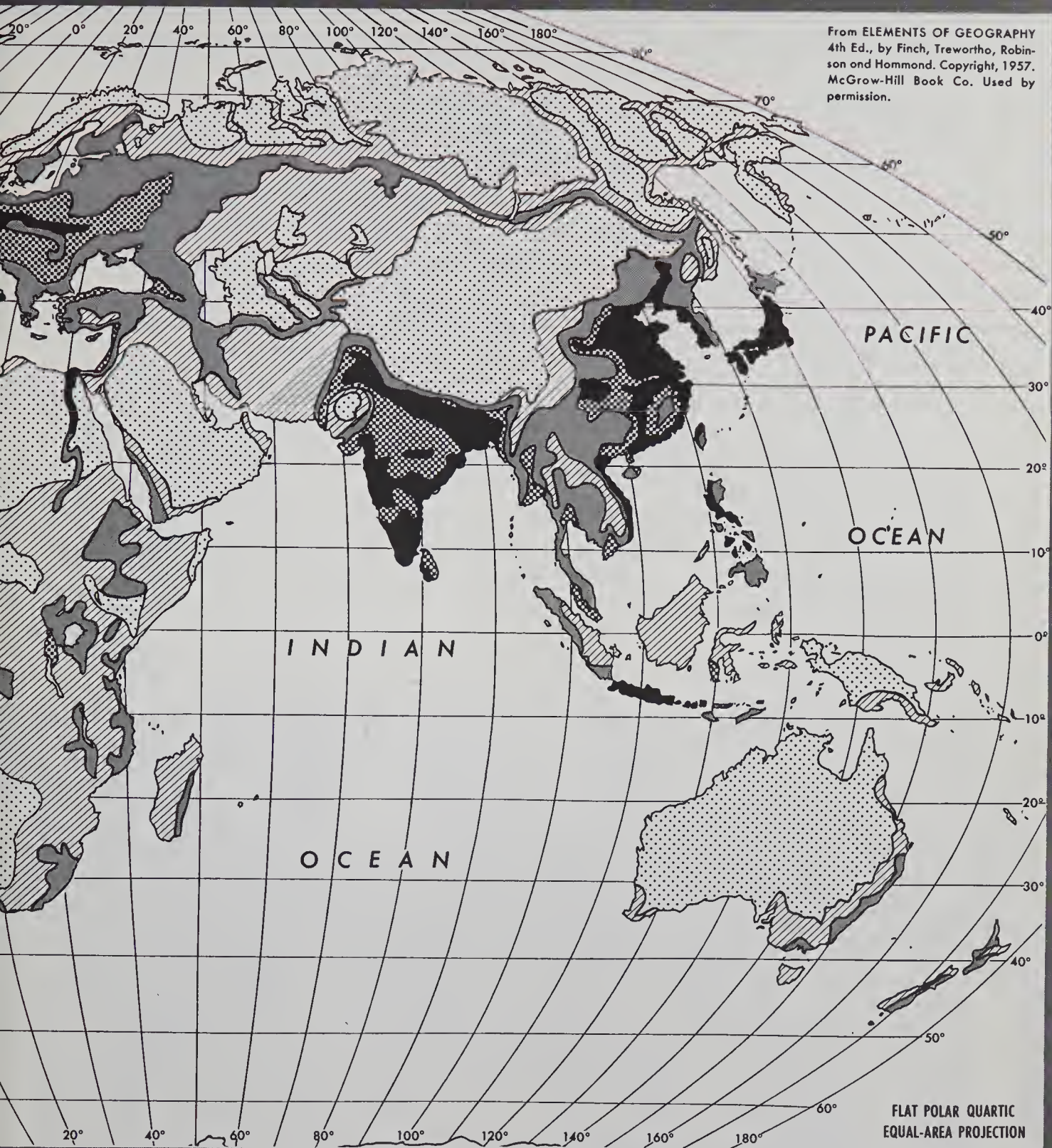
Foreign control in most of Asia ended after World War II. During this war, a new feeling that had been arising in the hearts of many Asiatic people became very strong. This was the feeling of nationalism, the desire to form politically



More than three billion people live in the world today. This is more than four times the world population in 1800. Medical advances, improvements in sanitation, and increased food supplies help to explain this increase. Death rates have fallen significantly in most areas, while birth rates have risen.

If all the world's people were evenly distributed over the earth, there would

be about sixty people to each square mile of land. The map above shows that this is not the case, however. Some areas are very crowded and others are almost empty. The three most heavily populated parts of the world are East Asia, South Asia, and Europe. All three are located on the land mass of Eurasia. Also, all three have land and climate suited to farming.



The population of the world is still expanding. During the period from 1958 to 1963, the average rate of increase has been about 2.2 percent annually. If this rate of growth continues, the world's population will double every thirty-five years.

In general, the population of the underdeveloped* parts of the world is increasing more rapidly than the population of the industrialized parts. For example,

the number of people in South Vietnam is increasing at a rate of 3.7 percent a year, while Great Britain's population is growing only .7 percent annually. With the number of people they now have, the underdeveloped nations can barely feed themselves. Clearly, something must be done to provide a better life for their vast future populations if the world is to have peace.

* See glossary

unified, independent countries of their own. After the war, nationalism helped the people in most parts of Asia to achieve independence.

For an example of how nationalism arose in Asia, let us look briefly at the history of Indonesia, a country in South-east Asia. Before this group of islands was taken over by the Dutch in the eighteenth century, it was divided into many quarreling states. Under Dutch rule, however, the people of these states were forced to live together peacefully. Roads, railroads, and a shipping line were established, which brought the people into closer contact with each other. Some Indonesians had an opportunity to attend Western schools, where they learned new ideas about government and

the rights of man. They also came to see that the system of colonialism brought greater benefits to people in the ruling Western nations than to the people under colonial rule. Perhaps one of the most important effects of Dutch rule was that it gave all the people of Indonesia something on which to agree. They all wanted to be free from Western rule. All of these factors helped the growth of nationalism in Indonesia. When World War II ended, the Indonesians refused to live under foreign rule any longer. They fought for their independence and won it.

A continent of rising expectations. Nationalism is not the only new feeling in Asia. In addition to demanding independence, many of Asia's people are

An Independence Day parade in Malaysia. Since World War II, many countries in Asia have gained independence. The feeling of nationalism is largely responsible for this change.



Asia in 1910



The map above shows the areas of Asia that were under colonial rule in 1910. Japan had annexed Korea by that time, and several Western nations had established colonies in other parts of Asia. Northern Asia had become a part of the Russian Empire, and much of Southwest Asia was a part of the Turkish Empire.

Several Asian countries that were still independent in 1910 were under the influence of stronger powers. For example, the great Chinese Empire had been forced to sign treaties that gave foreigners control of several Chinese ports, and the country of Afghanistan had been forced to turn its foreign affairs over to Great Britain.

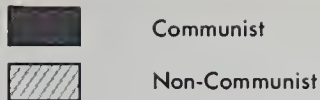
During and after World War I, changes were made in the map of Asia. The Turks were defeated in this war, and several

countries were formed in the part of Southwest Asia that had been under Turkish control. In 1917, Communists gained control of the government of Russia, and later changed the country's name to the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, or the Soviet Union.

Even greater changes came to Asia during and after World War II. Japan was defeated and had to give up all territories on the mainland of Asia. In the Western colonial territories, the feeling of nationalism became too strong to resist. One by one, almost all of these colonies won independence. Today, only a few small areas, such as Portuguese Timor and British-protected South Arabia, formerly called Aden, are still under Western control.



Villagers in India. Most of Asia's people live in villages and earn their living by farming. They are generally very poor. In the past they took their poverty for granted, but now they are beginning to demand a share in the easier way of life enjoyed by people in the Western world.



The announced goal of Communists everywhere is to bring the world under communism. The first country in which Communists gained power was Russia, where a Communist government was established in 1917. Since that time the Communists have made great strides toward their goal of world domination. Today, about two thirds of Eurasia is under Communist rule, and a Communist beachhead in the Americas has been established in Cuba.



beginning to demand a greater share of the good things that people in Western industrialized nations have. For many years, most people in Asia took their poverty for granted, because they did not know that there was any other way to live. Now, however, travel, trade, and communications have increased so much that this is no longer true. In movies and foreign magazines the people of Asia see pictures of cars, washing machines, and other products commonly used in Western countries such as the United States. What they see is making them realize that people in other parts of the world have a much easier, more comfortable way of life than they do. They want this way of life for themselves. Because Asia's people are beginning to expect more, we say that they are going through a "revolution of rising expectations."

The rising expectations of Asia's people are making them dissatisfied and restless. Many people in the newly free nations thought that independence would

solve their problems. However, becoming independent did not suddenly create the factories, schools, hospitals, or other institutions needed to bring the better way of life they wanted. In fact, in many cases, independence brought even greater hardships, for the new governments in Asia often did not know how to manage their countries' affairs. In some countries, the disappointment brought about by slow progress since independence has made people dissatisfied with their new governments.

Asia and the Cold War. The dissatisfaction that many people in Asia feel is playing an important part in a great conflict that is going on in the world today. This is the Cold War between the Communist nations and the democratic nations of the world. The Communists are determined to bring the entire world under communism. They are taking advantage of the restlessness in Asia to try to take over this continent. More than



Textile experts in Thailand. Both the Communist and the democratic nations are furnishing money and sending technical advisors to Asia.

one half of Asia is already under Communist control. (See map on page 21.) The democratic nations of the world know that the rest of this rich, heavily populated continent must not be lost to communism, for this defeat would make democracy's fight for survival much more difficult.

The Cold War is adding greatly to the restlessness and confusion in Asia, but in some important ways, this conflict is helping Asia's people. The Communist nations and the democratic nations are so anxious to keep each other from taking over the rest of Asia that both are giving a great deal of help to the countries on this continent. With this outside aid, dams, roads, and factories are being constructed in many Asian countries. The Cold War has also helped these countries by making their wishes important to other nations. One hundred years ago, few outsiders paid much attention to what people in Asia wanted. Now, however, what takes place on this continent has become vital to people throughout the world.

Getting Clear Mental Images From Maps

Study the map or maps suggested for each of the following questions. Then write your answer to the question.

1. Where is Asia located in relation to Europe and North America? (Use maps on pages 10 and 11.)
2. How densely populated is Asia compared with other parts of the world? (Use map on pages 16 and 17.)
3. How much of Asia was under foreign rule in 1910? (Use map on page 19.)
4. How much of Asia is under Communist control today? (Use map on page 21.)

Make a Report

One of the most outstanding leaders of the twentieth century in Asia was Mohandas K. Gandhi, who led India to independence. Make a written report about Gandhi, using informa-

tion from at least two books. Give this report an appropriate title, such as "Gandhi, the Peaceful Warrior." You may wish to organize your information into the following blocks:

- a. an opening section that gives Gandhi's birth date and birthplace, and tells something about his family
- b. a section that explains why Gandhi decided to become a leader in the fight for independence
- c. the story of his fight
- d. the results of his work

Explaining Terms

Write a clear explanation of each of the following terms:

Eurasia

nationalism

"revolution of rising expectations"



A caravan in Soviet Middle Asia

The vast continent of Asia is a land of contrasts. As the map on pages 12 and 13 shows, a cluster of towering mountains and high plateaus rises in the south central part of this continent. From this highland cluster, other mountain ranges and plateaus stretch out in several directions. These highland barriers help to divide Asia into six main regions, which differ from each other in important ways. The following chapters explore five of Asia's main regions. The sixth region, Southeast Asia, is studied in depth in Parts 2 and 3.

As you examine the six main regions of Asia, you will find that in spite of their great diversity, they have two things in common. First, everywhere except in Israel and Japan, farming is the main occupation. Second, with the exception of Israel and Japan, the standard of living throughout Asia is generally much lower than in the West.

A Continent of Contrasts



A rice field in Cambodia

LAND REGIONS OF ASIA

Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia includes the Mongolian People's Republic, Sinkiang, Inner Mongolia, and Tibet. It is a thinly populated region of deserts, grasslands, plateaus, and high mountains.

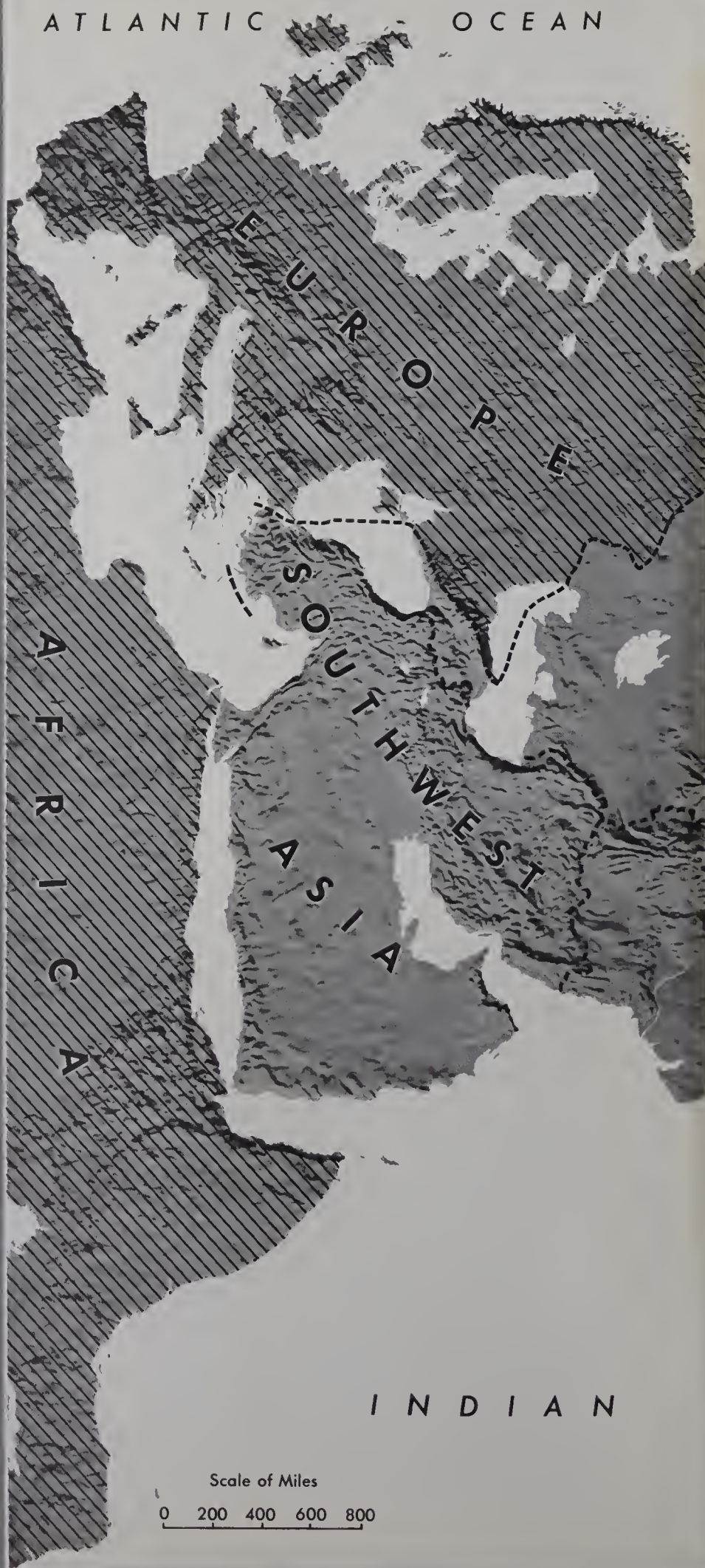
Soviet Asia includes Siberia, Soviet Middle Asia, and Transcaucasia. Siberia has been settled mainly by immigrants from the European part of the Soviet Union. The people in the other two areas have much in common with people in neighboring Asian countries.

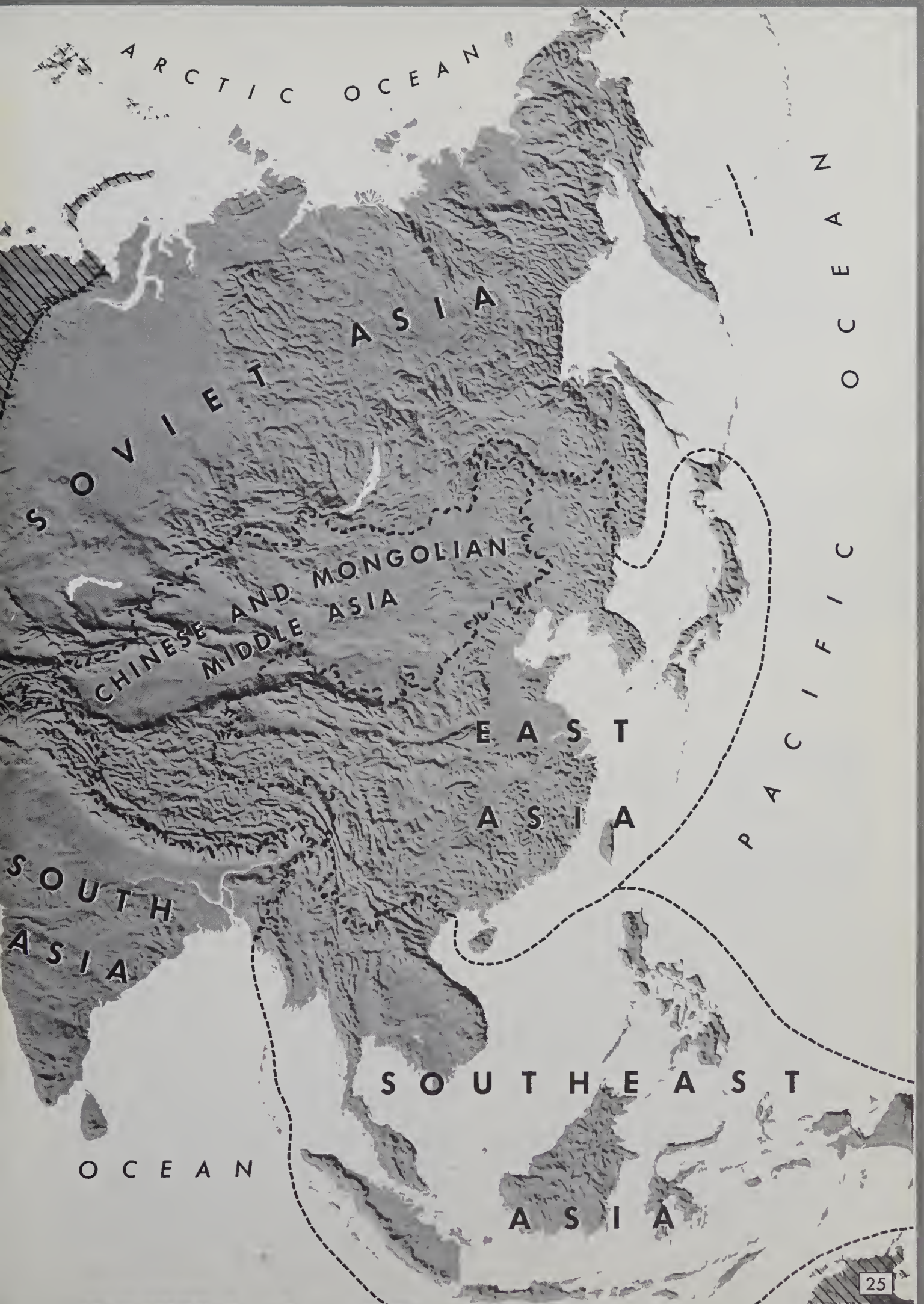
Southwest Asia includes Turkey, Iran, Iraq, Syria, Lebanon, Israel, Jordan, the countries and territories on the Arabian peninsula, and the island of Cyprus. Archaeologists believe civilization may have begun in this dry, rugged region. Three of the world's great religions, Judaism, Christianity, and Islam began here. The world's largest reserves of oil are located in this region.

South Asia includes the large, triangular-shaped peninsula on which the countries of India and Pakistan are located, the island country of Ceylon, and the four mountainous countries of Afghanistan, Nepal, Sikkim, and Bhutan. It is one of the most densely populated parts of the world.

Southeast Asia is a tropical, rainy region of islands and peninsulas. It includes the countries of Burma, Thailand, Cambodia, Laos, North and South Vietnam, Malaysia, Singapore, Indonesia, and the Philippines.

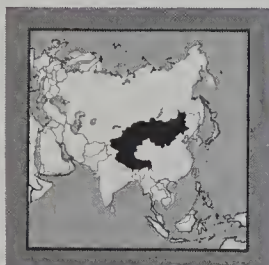
East Asia includes Japan, North and South Korea, and part of Communist China. Taiwan and Hong Kong are located here also. More people live in East Asia than in any other part of the world.







The **Himalayas**, which rise along the southern border of Tibet, are part of a barrier of mountains and deserts that isolates Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia from the rest of the continent. Most of this region receives too little rain for farming and is thinly populated.



2 Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia

Problems To Solve

1. Most people seldom think or hear about Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. **Why is this region seldom heard of?** In forming hypotheses about this problem, you will need to consider the following:
 - a. the location of this region
 - b. the land features of this region
 - c. the number of people who live here
 - d. the amount of agricultural, mineral, and manufactured goods produced here
2. Climate has an important influence on the work people do and the way they live. **How does climate affect the way people in Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia live and earn a living?**

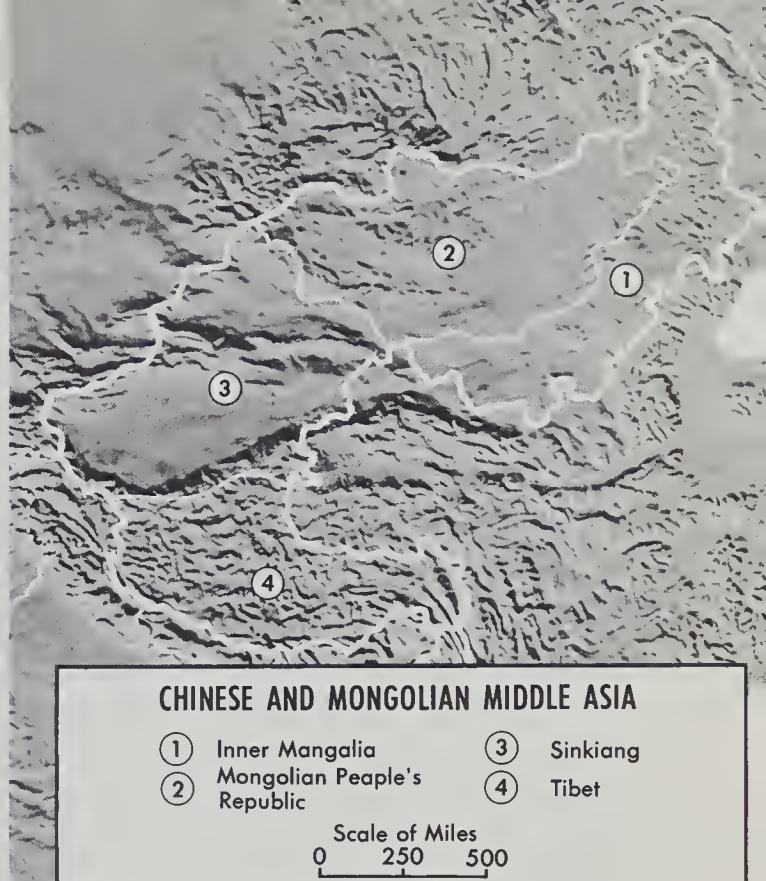
See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

The heart of the vast Asian continent is divided between two regions. Part of this heartland is in Soviet Asia. (See pages 36 through 38.) The other part is Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia.

From past to present. At many different times in the past, nomadic tribesmen have ridden out of the heart of Asia to conquer more civilized peoples in Europe and other parts of Asia. Among these conquerors were the Mongols, who, in the thirteenth century, established one of the largest empires the world has ever known. The Mongol Empire began to break up in the fourteenth century, however, and the tribesmen of interior Asia ceased to play an important part in world affairs. In the seventeenth century, China extended its control over what is now Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. By the latter part of the nineteenth century, Russia had gained control of the rest of interior Asia.

The twentieth century brought important political changes to Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. In 1911, a rebellion took place in China that led to the

Barren wastelands cover much of Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. This region is one of the world's least productive areas.



Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia includes Tibet, Sinkiang, Inner Mongolia, and the Mongolian People's Republic.

overthrow of the Emperor. The territory now called the Mongolian People's Republic took advantage of this situation to declare its independence from China. In the years that followed it became closely associated with the Soviet Union. Chinese influence was also weakened in other parts of Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. However, after the Chinese Communists came to power, Inner Mongolia, Sinkiang, and Tibet were brought firmly under Chinese control and were made autonomous regions of the People's Republic of China.

An isolated, thinly populated land. Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia is about one-half the size of the United States but has only about one-tenth as many people. The rainfall map on page 31 and the relief map on pages 12 and 13 help to explain why. Most of this region receives less than ten inches of rain a year. This is too little for crops to grow. In addition, there are many rugged mountains and bleak deserts here. These land

features make Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia one of the most difficult regions in the world to reach.

One of the world's least productive regions. In spite of its great size, Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia is not the leading producer of a single raw material or manufactured product needed by the modern world. Some minerals, such as coal, iron, and petroleum, have been discovered here in significant quantities. However, it is difficult to establish mines and oil wells, for there are few transportation routes along which mining and drilling equipment can be brought in and minerals can be carried out. Except possibly in the field of minerals, it is doubtful that Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia will ever be a productive region. There are rivers here, but they contain only enough water to irrigate a tiny part of this vast area.

Although the different parts of Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia have a

great deal in common, they also have important differences. The following paragraphs examine some of these.

Tibet. Tibet is sometimes called the "roof of the world." It is located in the cluster of high mountains in south central Asia. (Compare map on page 27 with map on pages 12 and 13.) Tibet is so high above the level of the sea that many of its valley floors are as high as the peaks of the highest mountains of the Alps in Europe. Many of the great rivers of Asia begin in Tibet.

Northern Tibet is a cold, dry wilderness, but in the east and south are some areas suitable for grazing and farming. The farmlands of Tibet are found in eastern and southern valleys. Even here, however, so little rain falls that farmers irrigate their land where possible. Summers are so short that they must plant crops, such as barley and peas, that can withstand chilly weather.

The cold, bleak tablelands and mountains of Tibet rise so far above sea level that this part of Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia is called the "roof of the world." Much of Tibet is barren or is suited only for grazing.





Herding is the main occupation on the high plateau that extends across Inner Mongolia and the Mongolian People's Republic.

Nearly all of Tibet's people live in the east and south. The valleys are the most densely populated areas. Lhasa, the capital of Tibet, is located in one of these valleys. The farmers in the valleys of Tibet generally live in flat-roofed houses made of brick or stone. However, the herdsmen, who move around in search of pasture, live in tents. The Tibetans belong to the Mongoloid family of peoples and follow a form of the Buddhist religion. Many of them are monks, called lamas. The former ruler of Tibet, the Dalai Lama, was also one of the religious leaders of the people.

In 1959, when revolts against Communist rule broke out in Tibet, the Chinese ordered the Dalai Lama to use the Tibetan army against his own people. He refused, however, and soon fled to the neighboring country of India. The Dalai Lama is still living in India.

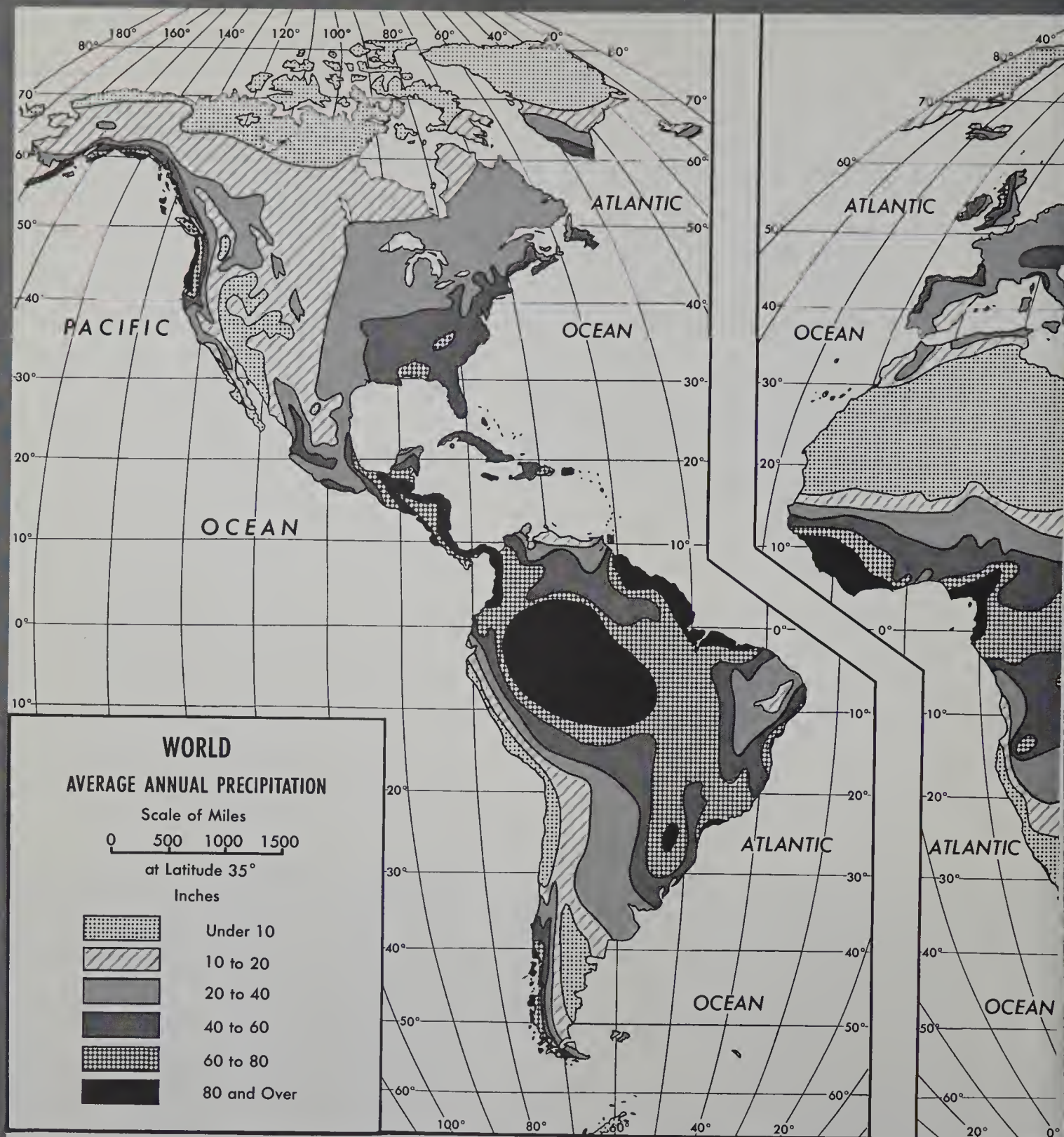
Mongolia. The Mongolian People's Republic and Inner Mongolia together form an area known as Mongolia, which occupies the northeastern part of Chinese

and Mongolian Middle Asia. (See map on page 27.) Most of Mongolia is a great tableland that rises between three thousand and six thousand feet above sea level. This tableland is generally flat or gently rolling, and is bordered by higher land on the north and south. Grass covers much of the land in Mongolia. The best grasslands are in the northern part of the Mongolian People's Republic, where there are mountains high enough to force winds to rise and drop their moisture as rain. The eastern part of Inner Mongolia also has grasslands. Much of the rest of Mongolia is dry and bare.

Like the Tibetans, the people of Mongolia follow a form of Buddhism and belong to the Mongoloid family of peoples. Most of them earn their living as herds- men. Formerly, most people in Mongolia lived in tents, and traveled from place to place in search of pasture for their animals. After Soviet influence became strong in the Mongolian People's Republic, however, many herds- men there gave up their nomadic ways.

Mongolia is changing. Railroads now link this area to Moscow and Peking, and some modern industry has been started here.



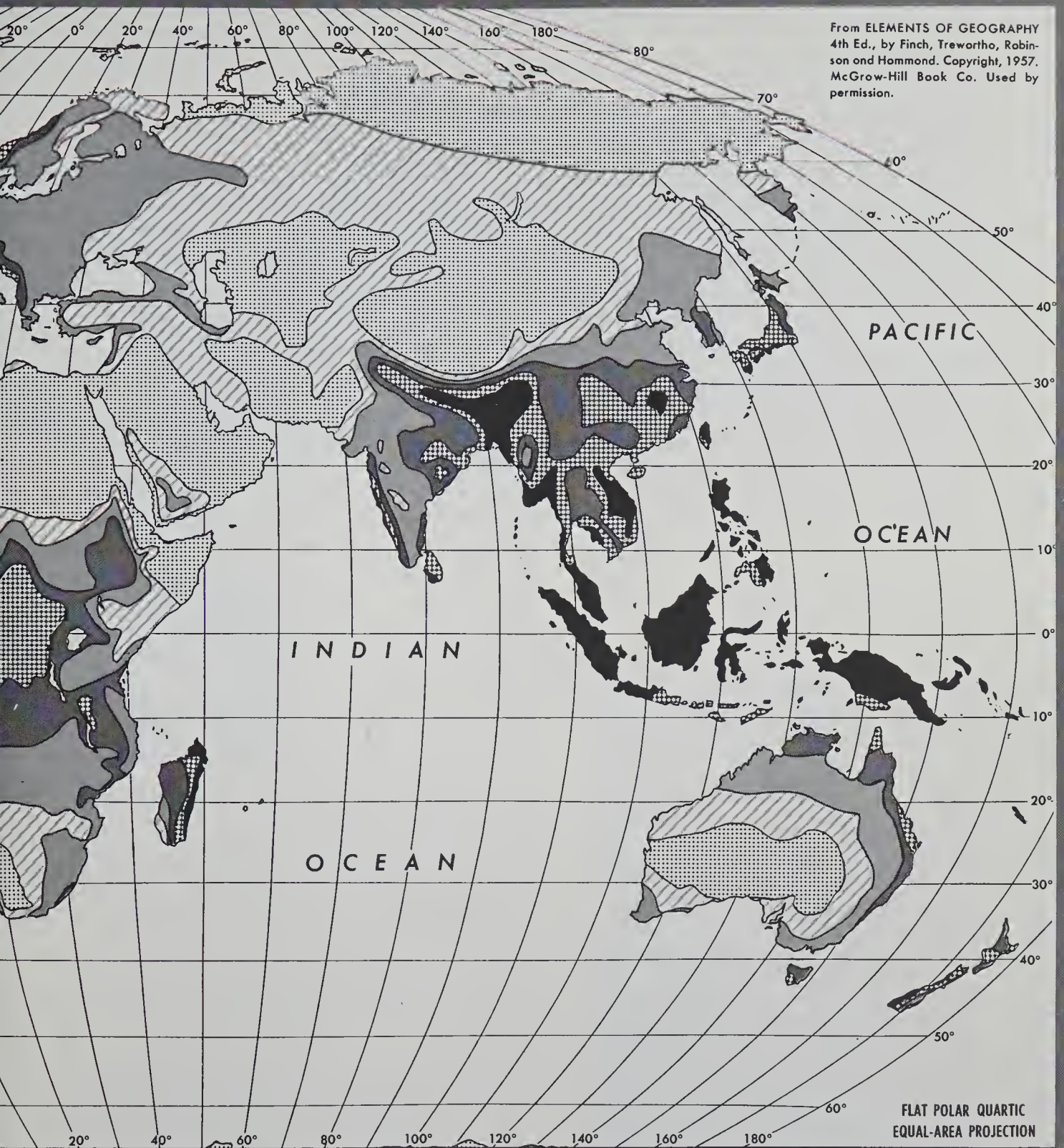


The earth's rainfall is very unevenly distributed. Some areas, such as certain mountain slopes along the northwestern coast of the United States, may receive as much as 200 inches of precipitation a year. Other areas, such as the interior of the Sahara Desert of Africa, have an average annual rainfall of less than one inch. The causes of these differences are extremely complex and varied.

The location of an area on the globe helps to determine how much benefit the

rainfall it receives will bring to the land. Near the equator, the climate is so warm that water evaporates much more rapidly than it does in areas nearer the North and South poles. For this reason, tropical areas, such as central Burma, which may receive 20 to 40 inches of rain a year, are drier than cooler areas, such as northern Siberia, that actually receive considerably less rainfall.

The amount of effective rainfall an area receives plays a major role in determining



its suitability for human habitation. A comparison of the map above with the map on pages 16 and 17 shows that the large areas of the world that receive little precipitation are generally thinly populated. The densely populated parts of the world are generally areas of adequate rainfall. However, excessive precipitation can be a hindrance to human activity. For example, in equatorial regions that receive heavy rainfall throughout the year, chemicals needed by plants are washed out of

the soil. In addition, disease and insects thrive in hot, humid climates.

There are important exceptions to the generalizations stated above. For example, the arid lands of southern California and Soviet Middle Asia contain some relatively densely populated areas. Here, the people, by using irrigation, have overcome the problem of inadequate rainfall. These exceptions are an indication of man's ability to adapt to seemingly unfavorable climatic conditions.

Other changes have taken place in both Inner Mongolia and the Mongolian People's Republic. Chinese people have established farms in the parts of Inner Mongolia where enough rain falls to make farming possible. In recent years, the Soviet Union has built some railroads and established a few small factories and mines in the Mongolian People's Republic.

Sinkiang. West of Mongolia is Sinkiang-Uighur Autonomous Region, or Sinkiang. The most important land feature here is a high range of mountains called the Tien Shan, which extends through central Sinkiang. North and south of the Tien Shan, the land dips downward to

The Tien Shan extends through central Sinkiang. Melted snow from these and other mountains in Sinkiang provides water for irrigation.



form two great basins. These lower areas are almost ringed by hills and mountains. The two basins of Sinkiang receive so little rainfall that they are barren wastelands. On many of the bordering mountain slopes, however, there is enough grass for grazing. Here we find nomad herdsman who live much like those in Tibet.

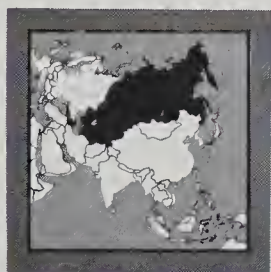
Unlike Tibet and Mongolia, Sinkiang has many fertile farming areas. These are located near the foot of the mountains, and are watered by rivers that are fed by melting mountain snow. A traveler passing through the irrigated farmlands of Sinkiang would see many farming villages and towns, surrounded by small, green fields. The houses here are generally made of sun-dried bricks, and have flat roofs. The largest center of population is the capital, Urumchi, where about 700,000 people live. Since the Communists gained control of Sinkiang, several industries have been established in Urumchi, and many Chinese have moved here. The Chinese differ greatly from the natives of Sinkiang, most of whom speak Indo-European or Turkic languages and follow the religion of Islam.

Facts To Review

1. Why is Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia so thinly populated?
2. Why is Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia one of the world's least productive regions?
3. Why is Tibet sometimes called the "roof of the world"?
4. What changes have come to Inner Mongolia and the Mongolian People's Republic?
5. In what ways are the Tibetans similar to the people of Mongolia?
6. Where are the important farming areas in Sinkiang? Why are they located there?
7. How does an area's location on the earth help determine how much the land will benefit from the rainfall it receives?



A huge evergreen forest called the taiga covers most of Siberia, which is one of Soviet Asia's three main areas. Siberia stretches across northern Asia from the Ural Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. Southwest of Siberia are Soviet Middle Asia and Transcaucasia.



3 Soviet Asia

Problems To Solve

1. The vast area of Siberia, in Soviet Asia, occupies one third of the continent of Asia. Although much of Asia is densely populated, Siberia is very thinly populated. **Why do so few people live in Siberia?** In making hypotheses about this problem, you will want to consider how the density of population in Siberia is affected by the following:
 - a. the climate of this area
 - b. the land features and soil of this area
2. Many geographers combine Soviet Middle Asia and Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia to form one region. **Are these areas alike in enough ways to be considered parts of the same region? Why?** The following questions suggest hypotheses to consider in solving this problem:
 - a. How does the land in these two regions compare?
 - b. How does the climate of these two regions compare?
 - c. How do the main ways of earning a living in these two regions compare?
3. Although Soviet Asia makes up a large part of the Soviet Union, we hear and think less about this part of the country than about the part that is located in Europe. **Why is the Asian portion of the Soviet Union less influential than the European portion?** In forming your hypotheses, you will need to do additional research about the people, farming, resources, and industry of the European part of the Soviet Union.

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.



UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS



SOVIET ASIA

① & ①a Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic

② Estonian S.S.R.

③ Latvian S.S.R.

④ Lithuanian S.S.R.

⑤ Belorussian S.S.R.

⑥ Ukrainian S.S.R.

⑦ Moldavian S.S.R.

⑧ Georgian S.S.R.

⑨ Armenian S.S.R.

⑩ & ⑩a Azerbaidzhan S.S.R.

⑪ Turkmen S.S.R.

⑫ Uzbek S.S.R.

⑬ Tadzhik S.S.R.

⑭ Kirgiz S.S.R.

⑮ Kazakh S.S.R.

The Soviet Union is made up of fifteen republics, some of which are in Europe and some in Asia. These republics are grouped into four areas. One is the part of the Soviet Union that lies in Europe. The other three are Soviet Middle Asia, Siberia, and Transcaucasia, all of which are in Asia.

By far the largest region in Asia is the one that is located in the Soviet Union. Soviet Asia may be divided into three areas: Siberia, Soviet Middle Asia, and Transcaucasia. Two of these areas, Soviet Middle Asia and Transcaucasia, have long and colorful histories. Civilized people have been living in Transcaucasia so long that, according to tradition, a descendant of Noah is supposed to have established a kingdom here. Samarkand, the oldest city in Soviet Middle Asia,

was well known to the ancient Greeks as Maracanda. In sharp contrast to Soviet Middle Asia and Transcaucasia is Siberia, which was inhabited by small groups of primitive tribesmen until recent times. All three parts of Soviet Asia were taken over by Russians long before their country became known as the Soviet Union.

Siberia. The huge area known as Siberia occupies the northern one third of the continent of Asia. It extends all the way from the Ural Mountains to the Pacific

Ocean. On the north it is bounded by the Arctic Ocean, and on the south by Soviet Middle Asia, China, and the Mongolian People's Republic.

A land of contrasts. The land of Siberia differs greatly from place to place. In the west is one of the world's largest and flattest lowlands. (See map on page 25.) The central part of Siberia is a tableland intersected by deep river valleys. To the east are many mountain ranges. Mountains and hills also extend along much of the southern border of Siberia.

The vegetation of Siberia also differs greatly from place to place. Most of the land is covered with evergreen forests. This forest region is called the taiga. In the far north, where the summers are too short and cool for trees to grow, the

taiga gives way to tundra. In the south, the taiga blends into an area of grasslands.

Resources and handicaps of Siberia. Siberia is rich in natural resources. Across this part of Asia flow some of the world's greatest rivers. Some of the largest coal deposits in the Soviet Union are found in Siberia. The forest region here is a treasure-house of lumber and furs, and along the coasts are rich fishing grounds.

Siberia has several handicaps, however. One of the most serious of these is the climate. Much of Siberia is located near the North Pole. The winds that sweep into this area from the Arctic help to make it the coldest place on earth in winter outside the continent of Antarctica. Summers are so short and cool in much of Siberia that the frozen soil a few

Farmlands in southeastern Siberia. Although much of the land in Siberia is not suitable for agriculture, farming is an important occupation in the south. The farms in Siberia are collectivized, as they are in other parts of the Soviet Union.



inches beneath the surface of the ground never thaws. Another handicap is the scarcity of fertile soil. Near the Pacific coast of southern Siberia is a large lowland that is suitable for agriculture. Crops can also be grown in the southern grasslands. Most of the rest of this vast area is not suitable for agriculture.

Siberia's people and where they live. Largely because of its severe climate and lack of farmland, Siberia is thinly populated. The population is concentrated in the south near the Trans-Siberian Railroad. Most of the cities are located here, too. These cities are growing rapidly, for the Soviet government is working hard to develop this part of Soviet Asia. The largest city is Novosibirsk, with a population of 985,000.

Although Siberia is in Asia, most of its people are Slavic immigrants from the European part of the Soviet Union. Only a small part of the population is made up of native peoples. Among these are some who resemble the Eskimos of Alaska and

A Siberian tribesman. Only a small part of Siberia's population consists of native tribesmen. Most of the people are Slavic immigrants.



Novosibirsk is the home of nearly a million people. The Soviet government is developing resources and cities in southern Siberia.

some who are related to the people of Mongolia.

Earning a living in Siberia. People earn their living in many ways in Siberia. In the frozen, treeless north and along the Pacific coast, fishing is an important occupation. Lumbering, reindeer herding, trapping, and mining are carried on in the taiga. Mining is important in the south, also. Farming and manufacturing are two other important occupations in the south. As in other parts of the Soviet Union, farming here is collectivized.

Soviet Middle Asia. Southwest of Siberia is Soviet Middle Asia, which is made up of five republics of the Soviet Union. In many ways this area resembles Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. The same Tien Shan that stretches through central Sinkiang extends into the southeastern corner of Soviet Middle Asia. (See map on pages 12 and 13.) Far to the west is the salty Caspian Sea, the largest inland body of water in the world. Lake Balkhash and the Aral Sea are located in Soviet Middle Asia, also. (See map on

pages 12 and 13.) These three bodies of water influence the climate of only limited parts of Soviet Middle Asia, however. Like Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, most of this area is made up of grasslands and barren desert. To the south, this area is bordered by mountains.

A changing land. Although grazing is a very important occupation in Soviet Middle Asia, the Soviet government has introduced other ways of earning a living into this part of the country. Irrigated farmlands at the foot of the mountains in this area now produce more cotton than any other part of the Soviet Union. Industry is growing rapidly in the cities of Soviet Middle Asia, also.

A land of many different peoples. Many different people live in Soviet Middle Asia. About 30 percent of the population consists of Slavic people from the



Cotton fields in Soviet Middle Asia. Under the Communists, Soviet Middle Asia has become the Soviet Union's leading cotton-producing area.

Uzbek men. More than half the people in Soviet Middle Asia are descendants of dark-haired Turkic tribesmen who lived here long ago. Some of these Turkic people also have Mongol ancestors. Slavs make up the next largest group of people in this part of Soviet Asia.



north. Most of the rest are dark-haired Turkic people, descended from the tribesmen who lived here centuries ago. Many of the Turkic people intermarried with Mongols, who invaded this territory in times past.

Like the natives of Sinkiang, the people of Soviet Middle Asia generally live in flat-roofed, mud-brick houses and follow the religion of Islam. The Soviet government, which is officially atheistic, discourages the people from religious practice.

Transcaucasia. Across the Caspian Sea from Soviet Middle Asia is Transcaucasia, the third part of Soviet Asia. Its name means "across the Caucasus." As the maps on pages 24 and 34 show, Transcaucasia is a small, mountainous area. It is divided into three republics.

There are many different groups of people in Transcaucasia. The three large

Collective-farm workers in Transcaucasia. This small, mountainous section of Soviet Asia is occupied by three of the Soviet Union's republics.



est groups are the Georgians, Armenians, and Azerbaidzhanians. Each of the republics in Transcaucasia is named after and mainly inhabited by one of these main groups.

Although Transcaucasia is small, it is important to the Soviet Union. Some of the largest oil fields in the country are located here. Also, parts of this area that face the Black Sea have a subtropical climate, for they are sheltered from cold winds by mountains and are benefited by mild, moist sea winds. This makes it possible to raise crops such as oranges and tea here. The climate of these subtropical areas also attracts many tourists from colder parts of the Soviet Union. A third reason for Transcaucasia's importance is its population. Many of the people here are related to the inhabitants of neighboring Asian countries. Through these people, the Soviet government can spread its influence to other parts of the continent.

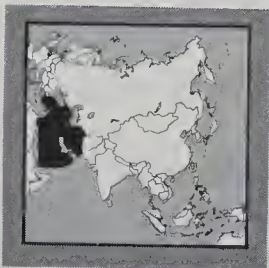
The Soviet government is working hard to develop Transcaucasia. Many people here still earn their living by herding and farming. However, modern industry has made great progress in this area.

Facts To Review

1. Into what three parts may Soviet Asia be divided?
2. What contrasts can be found in the land and vegetation of Siberia?
3. What are some of Siberia's natural resources?
4. What handicaps prevent Siberia from being a more productive and densely populated area?
5. What are some of the important occupations in Siberia?
6. In what ways does Soviet Middle Asia resemble Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia?
7. What are some of the major groups of people in Soviet Asia?
8. Why is Transcaucasia important to the Soviet Union?



Plateaus and mountains in Turkey are typical of the dry, rugged countryside found in most parts of Southwest Asia. Only a few areas receive enough rainfall to raise crops without using irrigation or special dry-farming methods.



4 Southwest Asia

Problems To Solve

1. Southwest Asia, which is very important in world affairs, is a region of great unrest. **Why is there so much unrest in Southwest Asia?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how harmony in this region is disrupted by the following:
 - a. the general standard of living in this region
 - b. the many political divisions in this region
 - c. the religious differences in this region
2. **What can be done to provide the people of Southwest Asia with a higher standard of living?** Before you list your hypotheses for this problem, you may wish to consider the information in Chapter 7. In proving your hypotheses, you may wish to use information in current magazines as well as other outside sources.

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.



SOUTHWEST ASIA

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| ① Turkey | ⑦ Jordan | ⑬ Qatar |
| ② Cyprus | ⑧ Iraq | ⑭ Trucial Oman |
| ③ Syria | ⑨ Kuwait | ⑮ Muscat and Oman |
| ④ Lebanon | ⑩ Iran | ⑯ South Arabia |
| ⑤ Israel | ⑪ Saudi Arabia | ⑰ Yemen |
| ⑥ United Arab Republic (Egypt) | ⑫ Bahrein | |

Indefinite Boundaries

Scale of Miles

0 200 400 600 800

In Southwest Asia there are eleven independent countries, and several territories that are under foreign control.

South of the Transcaucasian part of Soviet Asia is Southwest Asia. The map on pages 24 and 25 shows that this region is located at the meeting place of three continents: Asia, Europe, and Africa. Turkey, one of the countries in Southwest Asia, actually includes a small part of Europe. Arabia, another part of Southwest Asia, is connected to Africa

by the Isthmus of Suez, across which the Suez Canal was built. Because of its location, Southwest Asia is crossed by important trade and travel routes.

A barren, rugged land. Most of Southwest Asia is a land of mountains and dry plateaus. In a few coastal or mountainous areas, there is enough rainfall to raise crops without irrigation or dry-farming methods. In most of Southwest Asia, however, the countryside is desolate and brown.

People and politics. Southwest Asia is cut by the boundaries of eleven independent countries, and several territories that are under foreign control. (See map at left.) The people in most of these countries and territories are descendants of the Arab tribesmen who conquered much of Asia in the seventh and eighth centuries. The people of Turkey and Iran are not Arabs, but they follow the same religion as their Arab neighbors. This is the religion of Islam. The only countries in Southwest Asia in which Islam is not the main religion are Lebanon and Israel. Most of

The Blue Mosque, in Istanbul. Islam is the main religion in all the countries of Southwest Asia except Lebanon and Israel.



the people of Lebanon are Christians and most of Israel's people are Jews.

The religious and political differences in Southwest Asia have caused serious problems. Many Arabs have a dream of uniting to form one large country, but the Christian Arabs of Lebanon oppose this idea, for they fear that they would have no voice in the country's affairs. This problem is not nearly as serious as the one caused by the strong nationalistic resentment that the Arabs feel against the Jewish state of Israel, however. Israel was established against the will of the Arabs as a homeland for the Jews after World War II. It occupies most of the former country of Palestine. Before the war, the Jews were a minority group in Palestine. After the war, huge numbers of Jewish refugees from Europe immigrated into Israel. The Arabs strongly feel that this territory is rightfully Arab, and are determined to overthrow Israel. The Jews, however, feel that their ancient heritage, going back to Biblical times, established their right to Israel. This controversy has caused much unrest in Southwest Asia.

Largely because of their common hatred of Israel, several Arab nations in Southwest Asia have joined with Arab nations in northern Africa to form the Arab League. Along with its aim of overthrowing Israel, this organization is supposed to promote cooperation between the Arab states. The Arab League has not really united the Arabs, however, for the Arab states have a long history of fighting among themselves. There are quarrels between some ruling families that go back many years.

A region of unnecessary poverty. In addition to the problems caused by religious and political differences, the nations of Southwest Asia share the great problem



An Arab fruit vendor in Jerusalem. In the seventh and eighth centuries, tribesmen from the Arabian peninsula conquered much of Asia.

of poverty. Most of the people in these countries are farmers who use primitive farming methods and raise barely enough to exist. The land on which they work generally is owned by wealthy landlords who care little for the welfare of their tenants. Chapter 7 discusses some of the problems that these poverty-stricken farmers share with people in other parts of Asia.

It is unnecessary for the people of Southwest Asia to be so poor. Beneath the ground in this region are the world's largest reserves of petroleum. The task of discovering, pumping, refining, and selling this oil is chiefly in the hands of foreign companies, mainly British and American. They pay royalties to the governments of the countries from which the oil is obtained. The governments of all these countries are now using part of the income from these oil royalties to help their people achieve a better way of life. Much remains to be done, however.

One of the important reasons that the problem of poverty is not being overcome more rapidly in Southwest Asia is the attitude of the rich landowners here. They generally have a great deal of influence in the governments and try to prevent any changes that might take away their privileges.

Different approaches to solving the problem of poverty. Different approaches are being tried in Southwest Asia to break down the control of wealthy landowners and bring a higher standard of living to the majority of the people in this region. In 1962, a massive land reform program was begun in Iran. Through this program, wealthy landowners are being forced to sell part of their property to the government. The land is then distributed at low cost to poor farmers. Gamal Nasser, the president of the United Arab Republic, advocates a more extreme approach to solving the problem of poverty. This is socialism, or government ownership of

Constructing an oil pipeline in Iraq. The world's largest petroleum reserves are in Southwest Asia. Foreign companies that drill for this oil pay royalties to the governments here.

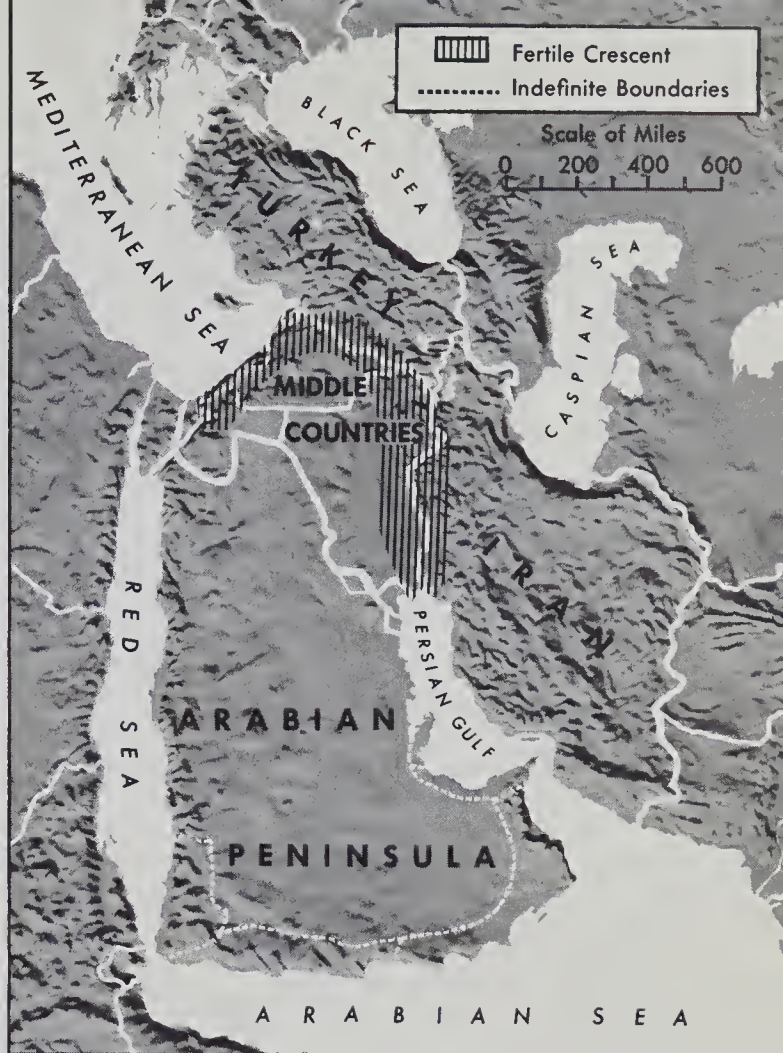


factories, mines, and other means of production. Nasser's socialistic approach has won considerable support in Southwest Asia. The Communist parties in this region are in favor of a still more radical approach. They believe that Communist dictatorships should be established that would bring all social and economic activities totally under government control. Communism has won little support in Southwest Asia, however. This is partly because the idea of dictatorship is not popular among the people, and partly because the atheistic philosophy of the Communists is contrary to the teachings of Islam.

A focus of world attention. The many different facts about Southwest Asia discussed so far make it a very important region in world affairs. The location and the vast oil reserves of this region make it a valuable prize in the Cold War. Until now, Great Britain and the United States have been successful in remaining the most influential outside powers in this region. However, the Soviet Union, which shares a common boundary with Iran and Turkey, is trying to take advantage of the unrest in this region in order to gain control.

To obtain a more complete picture of Southwest Asia, let us look briefly at the three main sections into which this region may be divided. The first is the Arabian peninsula, to the south. The second consists of the mountainous countries of Iran and Turkey, to the east and north. The third is the area that lies between the first two sections.

The Arabian peninsula. The peninsula of Arabia, which forms the southwestern corner of Asia, is one of the largest peninsulas on the earth. As the map on pages 12 and 13 shows, the land here slopes upward from flat lowlands along most of the



Southwest Asia may be divided into three main sections: the Arabian peninsula, the middle countries, and Turkey and Iran.

eastern coast to comparatively low mountains in the western part of the peninsula.

Arabia is one of the driest places on the earth. Grass and trees grow on the higher mountain slopes here, for the winds that cross these highlands are forced to rise high enough to cool and lose their moisture as rain. The lower parts of the peninsula, however, are dry and brown.

Largely because of its lack of water, the Arabian peninsula is not densely populated. About one tenth of the people are nomads called Bedouins, who live in tents and travel with their herds from place to place. Most of the other people are farmers who live in the highlands, or in oases that are watered by wells. The mud-brick buildings in these oases are sometimes ten stories high, and resemble small skyscrapers.



An oasis in Saudi Arabia. Most of the people on the Arabian peninsula are farmers who live in oases or in the highlands.

From yesterday to today. The Arabian peninsula has had an important effect on world history. In the seventh century, a camel driver named Mohammed united the warring Arab tribesmen of the peninsula under a new religion he had founded, named Islam. Eager to spread this faith and to expand their power, the Arabs burst out of the peninsula to conquer much of Asia, northern Africa, and Spain. In addition to bringing Islam to most of these areas, the Arabs brought their language, Arabic.

For a time, the Arabs were rulers of a vast empire with a high level of culture, but they lost their power as the centuries passed. In the eleventh century, tribesmen called Turks, from central Asia, began to overrun territory ruled by the Arabs. By the middle of the sixteenth century, most of northern Africa and parts of southeastern Europe and Southwest Asia had come under the control of a group of Turks called the Ottomans.

As Arab power declined, the edges of the Arabian peninsula were brought un-

der foreign rule. The Ottoman Turks extended their control into the Fertile Crescent and along part of the eastern and western coasts of the peninsula. In the nineteenth century, the British took over a few areas on the southern coast. The Arab tribes who lived in the harsh, dry interior lands of the peninsula remained virtually independent, however, for these remote areas were difficult to conquer. These tribes were frequently at war with one another.

World War I brought changes to the peninsula of Arabia. The Turks were defeated in this war and lost their empire. In the years that followed, several Arab states were formed in the peninsula. Ibn-Saud, the king of one state, was able to extend his control over other parts of the peninsula to create the large country of Saudi Arabia. Today, Saudi Arabia and several other countries on the peninsula of Arabia are independent. Several parts of the peninsula, however, are still under British protection.

A mansion in Saudi Arabia. Oil royalties paid by foreign companies have brought great wealth to some people on the Arabian peninsula.





A shepherd in northwestern Iran. Herding is an important occupation in Iran and Turkey. Much of this part of Southwest Asia is very dry, although some areas in both countries receive plenty of rain. In dry areas, farmers must irrigate their fields or use dry-farming methods.

A land that is changing slowly and unwillingly. Some of the richest, yet most backward nations on the earth are located on the Arabian peninsula. These countries have great reserves of oil. The oil produced here brings in huge sums of money each year. Until recently, however, the rulers of these countries governed with no regard for democracy or individual rights, and nearly all of the royalties from this oil went into the pockets of the ruling class.

Changes are beginning to take place on the Arabian peninsula. In 1962, the absolute ruler of Yemen was overthrown by rebel forces who wanted the country to become a socialist republic. A civil war followed, in which the rebels were aided

by Nasser of Egypt, and the people who wanted the return of an absolute monarch were helped by neighboring absolute rulers. The rebels were victorious in this struggle. Since then, the rulers of some Arabian countries have begun to make small reforms. Much remains to be done, however.

The rugged lands to the north and east. The map on page 43 shows that the northern and eastern parts of Southwest Asia are occupied by the countries of Turkey and Iran. Both of these countries are made up mainly of mountain ranges and high plateaus. Many of the mountains in Turkey receive enough rainfall to support dense forests. Turkey also has coastal lowlands that receive enough rain



A street in Tehran, the capital of Iran. The people of Iran and Turkey are not related to the Arabs, who live in most other parts of Southwest Asia. Most Iranians, or Persians, belong to the Indo-European family of peoples, as do most Europeans. Turks belong to the Turkic family.

A schoolroom in Turkey. Turkey has adopted many modern ways from Western nations.



for farming. The rainy lands of Iran are much smaller. They are located in the north, mainly near the Caspian Sea. Outside these rainy lands, farmers must use dry-farming methods or irrigate their fields with water from wells or mountain streams. Herding is an important occupation in both Iran and Turkey.

Mineral resources of Turkey and Iran. The mineral resources of Iran differ from those of Turkey. Iran's most outstanding mineral is petroleum. Some of the world's largest petroleum reserves are located here. Although Turkey is not so rich in oil, it produces about one fourth of the world's chromium. It also has deposits of coal, iron, copper, and other minerals needed by modern industry.

The people and their history. Unlike most of Southwest Asia, Turkey and Iran

are not inhabited mainly by Arabs. Most Iranians belong to the Indo-European family of peoples, to which most people in Europe also belong. The Turks belong to the Turkic group of peoples, many of whom live in Soviet Middle Asia.

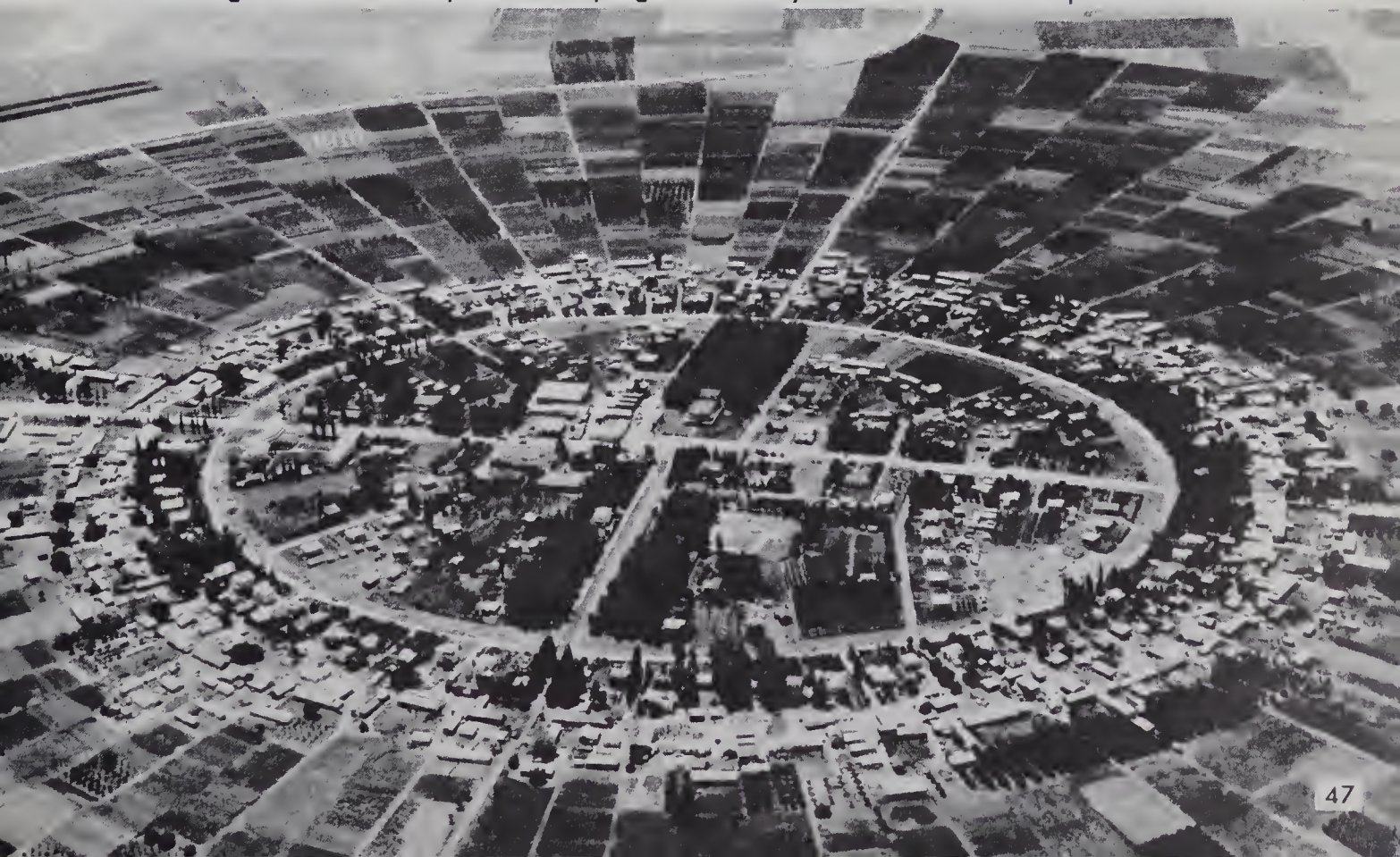
The people of both Iran, or Persia as it is also known, and Turkey have long and glorious histories. At one time, each of these groups of people ruled vast empires. The Persians won and lost their empire long before the birth of Christ. The Turks, who became powerful much later, did not lose their empire until World War I. (See page 44.)

Turkey today. Partly because Turkey is very close to the countries of Europe, it has adopted many modern ways. Democratic government and modern methods of farming, manufacturing, and mining have made a fairly good start here. Nevertheless, the Turks have a long way to go before their country takes its place among the twentieth century industrial nations.

Iran today. Iran has been slower than Turkey in adopting modern ways. In recent years, however, progress has been encouraging. Industry is growing, more people are going to school, and a land reform program is making it possible for many more farmers to own their farms.

The middle lands of Southwest Asia. Between Iran and Turkey and the Arabian peninsula are the middle lands of Southwest Asia. Much of the land here is dry and barren. Curving through this part of Southwest Asia, however, is an area called the Fertile Crescent, which has enough water for farming. (See map on page 43.) Near the Mediterranean Sea, this moisture comes largely from rainfall. Near the Persian Gulf it is provided mainly by the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. In addition to having water, the Fertile Crescent has a favorable location. This area is the heart of a routeway between the three continents of Asia, Africa, and Europe.

A collective farm in Israel. Israel was created after World War II as a Jewish homeland, and is bitterly resented by the Arabs. The Jewish immigrants who have come to this country have received a great deal of help in developing the country from Jews in other parts of the world.



From the past to the present. Like the rest of Southwest Asia, the Fertile Crescent has a long and important history. Some historians believe the world's first civilizations may have developed in this area. Many centuries before the birth of Christ, people such as the Babylonians and Assyrians established great empires here. Later, the people of the Fertile Crescent were conquered by other, stronger peoples such as the Persians, the Arabs, and the Turks. For many years the Fertile Crescent was a part of the Turkish Empire.

When the Turkish Empire was broken up, after World War I, some Arab leaders in the Fertile Crescent hoped that they could form an independent, unified nation, but this wish was not fulfilled. France wanted to control parts of this area, and the British government felt that the Jews should be permitted to

Troops guard Jordan's borders. Countries in the middle lands of Southwest Asia have been too distrustful of each other to cooperate effectively in solving their problems.



establish a country here. As we have learned, the establishment of Israel has caused much resentment among the Arab nations of Southwest Asia.

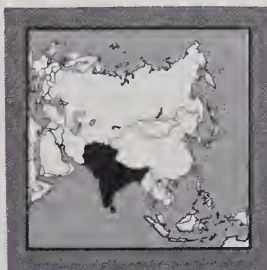
An area that is held back by suspicion and hate. Today, the parts of the Fertile Crescent that were under foreign control have become independent, and there are five new countries in this area. These are Iraq, Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, and Israel. Included within these countries are parts of the desert land that borders the Fertile Crescent. Egypt, which is located mainly in Africa, also includes a small part of the desert area bordering the Fertile Crescent in Southwest Asia. (See maps on pages 40 and 43.) In one of the Fertile Crescent countries, Israel, the people are using modern methods to make the best use of their land and resources. They are receiving financial help in this effort from Jews in other countries and from governments of friendly countries. In the other Fertile Crescent countries, however, most of the people are still very poor. There is so much suspicion and distrust in this part of Asia, that these countries have not been able to work together effectively to overcome their common problems.

Facts To Review

1. Why are there many important trade and travel routes through Southwest Asia?
2. What are some of the problems caused by religious and political differences in Southwest Asia?
3. What is the Arab League? What are its goals?
4. Why is poverty unnecessary in Southwest Asia? What are some of the approaches to solving the problems of poverty?
5. Why has communism made little headway in Southwest Asia?
6. What changes took place on the Arabian peninsula after the defeat of the Turks in World War I?
7. How does Israel differ from the other Fertile Crescent countries?



A high peak of the Himalayas, in Nepal. The Himalayas are part of an area of mountains that separates South Asia from the other regions of Asia. In addition to this mountain area, South Asia has two other main land areas: a river lowland, and an area of hills, plateaus, and mountains.

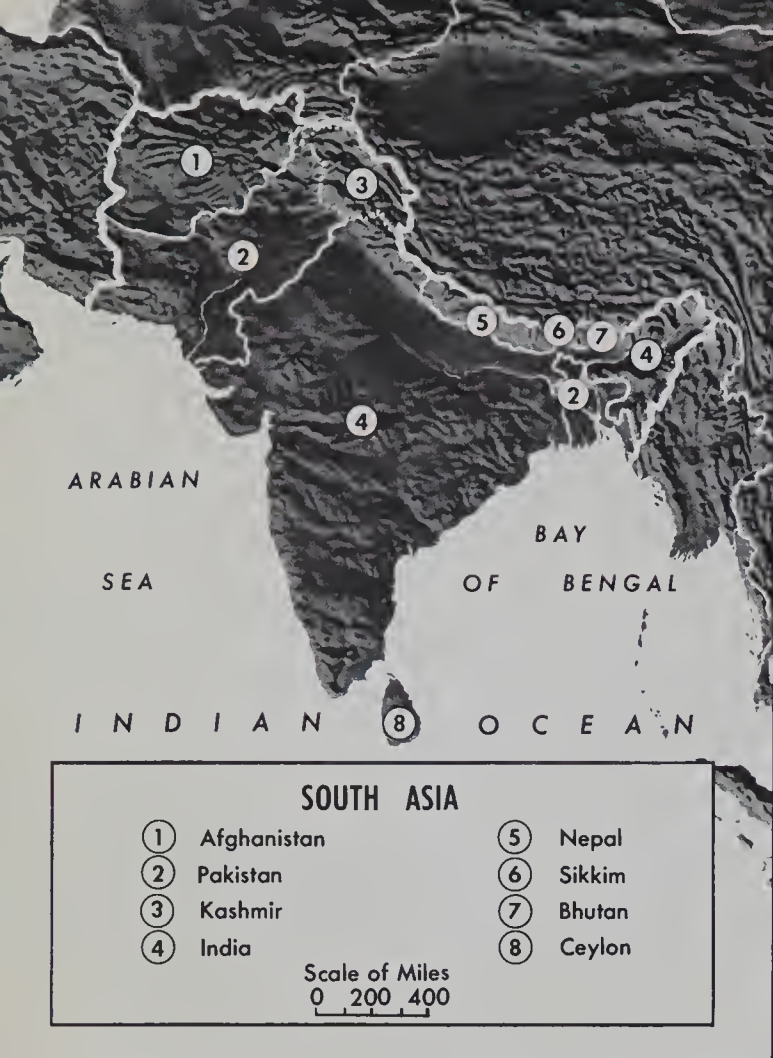


5 South Asia

Problems To Solve

1. Most of the people in South Asia are desperately poor even though this is a region of great natural wealth. **Why is there so much poverty in South Asia?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how the standard of living in South Asia is affected by the following:
 - a. the ways in which the people use their natural resources
 - b. the number of people who live in this region
2. History plays an important part in shaping nations. **In what ways is India a product of its past?** To solve this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about the part that history played in determining the following:
 - a. the many languages spoken in India
 - b. the different religions of India
 - c. the caste system of India
 - d. India's underdeveloped condition (See Chapter 7.)
3. Geography has an important influence on nations. **How have the mountain countries of South Asia been affected by their location?**

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.



Most of South Asia is a huge peninsula that extends off the southern coast of Asia. India is the largest country in South Asia.

Extending off the central part of Asia's southern coast is a large peninsula shaped like a triangle. It is separated from the rest of the continent by mountains. This peninsula and its bordering mountains and islands form the region of South Asia.

A region with three types of land and many climates. Within South Asia are three very different land areas. One is made up of high mountains, the second is a lowland, and the third is an area of hills, plateaus, and mountains.

South Asia's high mountains are in the north. The highest of these, the Himalayas, rise to more than 25,000 feet above sea level and extend into Tibet. The high mountains that lie west of the Himalayas extend into Soviet Middle Asia and into Iran. Swift-flowing streams have helped to cut deep, V-shaped valleys in South Asia's area of high mountains. There are

several fertile basins in this area also. One of the most famous is the beautiful Vale of Kashmir.

At the foot of South Asia's high mountains is a vast lowland that includes the plains of the Indus, the Ganges, and the Brahmaputra rivers. (See map on pages 12 and 13.) This is one of the largest river lowlands in the world. Nearly one half of South Asia's people make their homes in this fertile area.

South of the river lowland, the land rises to form rounded hills, rolling plateaus, and mountains. These highlands cover most of the central and southern parts of the South Asian peninsula. (See map on pages 12 and 13.) On the east and west the highlands dip down to narrow strips of lowland along the coast.

Off the southeastern coast of the peninsula is the pear-shaped island of Ceylon. This is the largest island in South Asia. Like the neighboring peninsula, it

Farmland in northern India. A vast, fertile lowland spreads across the northern part of South Asia's peninsula.





A crowded street in Bombay. About one fifth of all the people in the world live in South Asia, most of them in India. The most densely populated parts of this region are lowland areas where the soil and climate are well suited to agriculture.

is covered mainly with highlands that are bordered along the coast by lowlands.

The climate of South Asia differs from place to place as greatly as the land does. On the high mountain peaks in the north, there is snow throughout the year. In the south, snow never falls, and the weather is warm enough for farming all year long. The map on page 31 shows that there are great differences in rainfall from place to place in South Asia. Parts of this region are so dry that they are deserts. Other parts receive very heavy rainfall. Most of the rain in South Asia comes in summer and is brought by winds called summer monsoons.*

A crowded region. About one fifth of the world's people live in South Asia. It is one of the three most heavily populated parts of the world. (See map on pages 16

and 17.) The land and climate of South Asia help to explain why it is so densely populated. There is more land here that is level and fertile enough for farming than in most parts of Asia. Much of this region also receives enough rain for farming. Rivers, wells, and ponds provide water for irrigating crops in many places where there is too little rain for farming. Although the most crowded parts of South Asia are the well-watered lowlands, many people also live in the area of hills, plateaus, and mountains.

Most of the people in South Asia live in India, the largest country in this region. (See map on opposite page.) India's neighbors in South Asia are the mountain countries to the north, the divided country of Pakistan, and the island country of Ceylon.

*See glossary



Bands of herdsmen called Aryans began to move into India from what is now Iran, sometime before 1500 B.C.

From past to present. Until after World War II, most of the countries in South Asia were under British control. To understand how the British became so powerful here, it is necessary to study the history of this region. Most of the important history in South Asia took place in India, the largest and most influential country here.

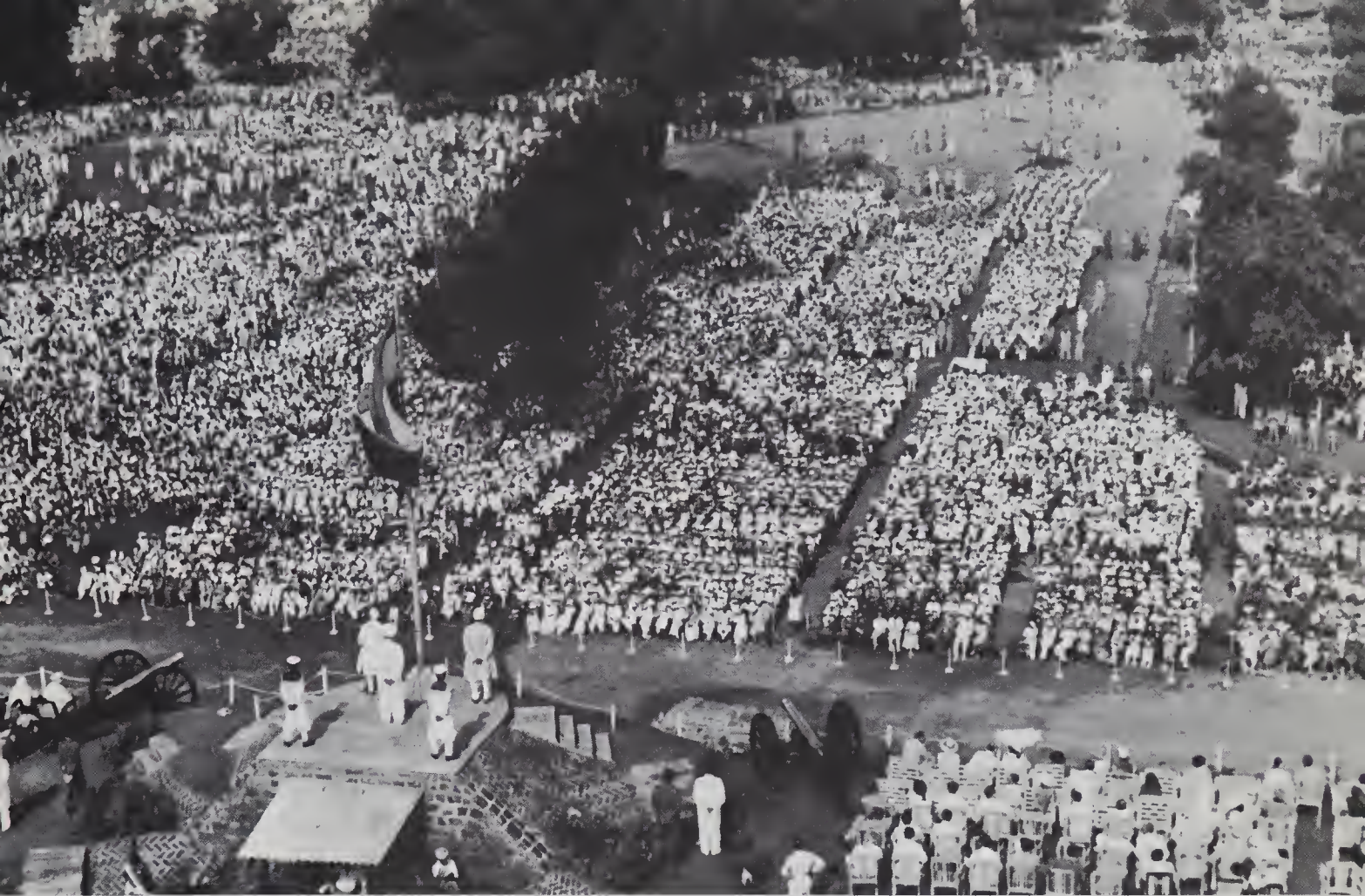
India is one of the world's oldest homes of civilization. People called Dravidians were building large cities here 2,500 years before the birth of Christ. Historians believe these early people had dark-brown skin. Sometime before 1500 B.C., bands of crude tribesmen with lighter skin began to overrun the city builders of India. These invaders, called Aryans, came from the plateaus of what is now Iran, and entered India through passes in the mountains. In the years that followed, the customs and ideas of the Aryans and of the earlier inhabitants of India were blended to form one civilization.

One of the most important features of the civilization that developed in India is the caste system, which divides society into many groups. Some of these groups, or castes, are considered to be higher than others. Caste regulations forbid a person to marry or even to eat with a person who belongs to a lower caste. Some people in India belong to no caste at all and are considered so low that others will not touch them. The conquering Aryans probably developed the caste system to keep themselves apart from the earlier inhabitants of India, whom they considered inferior.

Two of the world's important religions were started in ancient India. One was the Hindu religion, which developed slowly through the centuries as the Aryans and the earlier inhabitants of India learned to live together. The other was Buddhism, which was founded in about the sixth century B.C. by an Indian prince of the Gautama clan who was called Buddha, or "the enlightened one," by his

A Hindu temple in India. One of the world's main religions, Hinduism, developed during the centuries after the Aryans came to India.





Independence Day celebration. In 1947, two independent countries, India and Pakistan, were carved out of territory that had formerly been under British control. Friction over religious differences and over Kashmir soon brought bloodshed to these new nations.

followers. Today, Buddhism is no longer important in India, but it has become the main religion of several neighboring countries. (See map on page 85.)

Although India influenced the rest of the world greatly, it was influenced by outsiders also. Moslem invaders from the northwest began overrunning India in about the tenth century. From the sixteenth to the eighteenth century, India was ruled by powerful Moslems called Moguls. Under their rule, Islam became an important religion in India.

After the Mogul Empire broke up in the eighteenth century, another group of outsiders was able to gain control of India. These were the British, who had been coming to Asia as traders for many years. The British gained control of the Indian states one by one, and extended their control to other parts of South Asia.

Some parts of South Asia were brought under direct British rule. In others, native rulers were permitted to rule under British protection. Afghanistan and Nepal remained officially independent, but even these two countries signed treaties permitting Britain to have a voice in their foreign affairs. Under the British, modern ways began to come to South Asia, especially India. Roads and railroads were built, and many young people received a Western education.

In the twentieth century, the feeling of nationalism, discussed on page 18, helped to bring independence to most of South Asia. The nationalist movement was led by Gandhi, who had been educated in Britain. Under Gandhi's guidance, most of the people of South Asia did not use force and violence to express their desire for independence. Instead,



A political demonstration in New Delhi, India. In 1962 troops from Communist China invaded territory claimed by India.

they used methods of passive resistance, such as refusing to work. Gandhi's methods were successful. In 1947, the British gave up control of most of their territory in South Asia.

Independence brought serious problems. Many Moslem leaders had insisted that the parts of India inhabited mainly by Moslems should become a separate country. Although the British had feared this would cause trouble, they had been forced to agree to the creation of a new Moslem country called Pakistan. (See map on pages 12 and 13.) The partition of India into the independent countries of Pakistan and India was followed by violence and bloodshed. Religious riots broke out between Moslems and Hindus in both countries, and millions of people were forced to flee from their homes.

The religious riots were followed by armed conflict over which nation should have the state of Kashmir. (See map on page 50.) Under conditions that were agreed to by both nations before they gained independence, the rulers of Kashmir and other states were to decide whether they wanted to join India or Pakistan. The ruler of Kashmir, a Hindu, chose to join India. Pakistan objected, however, because most of the people in Kashmir were Moslems.

The armed conflict that broke out between India and Pakistan over Kashmir was halted in 1949 by a United Nations peace commission. India was left in control of two thirds of Kashmir, and Pakistan was left in control of the remainder. Both nations agreed that the people of Kashmir should be allowed to show by voting which nation they wished to join. The vote was never taken, however, and Kashmir remained a source of conflict.

A region with many problems. Like Southwest Asia, South Asia has many problems. One is the distrust between countries of this region. Another problem confronting South Asia is the threat of invasion from Communist China. All of the territory north of South Asia is under Communist control. Part of the border between India and Communist China is in dispute. In 1962, the Chinese Communists invaded territory claimed by India. After more than a month of fighting, the Chinese withdrew. Chinese and Indian troops are still stationed along the border between the two countries, however.

In addition to the problems listed in the previous paragraphs is the great problem of poverty. Although the British brought many modern improvements to South Asia, this region is still underdeveloped. Most of its people are poor and inadequately nourished. The problem of

poverty is especially difficult to solve in South Asia because so many people live here and the population is growing so rapidly. Since increased food production is needed to feed the increasing number of people, it is almost impossible to provide each person with more of the food he needs for better health. It is also difficult to obtain a surplus of agricultural products to export in exchange for equipment needed to develop the region.

Although the various countries of South Asia share similar problems, such as poverty, they are different in other ways. Let us examine these countries separately to learn more about them.

India. Most of the triangular-shaped peninsula of South Asia is occupied by India. More people live in this large country than in any other country in the

Snowcapped mountains and tropical lowlands are both found in India.



A village in India. Most Indian villagers build houses with mud-brick walls. Roofs are made of thatch, tile, or mud.

world except China. Most of these people are farmers who barely raise enough food for their own families.

A country that is divided in many ways. The large country of India is almost like a collection of many different countries. Geography helps to explain some of these differences. Part of the northern mountain area of South Asia, part of the great river lowland, and all of the central and southern hills, plateaus, and mountains are included in India. This country also has a variety of climates, which makes it necessary to plant different crops from place to place. In the coastal lowlands and the eastern part of the great river lowland, both of which are very rainy, rice is the main crop. Wheat and other crops that require less moisture are grown in the drier hills and plateaus and in the western part of the river lowland. On the high, cold mountain slopes to the north, herdsmen graze flocks of sheep, goats, and yaks. In the



Plowing rice fields in southern India. Farming methods in India are so primitive that rice and wheat yields per acre of farmland are very low. The Indian government is working hard to introduce crop rotation and other modern farming methods.

south, tropical crops such as coconuts are grown.

Climate also helps to determine the types of houses people build from place to place in India. Most Indian villagers live in houses that have walls of mud brick and roofs of thatch, tile, or mud. In very warm, rainy areas, however, houses are built with walls of woven palm leaves. High in the forested mountains, they are built of wood.

History helps to explain some of the other ways that India is divided. The caste system that grew up after the Aryan invasions is one of the most serious dividing factors. A law has been passed making it illegal to prevent “untouchables” from using schools, temples, and other public buildings. However, it will take time to break down the barriers of caste. Language differences also divide the people of India. Four main languages and more than a hundred lesser ones are spoken in this large country. The many

groups of people who have invaded India through the centuries are responsible for this variety of languages.

India's resources and how they are being utilized. As you have learned, India's people are very poor. This is especially distressing when you consider that India is a country of great natural wealth. In addition to having some of the largest and best farmlands in Asia, it has large reserves of coal, iron ore, and other minerals. It also has extensive forests, and great rivers that could be harnessed to produce electricity.

India's farm resources are not used as well as they could be. Farming methods here are so poor that about one-third as much rice is produced per acre as in Japan. Although India has more cattle than any other country in the world, most of these animals are pitifully thin. The Hindu religion forbids killing cattle for any reason whatsoever. Since cows in India generally live until they die of

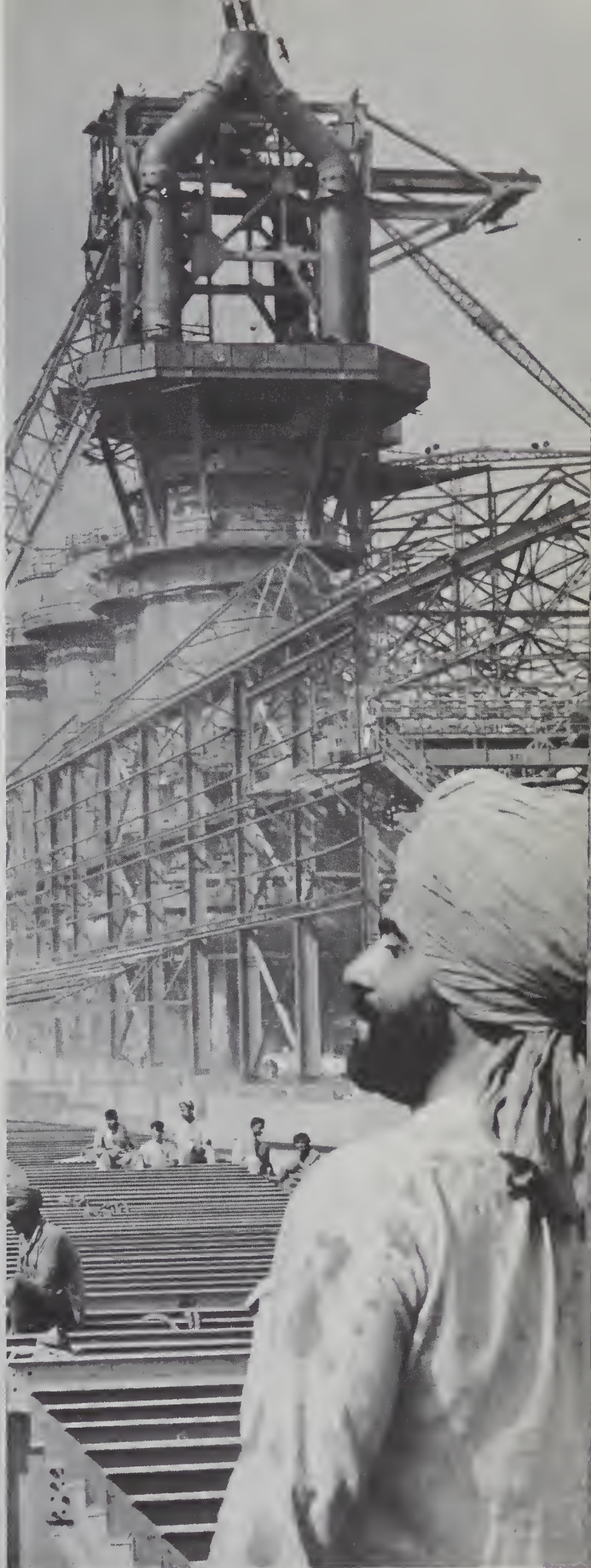
old age or sickness, there are too many of them to feed properly.

India's resources for industry are not fully used, either. For example, only about 3 percent of the possible amount of hydroelectricity that could be produced is being generated. Even so, India is ahead of most other Asian countries in manufacturing and mining. The Indian government has worked hard to develop industry in the years since independence.

India and the rest of the world. India's size, large population, and natural wealth make it one of the world's influential nations. The leaders of India have refused to take sides in the Cold War. They have accepted aid from both sides in this conflict, and have tried to serve as an umpire between them. India's leaders took this position partly because they could not quite believe that the Communists really intended to take over the world by force. Their distrust of the West, which had controlled them for so long, also helped to make them take a neutral position in the Cold War.

In 1962, when the Chinese Communists invaded territory claimed by India, the Indians were forced to reconsider their position. They are no longer quite as trustful of the Communists as they formerly were. However, they are still trying to remain neutral in the Cold War.

Pakistan. The map on pages 12 and 13 shows that the country of Pakistan is divided into two parts. These two sections of the country are separated by more than nine hundred miles of land and are very different from each other. East Pakistan is flat and rainy and is one of the most densely populated parts of the world. West Pakistan has many mountains and deserts and is much less densely populated. Most of Pakistan's people are farmers who are very poor. The majority of



The Tata Iron and Steel Works at Jamshedpur, India, was recently expanded with American aid. In its efforts to industrialize, India is accepting aid from both sides in the Cold War.



A street in Peshawar, in West Pakistan. East and West Pakistan are more than nine hundred miles apart, but together they form one country.

them are Moslems. However, there are about ten million Hindus in the country, mainly in East Pakistan.

Pakistan is the only country in South Asia that belongs to an anti-Communist organization. It is a member of the South-east Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO), to which Australia, New Zealand, and several other countries also belong.

The mountain countries. In the mountains that lie north of India and Pakistan are four countries. Two of these, Afghanistan and Nepal, are independent. The other two, Sikkim and Bhutan, are under Indian protection.

Most of the people in the four mountain countries make their living by farming. In other ways, however, they differ considerably from country to country. The people of Bhutan are Buddhists who

Farmlands in Nepal. This small, independent country lies north of India, in the mountain section of South Asia. Three other countries are also located in this section. These are Afghanistan, which is independent, and Bhutan and Sikkim, which are under Indian protection.



are related to the inhabitants of Tibet. Many of Nepal's people also are related to the Tibetans. In addition, Nepal has large numbers of Hindus of Indian descent. Sikkim has been settled by large numbers of Hindus from Nepal, but has two other major groups whose religion is Buddhism. The people of Afghanistan are divided into different groups that speak different languages. Most of them are followers of Islam.

South Asia's mountain countries are important mainly for their location. The routes of communication between the rest of South Asia and the Communist territories to the north lead through these countries. This is why India is interested in Sikkim and Bhutan. Like India, Nepal and Afghanistan are neutral in the Cold War.

Ceylon. The fourth part of South Asia is the island country of Ceylon, which lies off the southeastern coast of India. (See map on page 50.) This tropical, rainy island has many plantations that produce rubber and tea for export. So much farmland in Ceylon is devoted to export crops that large quantities of food must be imported for the people.

The farmlands of Ceylon are densely populated, and the number of people on the island is increasing rapidly. Most of the people here are descended from groups of immigrants from India. These groups came at different times from different parts of India, and their descendants do not always live together harmoniously. The main religion of Ceylon is Buddhism, but there are also many Hindus, Christians, and Moslems on the island.

Ceylon has been independent since 1948. Like its larger neighbor, India, it maintains a neutral position in the Cold War.



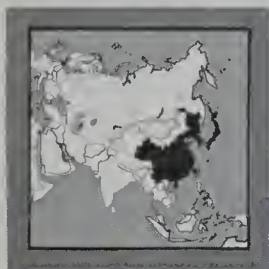
A tea plantation on Ceylon. This densely populated island country, off the southeastern coast of India, became independent in 1948.

Facts To Review

1. What are the three main land areas in South Asia? In what part of the region is each located?
2. Why is South Asia such a heavily populated region?
3. How did the British become so powerful in South Asia?
4. How did most of South Asia gain its independence? What problems did independence bring?
5. What are some of the serious problems facing South Asia today?
6. Name some of the ways in which India is a divided country.
7. In spite of India's great natural wealth, the people there are generally very poor. Why is this so?
8. Why does India take a neutral position in the Cold War?



Along the coast of Japan, in East Asia. Most of East Asia lies between South-east Asia and Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia. This region includes the Korean peninsula, the islands of Japan, and the part of China that is known as China Proper.



6 East Asia

Problems To Solve

1. Although East Asia has a considerable amount of fertile farmland, it imports large amounts of food. **Why isn't this region able to produce enough food for all its people?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how food supplies in East Asia are affected by the following:
 - a. the number of people who live in this region
 - b. the farming methods used by most farmers in this region
2. China and Japan had early civiliza-

tions that were highly developed. Later, Japan adjusted very readily to modern times, but China did not.

Why were Japan's efforts to modernize more successful than China's? In solving this problem you will need to make hypotheses about how the development of each country was affected by the following:

- a. the attitude of national leaders toward Western civilization
- b. the degree of governmental stability in each country between 1900 and the end of World War II

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

The region of East Asia is divided into three main areas. The first and largest of these is the part of Communist China that lies east of Tibet, Sinkiang, and Inner Mongolia. This is sometimes called China Proper. (See map below.) The second is the island country of Japan. The third is the peninsula of Korea, which extends almost like a bridge between Japan and the mainland of China and the Soviet Union. In addition, East Asia includes the small but important areas of Taiwan and Hong Kong.

The most heavily populated part of the world. More people live in East Asia than in any other part of the world. China Proper alone has more than one fifth of the world's people. Japan and Korea, which combined are a little smaller than Texas, together have almost fourteen times as many people as Texas. Most of the vast number of people who live in East Asia belong to the Mongoloid family of peoples.

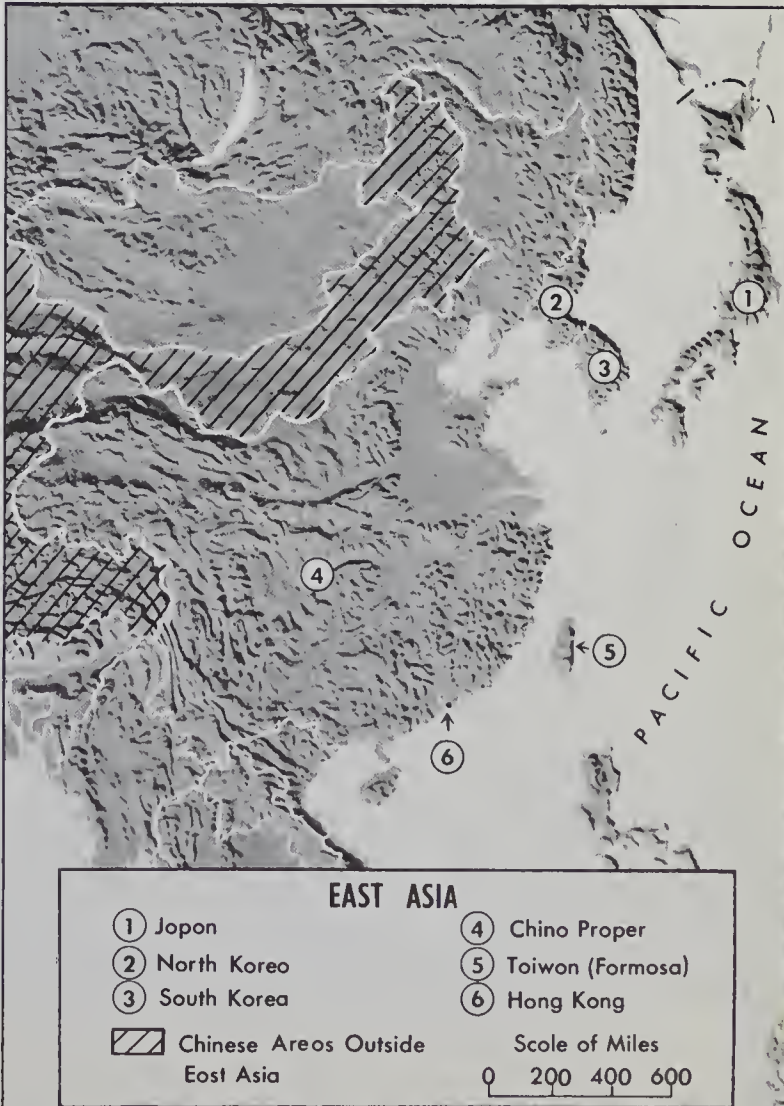
The map on page 31 will help to explain why East Asia is so densely populated. Like South Asia, this region generally receives enough rain for farming. It also is located close enough to the equator to have summers that are long and warm enough for crops to ripen. In the southern part of this region, winters are so mild that crops can be raised all year round. In addition to a favorable climate, East Asia has many fertile river lowlands where the soil is good for farming. Most of the people in East Asia live in these lowlands.

A region with a long, proud history. East Asia has been one of the most densely populated parts of the world for a long time. The first important civilization in this area developed in China over two thousand years before the birth of Christ. By the third century B.C., the Chinese

had established a great empire. The government, scholarship, and customs developed by the Chinese were so fine that they were copied by Japan and Korea. These two smaller countries did not copy their neighbor exactly, however. Instead, they shaped what they borrowed to fit their own needs. By the sixteenth century, when large numbers of European traders were coming to Asia, Japan and Korea had developed civilizations that resembled China's but were unique in many ways.

Unwelcome Westerners force their way into East Asia. The three countries of East Asia were satisfied with their own civilizations and did not want to have any contact with the Europeans who came to

China Proper, which occupies most of East Asia, is the part of Communist China that lies east of Inner Mongolia, Tibet, and Sinkiang.





A street scene in China. More people live in East Asia than in any other part of the world. Most of these people live in China.



Trading ships in a Chinese harbor. For many years, East Asia remained almost isolated from the rest of the world. In the nineteenth century, however, Japan and China were forced to open their ports to western traders. Contact with the West brought great changes to East Asia.

trade. This was partly because some of the first traders who came to Asia were disorderly, uncultured men who gave Asians a wrong impression of the West. For many years, the countries of East Asia remained almost isolated from the rest of the world. During this period of isolation, however, important changes were transforming some of the Western nations into strong industrial powers with warships and weapons far more advanced than those used in China, Japan, and Korea. This made it possible for Westerners to force governments in East Asia to open their ports for trade.

Although East Asians were forced to trade with Westerners, the countries of East Asia did not lose their independence to the West. They were among the few countries in Asia that did not. Even so, the coming of Westerners brought great changes to East Asia. Let us see what these were, and what the countries of East Asia are like today.

How the China of today was created.

China resisted change for as long as possible after European traders began coming to Asia. For years, Westerners were allowed to come to only one Chinese port, and were permitted to do business only with a group of merchants chosen by the government. In the nineteenth century, however, several wars broke out between Westerners and Chinese over trading problems. Each time, the Chinese were defeated and were forced to sign treaties that gave many rights to Westerners in China. Through these treaties, Westerners came to control parts of many Chinese ports. The Westerners who came to these ports brought new ideas with them. However, most Chinese people refused to examine these ideas to see if they were worth borrowing.

The attitude that the Chinese took toward the West left them unprepared for the changes that soon took place in the country. In 1900, a bloody rebellion broke



HONG KONG

Just across the southeastern border of Communist China is a small area, composed partly of islands, that is much more important than its size would suggest. This is the British crown colony of Hong Kong. (See map on page 61.)

Hong Kong has one of the largest natural harbors in the world. After the British gained control of this colony in the nineteenth century, they developed one of the world's most important free* ports here. Many industries have grown up around this port.

Except for a short period during 1962, the border between Hong Kong and China has been closely guarded by the Communists. During 1962, however, the Communists unexpectedly relaxed their guard and permitted huge numbers of people to escape to Hong Kong. The colony was already overcrowded and had no room for this flood of newcomers, so the British authorities were forced to send many of them back. After a short while, the Communists resumed their close guard of the border, and the flood of refugees stopped. However, Hong Kong continues to serve as a constant reminder to the people of Communist China that freedom still exists in the world.

*See glossary

out, in which the Chinese tried to force the Westerners to leave their country. When Western troops put down this rebellion, the Chinese finally came to realize that their traditional ways of living and working were not suitable for the modern world. During the years that followed, thousands of young Chinese were sent abroad to study. In 1911, many of these young people together with other dissatisfied Chinese rebelled against the Emperor, and on February 12, 1912, China became a republic. However, China was not ready for this change. The new government could not keep order. Powerful military men, called warlords, were able to take over parts of the country and rule them almost like separate kingdoms.

During the first few decades after China became a republic, the country was torn by warfare. Warlords fought each other for power and territory. Two political parties, the Nationalists and the Communists, struggled with each other for control of the country. For a time, the Nationalists were successful. Just as they were uniting the country under their control, however, the Japanese invaded China. (See pages 68 and 69.) The struggle between China and Japan became part of a larger conflict known as World War II, in which Japan was defeated.

Peace did not come to China at the end of World War II, in 1945. The Communists, helped by the Soviet Union, continued to fight the Nationalists, who were helped by the United States. By this time many Chinese had come to hate and distrust the Nationalists, and refused to support them. There were several reasons for this. The Nationalists had promised to make reforms that would prevent landlords from oppressing their tenant farmers, but had failed to do so. During World War II, the Nationalists had permitted

TAIWAN

some people to store up food and other scarce goods and sell them at high prices. Also, during its struggle with the Communists, the Nationalist government had felt it necessary to take undemocratic measures, such as using secret police, to stay in power.

The Communists took advantage of the Nationalist government's mistakes. They promised the Chinese people a better life if they could run the government. By 1949, the Communists had become so strong that they were able to force the Nationalist armies and their leaders to flee to the island of Taiwan. (See text at right.) The Communists then took over the government of mainland China and changed the country's name to the People's Republic of China. The United States has refused to recognize the Communist government of China and continues to support the Nationalist government, on Taiwan. Only the Nationalist government is represented in the United Nations. (See page 68.) Mainland China, however, is firmly under Communist control.

China under communism. The Communists who took over China have established a dictatorship and are trying to force their people to catch up with the Western world. Chapter 7 discusses the methods they are using to make China a modern, industrial nation.

Under the Communists, people in China are not free to speak, worship, or even think as they please. Newspapers, broadcasting stations, and schools are under strict government control. The Communists are discouraging people from following the teachings of the great philosopher Confucius, which have been the main guide to behavior in China for thousands of years. In fact, all religious practices are being discouraged.

About one hundred miles east of the mainland of China is one of the world's important islands. This is Taiwan, or Formosa. (See map on page 61.) It is the headquarters of the Chinese Nationalist government, which was driven from the mainland by the Communists in 1949. The Nationalists consider Taiwan to be a province of China, and are awaiting the time that they can invade the mainland. Although the United States government agrees that the Nationalists are China's rightful rulers, it is not encouraging them in this ambition. The United States has promised to defend Taiwan from Communist aggression, however. For this reason, a Communist attempt to invade this island could lead to another global war.

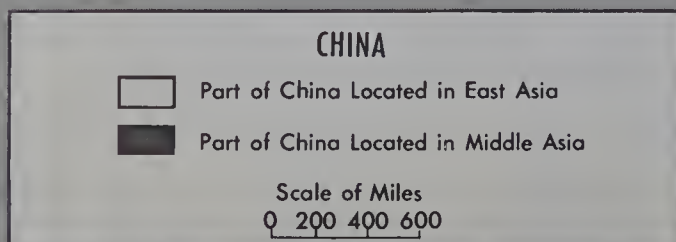
Taiwan is a subtropical, mountainous island about twice the size of New Jersey. The majority of its nearly twelve million inhabitants live on the narrow coastal plain in the western part of the island. The Nationalists permit little democracy on Taiwan, but they do allow free enterprise. This economic freedom, which in the past was combined with large amounts of United States aid, has helped the people of Taiwan to achieve one of the highest standards of living in Asia.



A country of contrasts. The People's Republic of China, which the Communists control, is one of the three largest countries on the earth. Within this large country are many contrasts. In the north and west are the bleak, barren lands of Sinkiang, Tibet, and Inner Mongolia. (See pages 27 through 32.) The part of China that is located in East Asia is China Proper. It is divided into three sections that are very different from each other. One is made up of the thinly populated mountains of west central China. The other two are North China and South China. These two sections are the most productive and densely populated parts of the country.

South China is a land of mild winters, abundant rainfall, and hilly, green countryside. Most of the farms here are in the lowlands, but crops are also grown on terraced hillsides. The most important crop in this part of China is rice.

China is located partly in East Asia and partly in Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia.



Laying a pipeline from an oil field in Sinkiang. The Chinese are working to develop their many natural resources.

North China has larger lowlands, colder winters, and less rainfall than South China. Much of the countryside in this part of the country is dry and brown. Dry-weather crops such as wheat are important here.

In both North and South China, most of the forests that could be easily reached have been cut down, so there is little wood to use in building houses. Mud bricks and pounded* earth are two important building materials used by the Chinese. In the rainy southern part of the country, bamboo grows well and is frequently used in house construction.

A country with adequate resources for industry. In addition to its good farmlands, China has many other resources. Within this country are some of the world's largest coal reserves. These are well distributed throughout China. Among the other important minerals found here are iron ore, tin, tungsten, and antimony. China also has great rivers that could be harnessed to produce hydroelectricity.

A country with overwhelming problems. China's leaders face overwhelming problems in making use of their country's resources. Like most countries in Asia, China is underdeveloped. (See Chapter 7.) Most of its people are farmers who have barely enough to eat. The problem of underdevelopment is particularly difficult to solve in China because the population of this country is so huge and is increasing so rapidly. Any increase in food production must be used to feed the increasing number of people. Therefore, little food can be exported to pay for factory machinery and other equipment needed to help industry grow.

Communist China and the rest of the world. Although the People's Republic of China has many problems, it is a country that demands the attention of the rest of the world. For a time after the Communists gained control of China, the Chinese Communists agreed to accept the leadership of the Soviet Union. Now, however,

A discussion group. Communist Party leaders control the Chinese people in many ways. The people are not free to speak, worship, or even think as they please. In discussion groups and meetings, they are taught to believe that what the Communists do is always right.



A crowded street in Shanghai. China's huge population is growing so fast that farm production can barely meet the demands for food.



RECOGNITION OF RED CHINA

In 1949, the Communists drove the Nationalists from the mainland of China and declared themselves the legitimate rulers of the country. Non-Communist countries then faced the problem of deciding whether the Communists or the Nationalists should be acknowledged as China's rightful rulers. Some countries, such as Great Britain, felt it was reasonable to recognize the Communist government, which was firmly in power. The United States and a number of other countries did not agree, however, and withheld recognition of Red China.

The reasons on which the Americans based their decision were largely emotional. Our country had helped China during World War II. Now the Chinese opposed us in the Cold War. The Korean War further strengthened American antagonism toward Red China, for thousands of American soldiers were killed by Chinese Communist troops in this struggle.

Largely due to American efforts, Nationalist China rather than Communist China is represented in the United Nations. The issue of representation has been debated many times by the nations of the General Assembly. In 1965, forty-seven of these nations voted to seat the Chinese Communists in place of the Nationalists. However, this was not a two-thirds majority, which is needed for the Nationalists to be replaced.

The recognition of Red China remains a major issue in our country. Those who favor recognition point out that the Communist government is firmly established and there is little chance that Nationalist rule will be restored on the mainland. Others feel that by recognizing Red China we would betray Nationalist China and other Asian allies who count on us to curb the spread of communism.

Communist China is challenging the Soviet Union's position as leader of the Communist world. China cannot yet match the military strength of the Soviet Union or of the leading nations in the Western world. However, it does have more than 700 million people organized under a strong and purposeful government dedicated to bringing the world under communism. This alone makes it necessary for other nations to listen to the opinions of Communist China.

How the Japan of today was created.

The attitude that the island country of Japan took toward the Westerners who forced their way into East Asia was very different from the one taken by China. Japan's leaders quickly realized that the only way their country could remain independent was to become modern. Japanese students were sent abroad to study, and experts from Western countries were invited to Japan to teach modern skills and ideas to the Japanese. Factories and schools were established, and transportation facilities were modernized. The army and navy were reorganized and strengthened. By the twentieth century, Japan was well on the way to becoming one of the world's important powers.

In spite of its great progress, Japan faced serious problems. There was too little farmland in this small island country to feed the large and growing population. Japan had to export manufactured goods in order to import food. To do so, it had to import raw materials for factories. It also had to find foreign markets for its manufactured goods.

The leaders of the Japanese army and navy thought that the best way for their country to obtain the things it needed was to establish an empire. These leaders believed that it was Japan's right and duty to unite all Asia, and possibly the



Steelworks in northern Kyushu. Japan is one of Asia's most prosperous countries and one of the world's leading industrial powers. Industrial prominence has been achieved in spite of the fact that Japan must import large amounts of iron, coal, and other raw materials.

whole world, under the rule of the Japanese Emperor. Throughout most of Japan's history, military men had been considered the highest class of people in Japan. For this reason, these leaders were powerful enough to force their will on the Emperor. In 1931, the Japanese began to take over territory belonging to China. After World War II began, they also took over most of Southeast Asia. At first the Japanese were outstandingly successful in their attempts to gain a vast empire in Asia. In 1945, however, they were defeated by the combined forces of the Allied* nations.

After the war, still greater changes came to Japan. Large numbers of Allied soldiers were sent to occupy the country.

They introduced many Western customs. They also made a sincere effort to bring democracy to Japan. In addition, the United States gave Japan a great deal of aid in repairing war damage and modernizing its economy.

Today, Japan is one of the most prosperous countries in Asia and one of the most important industrial countries in the world. Only about one fourth of its people are farmers, and the number is decreasing. More than six tenths of the people live in or near towns and cities, a much larger proportion of the population than in most other Asian countries. Japan must still import food and raw materials. However, it now obtains these goods through peaceful trade.



Farmlands in Japan. About one fourth of the people in Japan are farmers. Their yields of rice per acre are the highest in Asia.

A beautiful island country. Through the centuries the Japanese people have had a deep love for their homeland. This little country has four main islands. Much of the land on these islands is covered with forested mountains. At the foot of these highlands are small plains covered with neat fields and villages. On the three southern islands, village houses are made with sliding doors and walls to admit as much sun and fresh air as possible. In the northernmost island, Hokkaido, however, winters are too long and cold for this kind of house construction. Sturdy wood houses are built there. Largely because of its climate, Hokkaido is the least densely populated of the islands of Japan.

The new alongside the old. Life in Japan is a mixture of modern ways and old customs. Seven out of ten homes have television sets, and washing machines and refrigerators are becoming increasingly common. Many Japanese who have

adopted modern ways still observe traditional customs. A Japanese man may ride home from his modern office on the busy subway. When he arrives home, he is likely to change into a comfortable kimono and sit on a soft mat to read the paper.

How the Korea of today was created.

The small country of Korea was forced to open its ports to trade by the Japanese, not by Westerners. This took place in 1876, after Japan had begun to copy the industrial nations of the West. Trading with Korea was not enough to satisfy Japan, however. In 1910, the Japanese took over this country. During the next thirty-five years, the Koreans were forced to produce what the stronger nation of Japan needed.

Japan's defeat in World War II did not bring an end to Korea's troubles. The location of this little country made it very important, for it led like a land bridge from the mainland of Asia toward

A street in Tokyo. The Japanese have borrowed much from the West, but they still observe traditional customs and are proud to be Japanese.





During the Korean War, the United Nations sent American and other troops to help prevent the Communists in North Korea from taking over South Korea. Today, North Korea still has a Communist government. South Korea is now a republic.

the islands of Japan. At the close of the war, troops from the Soviet Union occupied the northern part of the country. A short time later, the southern part was occupied by American troops. The dividing line between the areas occupied by these two armies was the 38th parallel. The Americans and the Russians could not agree on what kind of government Korea should have, so two separate governments were established. The one north of the 38th parallel was Communist, and the one south of it was anti-Communist.

In 1950, the Communists in North Korea tried to take over South Korea by force. To prevent them from doing so, the United Nations sent troops to Korea. Most of these troops were from the

United States. The Korean War lasted three years. It took the lives of many United Nations soldiers as well as the lives of thousands of Koreans. When it ended, in 1953, the country was still divided, near the 38th parallel.

Korea today. Korea remains a divided country. North Korea has a Communist government much like that of neighboring Communist China. The United Nations and the United States tried to help South Korea establish a democracy. In 1961, an army general who felt the democratic government leaders were dishonest overthrew them and established a dictatorship. Two years later, however, elections were held in South Korea. The people chose a new president and assembly.

North and South Korea differ from each other geographically as well as politically. South Korea is warmer and has larger lowlands than North Korea. Also, it is more densely populated. Although North Korea has less farmland than South Korea, it has more mines and factories. Many of these were established by the Japanese when they controlled Korea. They are now under Communist control.

North and South Korea have various religions. The Koreans adopted Buddhism centuries ago. Confucian philosophy has also been important in this country for a long time. In more recent years, Christian missionaries converted many Koreans to Christianity. In North Korea, as in Communist China, religion is being discouraged by the government.

Most of the people in both North and South Korea are desperately poor. They generally live in small houses with mud

walls and thatch roofs. Farming is the main occupation. Much of the poverty that the Korean people suffer results from the fact that their country has been a battlefield for the armies of stronger nations.

Facts To Review

1. What are the three main parts of East Asia?
2. Why is East Asia so densely populated?
3. How did the Communists come to power in China?
4. What are some of the serious problems China's leaders face?
5. Why does Communist China warrant the attention of the rest of the world?
6. How did the attitude of the Japanese toward Westerners differ from the Chinese attitude?
7. How did the problem of its size help lead Japan into World War II?
8. What are some of the changes that took place in Japan after World War II?
9. How did Korea become a divided country?
10. What differences besides political ones are there between North and South Korea?

A Korean village. Most North and South Koreans live in small, thatch-roofed houses and earn their living in agriculture. The best farmlands are in South Korea, where the climate is milder and the lowlands larger. North Korea is more industrialized than South Korea.



Checkup for Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6

Map Study

Study the maps suggested below, and answer the following questions:

1. What are the six main land regions of Asia? (Use map on pages 24 and 25.)
2. Which region of the Asian continent is closest to the United States? Which regions are closest to Europe? (Use map on pages 24 and 25, and a globe.)
3. What is the approximate distance from the easternmost point of Asia to the westernmost point? How does this compare with the distance from the Atlantic to the Pacific coasts of the United States? (Use the scale of miles on a globe.)
4. Name four mountain ranges in Asia. Where is each of these ranges located? (Use map on pages 12 and 13.)
5. Where are the large lowland areas of Asia located? (Use map on pages 12 and 13.)
6. What are the two most heavily populated regions of Asia? (Use maps on pages 17, 24, and 25.)
7. Where are some of the driest areas in Asia? (Use maps on pages 12, 13, and 31.)
8. Which regions of Asia have the heaviest rainfall? (Use maps on pages 24, 25, and 31.)
9. Which regions of Asia have the coldest temperatures throughout the year? Which regions have warm temperatures the year round? (Reach a conclusion by using a globe, and the map on pages 24 and 25.)
10. Which countries of Asia are under Communist control? (Use maps on pages 12, 13, and 21.)
11. What are some of the largest inland bodies of water in Asia? How do they compare in size to the Great Lakes of North America? (Use map on pages 12 and 13, and a globe.)
12. What are the two largest peninsulas of Asia? In which region is each located? (Use maps on pages 12, 13, 24, and 25.)
13. Which two regions of Asia are crossed by important travel routes? (Reach a conclusion by using the map on pages 24 and 25, and a globe.)

Report Topics

Using the information in Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6, and sources such as encyclopedias and world history books, write a report on one of the following topics:

1. A Continent of Contrasts

Asia is a continent of many extreme contrasts. Write a report describing the many different types of contrasts in Asia. Include

the extreme differences in climate, land features, religion, people, wealth, and political unity. Support each contrast with an example similar to the following:

“Asia has many contrasts in temperature. One of the coldest areas of the world, Siberia, is located here. So are the parched, burning deserts of Saudi Arabia.”

2. Human Hindrances to Progress

Hate, greed, and distrust are some of the greatest hindrances to progress in Asia. Write a report about these hindrances that answers the following questions:

- a. How does the greed of some wealthy landowners in Southwest Asia prevent progress there?
- b. How do national rivalries and jealousies, particularly in Southwest Asia, impede progress?
- c. How do religious differences in India, Pakistan, and Southwest Asia breed hate and distrust? In what way do they hinder progress? Compare the religious struggles in these areas to the Thirty Years' War in Europe. What effect did this war have on Europe?
- d. How do you think these human hindrances to progress could be overcome?

3. Asia — Birthplace of the World's Great Religions

You may wish to organize your report in a manner similar to this:

- a. an opening section telling which religions originated in Asia
- b. a section telling the parts of Asia in which these religions were founded, and the parts of Asia and other continents to which these religions spread
- c. a section that includes some of the influences these religions have had on the parts of Asia and other continents to which they have spread

Reading Suggestions

Inside Asia, by John Gunther

American in Russia, by H. E. Salisbury

Mountains in the Sea, by Kathryn Gallant

The Grass Roof, by Younghill Kang

Out of This World, Across the Himalayas to Forbidden Tibet, by Lowell J. Thomas

India Today, by F. R. Moraes

The Splendor of Persia, by Robert Payne

The Good Earth, by Pearl S. Buck

The World's Great Religions, by the Editorial Staff of *Life*



Plowing a field in India. In the underdeveloped areas of the world, which include most of the countries of Asia, Africa, and Latin America, most work is done with the muscle power of men and animals. Production is low, and the majority of people are poor.

7 A Part of the Underdeveloped World

Problems To Solve

1. The countries of the world may be divided generally into two groups, developed and underdeveloped. **Why have the underdeveloped countries failed to keep up with the developed countries?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how the progress of a country could be affected by the following:
 - a. its history
 - b. its climate
 - c. its resources
 - d. its people
2. The developed countries of the world are trying to help their less fortunate neighbors. **Why is this their responsibility?** In solving this problem you will need to make hypotheses about the following:
 - a. moral reasons for giving aid
 - b. business reasons for giving aid
 - c. political reasons for giving aid

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

The world's countries may be divided generally into two groups. In one are the developed countries, where most of the people earn a comfortable living. In the other are the underdeveloped countries, where the general standard of living is very low. Among the developed group are the United States, Canada, Australia, and the countries of western and northern Europe. The Soviet Union may also be considered to belong to the developed group, even though it is still behind the countries listed above in standard of living and utilization of resources. Among the underdeveloped group are most of the countries of Asia, Africa, and Latin America.

What are the differences between developed and underdeveloped countries? The basic difference between the world's developed and underdeveloped countries lies in the way their people produce the

food and other goods they use. In developed countries, people produce most of what they use with the help of machines that are run by forms of power such as electricity. The people of underdeveloped countries, however, produce many of the things they need by hand or with tools that are powered by the muscles of men or animals. ×

This tremendous difference in the way goods are produced did not exist before the eighteenth century. Prior to that time, some machinery was in use, but people throughout the world depended mainly on muscle power to do their work. In the eighteenth century, however, the use of machinery became widespread in England. From there it spread to the other countries that today belong to the developed group of nations. The change that machinery brought to these countries was so great that it is called the Industrial Revolution.

Planting wheat in the United States. In developed countries, such as the United States and Denmark, people do most of their work with the help of machinery. This greatly increases their productivity, and enables them to achieve a much higher standard of living.



The people who live in industrialized countries are able to make much fuller use of their natural resources than those who live in countries where most work is done by muscle power. For example, one man using a tractor and a modern steel plow can work as much land as many men using wooden plows drawn by oxen. Modern power-driven machinery has freed the people of industrialized countries from the struggle of producing enough food for survival. Using machinery, a few people are able to produce enough food for many persons besides themselves. This permits a large part of the population to work at occupations that provide services or manufactured goods. Using machines, these people are able to accomplish much more than they could working by hand. They also are able to make a much better living than they could as subsistence farmers. For these reasons, industrialized nations have more money, manufactured goods, and equipment than they need for mere survival. They can use the surplus to pay for improvements in their transport, educational, and industrial facilities. This makes it possible for them to develop their resources still further.

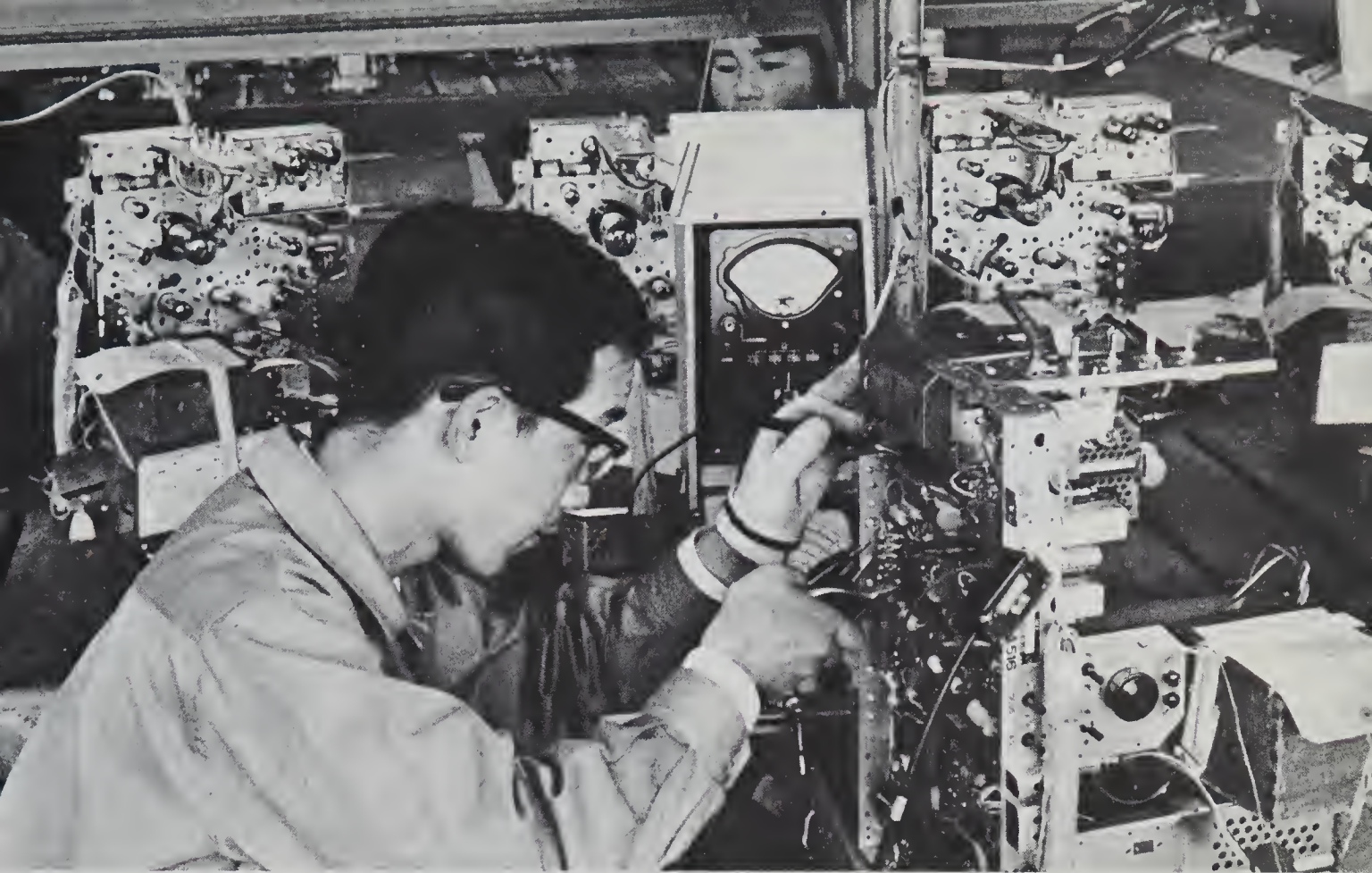
Nations that have not experienced an industrial revolution do not have these advantages. Their farmers still use such simple methods that they are able to raise enough food for only a few people besides themselves. This makes it difficult for farmers in underdeveloped countries to earn a good living. Also, it makes it necessary for a much larger part of the population to work in farming.

Underdeveloped countries differ from developed countries in other ways. They have far fewer schools, hospitals, factories, roads, and railroads. Health conditions are poor, and many of the people

cannot read or write. Since there are few factories, and few people with enough education to work in modern industry, underdeveloped countries must import most of the manufactured goods they use. They depend on the exportation of farm and forest products and minerals in order to earn money for the manufactured goods they import. In many cases, foreigners from more advanced countries control the mines and plantations that produce these export goods.

Although the vast majority of the people in underdeveloped countries are very poor, there is generally a small group of very wealthy native people in each country. In many underdeveloped areas, these people own much of the farmland and rent it at high prices to farmers. The governments of many underdeveloped countries are controlled by the wealthy class. This class often works against reforms that would help the majority of the people, for these reforms would endanger the position of the privileged rich.

What is the life of the average individual like in an underdeveloped country? The wealthy people of the world's underdeveloped countries live in luxury, but they make up only a tiny part of the population. For an example of how most of the people live, let us examine the life of an ordinary farmer in the country of India. Unlike some of his neighbors, this man owns his farm, so he does not have to pay part of his harvest to the landlord as rent. However, his farm is so small and his farming tools are so primitive that he can raise barely enough to provide food for his family. There is very little left over to sell, so the farmer cannot earn enough money to buy the tools and fertilizer he needs to increase his harvest. His life is a relentless struggle just to stay alive.



Skilled Japanese workers disprove the myth that non-white people are inferior. Racial inferiority is one of several myths used to explain why some nations are less developed than others.

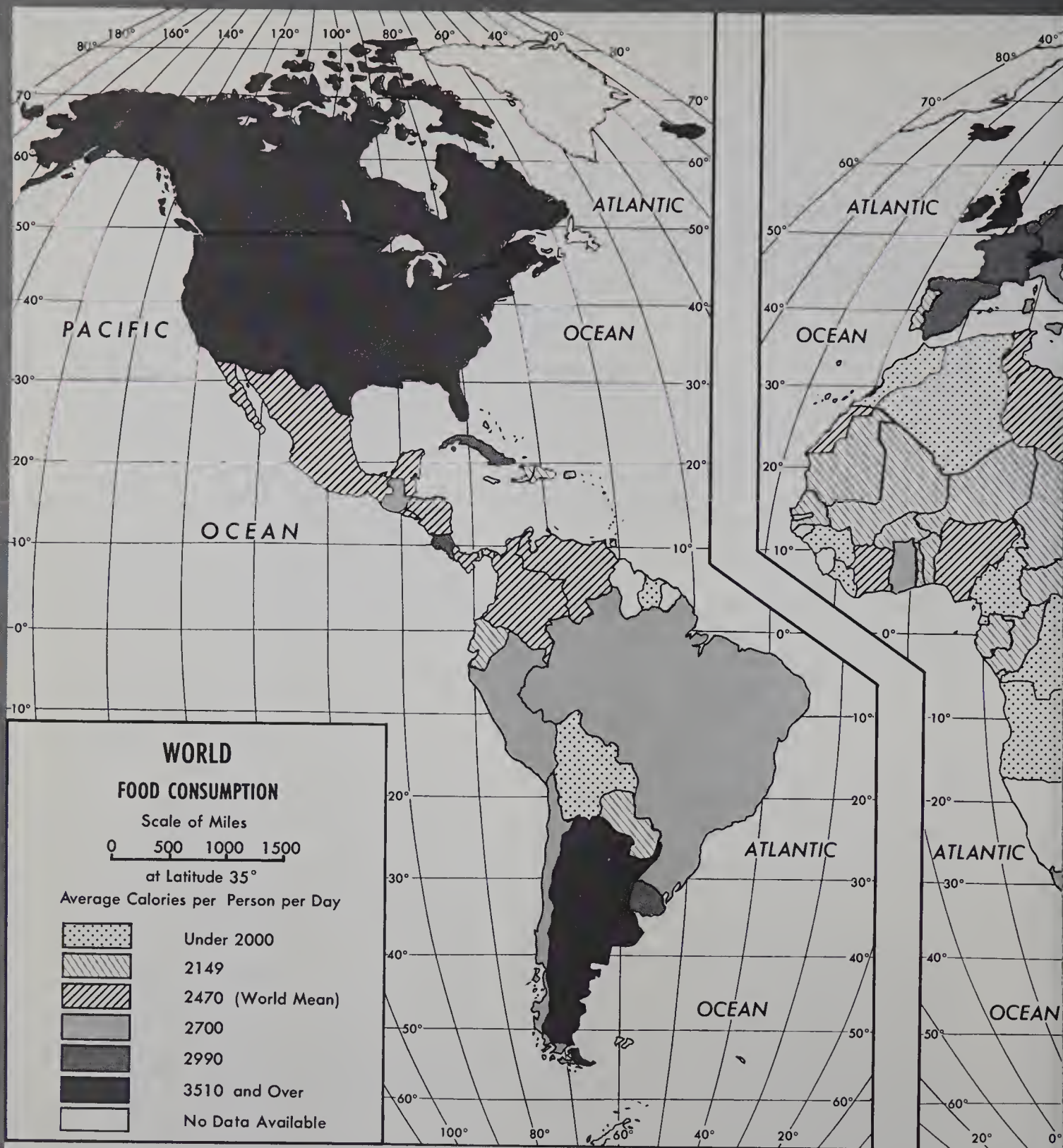
Like many of the people in underdeveloped countries, this Indian farmer cannot read or write. His ignorance makes it even more difficult for him to better his condition. Discouragement, sickness, and lack of proper food cut down his energy and enthusiasm. Health conditions in his village are so poor that about half the children there die before they reach school age.

One of the most difficult burdens this farmer bears is his lack of savings or insurance to use in time of unexpected misfortune, such as serious illness or drought. He raises so little food that he is unable to save money to carry him through such emergencies. In time of need, he may have to choose between starvation or borrowing money from the village moneylender at huge interest rates. If he borrows, he probably will have a great deal of difficulty gathering enough money to repay his debt.

What causes a nation to be underdeveloped? One of the most baffling questions today is: "What causes a nation to be underdeveloped?" Several reasons have been suggested. Some of these are true, and others prove false when you examine them. Let us explore both the facts and the myths.

The myth of racial inferiority. One common reason given for the backwardness of underdeveloped nations is that their people generally belong to "inferior" races. For many years, people in Western nations felt that it was the "white man's burden" to control the underdeveloped nations of the world. Some Westerners believed that the natives of underdeveloped nations were not capable of making use of their resources without supervision from the "superior" white race.

This myth can be quickly disproved by examining the country of Japan. The Japanese people do not belong to the



Nearly half of the world's people do not have the food they need for energy and good health. Most of these people live in underdeveloped countries. If the world's population continues to increase at the present rate, there will be more than twice as many people to feed in these countries thirty-five years from now. Feeding the rapidly growing number of hungry people in the world is one of the gravest problems facing mankind. The United Nations has established a special agency, called the Food and Agri-

culture Organization, to deal with this urgent problem.

One solution to the problem of feeding the world's hungry people is to increase the amount of land under cultivation. There are millions of square miles of untouched grasslands, deserts, and tropical forests in the world. The problems involved in raising crops profitably in these areas are enormous. However, modern science and technology will give mankind the tools to do so if necessary.

At present, a more sensible approach



to the problem of producing more food is to increase the productivity of each acre of farmland already in use. Science and technology have made this possible in the more industrialized nations of the world. Farmers in these countries use chemical fertilizer, mechanized farm equipment, improved seed, and scientific methods of breeding and feeding livestock. A comparison between Denmark and India illustrates the effectiveness of these modern farming methods. Danish farms produce more than four times as

many bushels of wheat per acre as farms in India.

The industrialized nations of the world must pass on their skills and knowledge to the underdeveloped nations. Until these underdeveloped nations increase their agricultural production, they will not be able to provide a better way of life to the growing number of hungry people within their borders. This problem concerns every human being, for until it is solved, the world cannot have peace.

white race, but they have made their country one of the world's important industrial powers.

The myth of colonialism. Another myth often used to explain the backwardness of underdeveloped nations is that most of them formerly were colonies, controlled by stronger nations. These outside countries wanted to obtain raw materials from their colonies and sell manufactured goods to them. For this reason, no great effort was made to develop consumer industries in colonial areas. Many people feel that this explains why these areas are backward today.

To some extent this accusation is true, but it is not the whole cause of the present situation of the underdeveloped world. Several underdeveloped countries, such as Thailand, were never under the control of Western nations, yet they are no more advanced than their neighbors that formerly were colonies. In many cases, underdeveloped countries actually were helped by the more advanced countries that controlled them. Under colonial rule, roads, railroads, and factories were built and health conditions were improved in many backward areas.

The myth of climate. Unfavorable climate is another reason put forth to explain the backwardness of certain nations. For example, some observers feel that the inhabitants of countries that have a hot climate all year round cannot be expected to have as much energy as people who live in areas that have a change of seasons. Certainly climate does have important effects on human activity. However, it cannot be considered the cause of underdevelopment. Korea, one underdeveloped nation, has a climate that is suitable both for farming and for encouraging human energy. The Queensland region of Australia, on the other hand, has

a tropical climate. However, people there have developed their resources well and enjoy a high standard of living.

The myth of insufficient resources. Still another myth that people use to explain why some nations are backward is that they have too few natural resources or that their resources must be shared by too many people. The lack of sufficient resources does make industrial development difficult, but not impossible. Mountainous, rugged Switzerland has very few natural resources, but its hardworking people have made good use of what their country offers to achieve a high standard of living. The Netherlands, which is not rich in resources either, is one of the most densely populated countries on earth. Yet its people also enjoy a high standard of living.

A nation's development depends mainly on the will and skill of its people. Although many reasons given for the backwardness of the underdeveloped nations can be disproved, there are two that cannot be. These are the attitude toward life that most people in underdeveloped nations hold, and the level of education they have achieved. In the rich, developed nations of the world, most of the people have had an opportunity to learn to read and write and to gain the skills and information needed for living effectively in the modern world. Generally, they are energetic, optimistic, and willing to try new ideas. In the poor, underdeveloped countries, however, many people are fearful of new ideas and unwilling to accept changes. The revolution of rising expectations is making them impatient with their poverty, but they do not know how to go about improving their condition because many of them are illiterate and unskilled.



In Japan and other developed countries, most of the people can read and write. In underdeveloped countries, however, many of the people lack these important skills. A nation's development depends largely on the attitudes and skills of its people.

There are several reasons why the people of underdeveloped nations lack attitudes and skills needed to improve their condition. As we have learned, there are too few schools in these countries to educate all the people. Also, because of food production and health conditions the people have less energy than they should have. Another important reason is that these people have so little security that they cannot afford to take risks. It is hard to persuade them to experiment, for they have nothing saved up to live on if an experiment is not successful. In some of these countries, religion and social customs also discourage change. For example, in India, cows are sacred to Hindus and may not be killed by them, even to feed the starving. The desire of some wealthy people in underdeveloped countries to keep things as they are is another

deterrent to progress. Still another deterrent is distrust toward the Western nations that once controlled so much of the underdeveloped world. Many people in underdeveloped countries are still so sensitive about the former dominance of the West that they are unwilling to follow helpful advice from Westerners.

As you can see, some of the problems of the underdeveloped countries are interwoven. For example, it is hard to establish schools because there are so few educated people, but there cannot be more educated people until there are more schools. A situation of this kind is called a vicious circle. Breaking the vicious circles that contribute to underdevelopment is one of the great challenges that confront the world today. This challenge is being met in one manner by the Communists and in other ways by the

non-Communist countries. Let us examine some of these approaches.

The Communist answer to the problem of underdevelopment. The Communists are trying to solve the problem of underdevelopment by establishing dictatorships that sacrifice individual rights for what the leaders think is the national good. To see how these dictatorships work, let us examine Communist China. The Communist leaders of this huge country believe that they alone know what is best for the Chinese people. No one in China is permitted to oppose this government. To prevent opposition, the government controls newspapers, radio stations, schools, and all other facilities through which ideas are spread. The government also controls all means of production, such as farms, factories, and mines. It decides what goods are to be made and what wages and working hours should

be. It plans ahead all progress that is to be made in the country, and expects these plans to be followed without question.

The Communists have been in complete control of China for over fifteen years. During this period they have been able to use their country's natural resources, people, and institutions just as they pleased. They have been able to force the people to accept low wages so they could obtain the capital* they needed for developing new industry. They have been able to imprison or execute all those who objected to their method of running the country. These efforts have had some success. Progress has been made in industry, and living standards have improved. Even so, China continues to be an underdeveloped country. Nearly eight tenths of the labor force still consists of farm workers who depend mainly on muscle power to do their work.

*See glossary

Building a reservoir in China. In Communist China, a dictatorial government is using force in an attempt to solve the problem of underdevelopment. Resources and industries in this country are government controlled, and the people must obey orders without question.





A cattle-vaccination program is being carried on by the government of Afghanistan with the help of the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations. The non-Communist underdeveloped countries are receiving a great deal of foreign aid in their efforts to develop.

The non-Communist solutions to the problem of underdevelopment. The non-Communist underdeveloped countries are not as uniform in their approach to solving their problems as the Communist countries. Some of these underdeveloped countries are doing very little to improve their condition. Others are working hard. Let us examine the approach that India, one of the largest non-Communist underdeveloped countries, is taking. The Indian government is trying to plan ahead the progress that its country should make, and controls many of the important industries. However, it is trying not to sacrifice the rights of the people in its attempts to help them. For example, farmers in India are encouraged but not

forced to use new farming methods that will help them increase their production.

The non-Communist underdeveloped countries of the world are receiving a great deal of foreign aid in their efforts to develop. This aid is coming both from Communist nations such as the Soviet Union, and from free nations such as the United States. With this help, considerable progress is being made. However, like Communist China, these non-Communist countries are still very poor.

Some hard facts to face. The reason that both the Communists and the non-Communists are having difficulty in helping the underdeveloped nations is that there is no easy answer to the problem of underdevelopment. This is one of the hard

Asia's Contributions to the World



A Phoenician necropolis in Southwest Asia

Asia has not always been a continent of underdeveloped countries. Throughout much of history, it has been the home of powerful and advanced nations. Not until the Industrial Revolution did Asia fall behind the Western world. An awareness of what was accomplished in Asia before that time will give you a greater appreciation of what the people of this continent may be capable of in the future.

Western civilization has its roots in Asia and northern Africa. The foundations of the civilization that the people of the Western world have developed were laid in Asia and the neighboring continent of Africa. Five thousand years ago, the people of Europe, North America, and most other parts of the world had not advanced beyond the Stone Age. In the Fertile Crescent* of Southwest Asia and the Nile River Valley of northern Africa, however, changes had been taking place. In these river lowlands, people such as the Egyptians and Sumerians had developed irrigation systems that made it possible to raise a surplus of food. This had freed part of the population from agricultural work and given them time to think and invent new ways of doing things. The people in these lowland areas had developed the art of metalworking, which enabled them to make better tools and weapons. They had created a system of writing, which helped them to record and pass along information. As time went on, they made important advances in the fields of mathematics, astronomy, medicine, architecture, and engineering.

Traders and travelers helped to carry the skills and knowledge developed in the Fertile Crescent and the Nile Valley to other parts of the world. Among the places to which this learning spread was Greece, in Europe. The people of Greece used the basic skills they learned from Asia and Africa in building a great civilization. In later centuries, Greek civilization spread to other parts of Europe. It became the basis of the way of life we know today in the Western world.

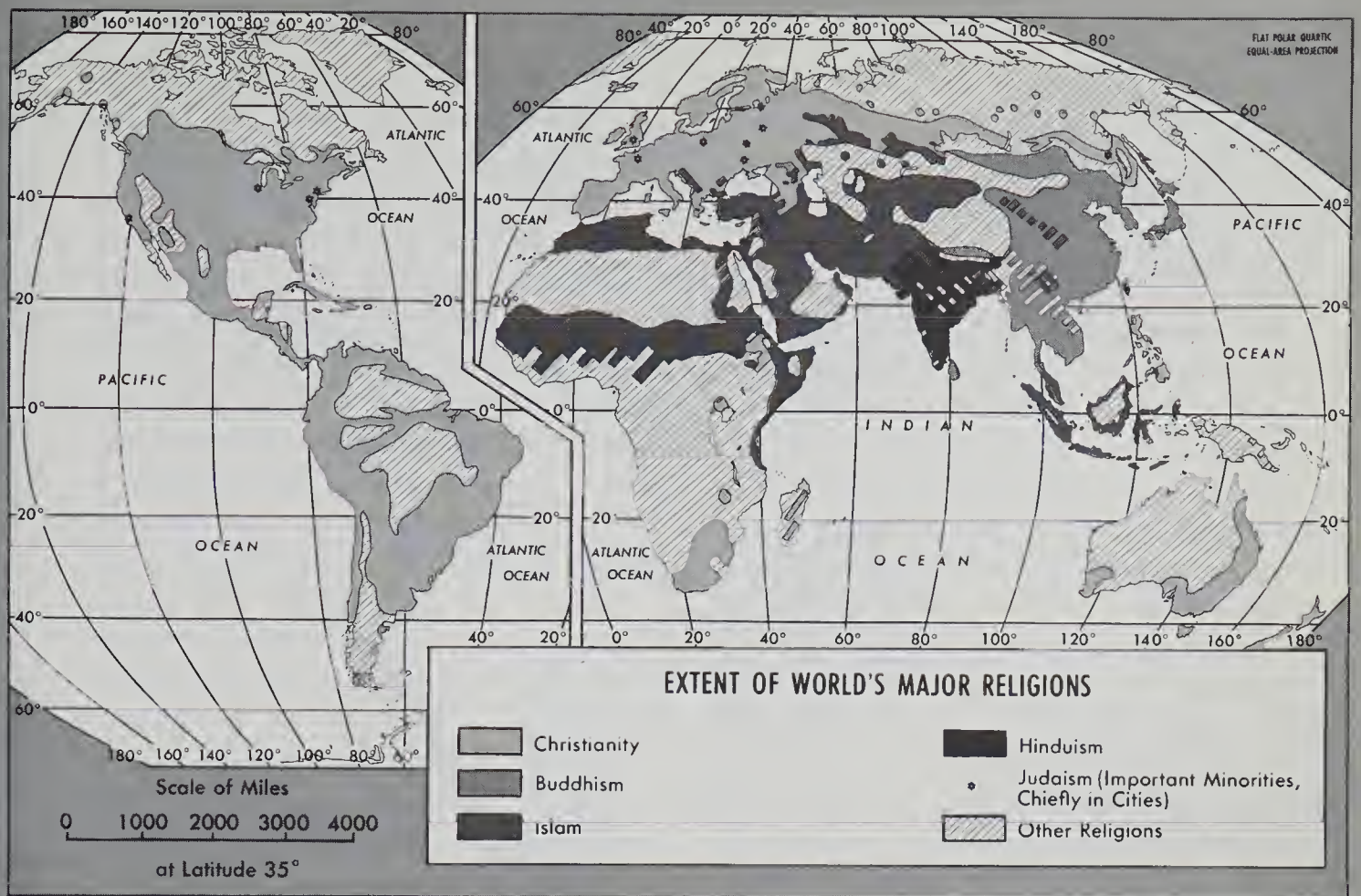
Asia helped to preserve civilization during the Dark Ages. Western civilization owes another great debt to Asia. About five hundred years after the birth of Christ, Europe entered a period of disorder called the Dark Ages. Organized government was destroyed, and the continent was overrun by uncivilized tribesmen. During this time, most Europeans had little interest in education. It seemed as though all the ideas and discoveries that had been made in Europe through the ages would be lost. Arab scholars in Southwest Asia and northern Africa were acquainted with European learning, however. They had translations of Greek books in their libraries. The Arabs continued to study and to add to the knowledge gained in earlier times. This helped to keep the torch of learning alive for later generations.

Several great civilizations existed side by side in Asia. Although the civilizations that developed in Southwest Asia made

The Taj Mahal in South Asia



*See glossary



the most direct contributions to the Western world, civilizations just as outstanding existed in other parts of Asia. Two of the greatest were those that developed in China and India. When the European traveler Marco Polo returned home after visiting China in the thirteenth century, Europeans could hardly believe his descriptions of what he had seen there. At that time, China was so much farther advanced than Europe that it seemed impossible that such a wonderful place could exist.

All the world's major religions have come from Asia. One fact is generally noticeable about the civilizations of Asia through the ages. They have been more concerned with finding the meaning of life than in finding ways to make life more comfortable for the great masses of the people. This contemplative attitude has had important effects. Asian thinkers have founded the world's major religions. The map above shows what these religions are, and where they are important. Judaism, Christianity, and Islam were started in Southwest Asia. Hinduism and Buddhism developed in South Asia. In studying the map above, two facts should be kept in mind. First, in East Asia and Southeast

Asia, Buddhism is often practiced along with other religions and philosophies. Second, in Communist countries, religious practice is discouraged.

Asia has made important contributions in the fields of art and science. In addition to religious thinkers who guided mankind in understanding the meaning of life, Asia has produced many fine artists and architects. The Taj Mahal in India, built by the Shah Jahan as a tomb for his wife, has been acknowledged by many as the most beautiful building ever constructed. Among the other fine buildings in Asia are the Shwe Dagon Pagoda in Burma, and the temple of Angkor Wat in Cambodia. Sculpture, painting, and dancing have been brought to a high degree of development in Asia, also.

Although Asia's people generally have been more interested in philosophy than in experimental science, they have made important scientific contributions. The number system in common use today originated in the Asian country of India. Asians also helped to develop geometry, algebra, and other branches of mathematics. Among other important contributions of Asia were printing, paper, and the magnetic compass.

facts that people in the modern world must face.

One reason that the problem of underdevelopment is so complicated is that the number of people in the world is increasing very rapidly. As page 17 explains, it will double every thirty-five years if the present rate of growth continues. Unfortunately, the populations of the underdeveloped countries of the world are generally increasing more rapidly than the populations of the richer, developed countries. Even though the underdeveloped countries are increasing their production of food and other goods, this increase is quickly being used up by the growing number of people. This makes it difficult for these countries to build up a surplus to use in paying for equipment and institutions needed for development.

Why the problem of underdevelopment must be solved. In spite of these discouragements, rich countries such as the United States must not abandon the underdeveloped countries in their struggle for a better life. There are three main

reasons why. One is a moral reason. All the world's great religions teach that it is the duty of the strong to help the weak. The second reason is political. More than two thirds of the world's people live in underdeveloped countries. Some peaceful way must be found to help these people achieve a better way of life, or their discontent may bring on another global war. The third reason that we must help the underdeveloped world is a business one. The developed, industrial countries of the world need markets in which to sell their goods. If the people of the underdeveloped world can achieve a better standard of living, they will have more money with which to buy these goods.

Clearly, the rich, developed nations of the Free World cannot lay aside their responsibilities toward the underdeveloped nations. The rich nations are not giving charity or buying allies when they help their weaker neighbors. Rather, they are working with them as partners toward the goal of achieving peace and plenty for all mankind.

Statements To Prove

Give as many facts as possible that explain why each of the following statements is correct:

1. The basic difference between an underdeveloped and a developed country lies in the way the country's people produce food and other goods.
2. The few wealthy landowners in an underdeveloped country often hinder the progress of their country.
3. The idea that a country is underdeveloped because it is inhabited by an "inferior" race is only a myth.
4. The blame for a country's underdevelopment cannot be placed completely on colonialism.
5. Although climate has important effects on people, it cannot be considered the cause for underdevelopment of a country.
6. A lack of natural resources does not necessarily cause a nation to be underdeveloped.
7. The achievements of a country depend

mainly on the education and the attitudes of its people.

8. The Communists' method of solving the problem of underdevelopment differs from the methods of non-Communist countries.
9. The problem of underdevelopment is extremely complicated.

An Essay Idea

As late as World War II, many leaders and citizens of our country thought the wisest policy for the United States was to remain as isolated as possible from world problems and affairs. Now we are aware that we cannot escape from involvement in world affairs and that problems in distant parts of the world directly affect our lives. Write an essay telling why you think our country's policy has changed. You will need to consider important scientific advances and changes in world leadership. A review of world history after World War II will be helpful in this project.



PART 2 — SOUTHEAST ASIA



AN OVERVIEW OF SOUTHEAST ASIA

WHAT IS SOUTHEAST ASIA?

In the southeastern part of Asia are two peninsulas and many islands. These form the region of Southeast Asia. Twenty years ago few people in the United States knew much about this region. Today, however, events that happen in Southeast Asia have become so important to Americans that this distant region is mentioned daily in the news.

There are many newly independent nations in Southeast Asia. Before World War II, there was only one independent nation in Southeast Asia. This was Siam, now called Thailand. (See top map on page 124.) All of the other countries in Southeast Asia except the Philippines were controlled by nations in Europe. The Philippines was controlled by the United States.

Today, almost all of Southeast Asia has gained independence. The independent countries in this region are Thailand, Burma, Cambodia, Laos, North and South Vietnam, the Philippines, Indonesia, Malaysia, and Singapore. The newest of these are Malaysia and Singapore.

Only a few parts of Southeast Asia are still controlled by outsiders. Brunei, on the island of Borneo, was scheduled to become a part of Malaysia. It chose not to, however, and is still under British protection. Part of the island of Timor is under Portuguese control. In 1963, Indonesia began to govern West New Guinea, which had previously been under the administration of the United Nations. Before the end of 1969, the people of West New Guinea are to vote on whether they will become a part of Indonesia or be independent.

The countries of Southeast Asia differ from one another in important ways. Some are large and others are small. In several, the people have almost no oppor-

tunity to decide how they should be governed, but in a few the governments are more democratic. The languages that the people speak and most of the customs they follow also differ from country to country.

In other ways, the countries of Southeast Asia are much alike. Their land, their climate, and the ways their people make a living have many similarities. Each of the independent countries also shares the determination to guard its freedom and make its own decisions.

The nations of Southeast Asia have many of the same problems, also. Except for Thailand, these nations have little experience in self-government. They do not have enough roads, railroads, schools, hospitals, or industries. In addition, all of these nations must import most of their manufactured goods and pay for them by exporting raw materials from mines, forests, and farms.

Southeast Asia is a treasure-house of natural resources. Southeast Asia's many natural resources make it one of the world's important regions. Its farmlands produce more rice for export than any other part of the world. Three fourths of the world's copra, about nine tenths of its natural rubber, and almost half of its tin come from this region. In addition, Southeast Asia is the most important petroleum-producing area in the eastern part of Asia.

Important travel routes pass through Southeast Asia. Southeast Asia's location also makes it important. Much of this region lies near the shortest water route between Europe and the eastern part of Asia. Each year, thousands of ships travel through the Strait of Malacca, west of Malaya, and the narrow sea passages between the islands of Indonesia. (See map on pages 90 and 91.) Southeast Asia is also an important stopping-off place on around-the-world air routes.

WHY SOUTHEAST ASIA IS IMPORTANT TO US

Southeast Asia's people are our neighbors.

Southeast Asia is the home of more than 240 million people. Although they live in a distant part of the world, these people are our global neighbors. They produce things we need, and we furnish them with things they need. We can give them support in solving many of their problems, and they can make our lives richer and more interesting by sharing with us their art and many of their ideas. In order to cooperate most successfully with Southeast Asia's people, we need to understand them. To do this, we must know how geography and history have shaped the ways they think and live.

Southeast Asia is an important battlefield in the Cold War. There is another reason why we need to learn about Southeast Asia. This region is playing an important role in the Cold War. As page 21 explains, the main goal of Communists everywhere is to bring the whole world under communism. Today about one third of the world's people already live under Communist governments. Among these are the people of North Vietnam, in Southeast Asia. (Compare map on page 90 with map on page 21.) Now, Communist forces are trying to gain control of other parts of Southeast Asia. Winning this region, with its enormous population, valuable resources, and important trade routes, would help the Communists to achieve their announced goal of world domination.

The Communist forces are using many methods to try to gain control of Southeast Asia. Communist parties within the different countries stir up trouble and try to weaken the governments. Guerrilla fighters from North Vietnam invade neighboring countries and cause further disorder. Alongside these warlike meth-

ods, the Communists use some that are apparently peaceful. Communist nations such as China and the Soviet Union are trying to win the support of Southeast Asia's people by building hospitals and factories, and by offering other forms of assistance.

The United States and other democratic nations are determined to prevent the Communist forces from taking over any more of Southeast Asia. These democratic nations are helping to improve education, health, farming, and industry in this region. In this way, they hope to solve some of the problems that make Southeast Asia's people dissatisfied with their governments and willing to listen to Communist propaganda. The anti-Communist countries are also offering military aid to nations in Southeast Asia that request it.

The free nations of Southeast Asia are proud of their independence and do not wish to lose it to the Communists or to anyone else. Indonesia, Cambodia, Burma, and Laos believe that they can best guard their freedom by not taking sides in the Cold War. These countries are trying to maintain friendly relations with both the Communist and the democratic nations of the world. However, Thailand, the Philippines, Malaysia, South Vietnam, and Singapore are more friendly to the democratic nations.

Many people in Southeast Asia distrust the Communists, but they do not trust the anti-Communist Western nations, either. These people remember the long years when their nations were controlled by Westerners, and they are still suspicious of these outsiders. We cannot win the trust of Southeast Asia's people unless we understand their problems, their fears, and their hopes. With this knowledge, we may learn how to work with these people to bring peace and a better way of living to the world.





SOUTHEAST ASIA

Cities

- 500,000 to 1,000,000
- ⊙ 1,000,000 and Over
- ★ Capitals

Elevations in Feet

	0 to 1,000
	1,000 to 5,000
	5,000 to 10,000
	10,000 to 15,000
	15,000 and Over

Scale of Miles at Equator

0 100 200 300 400

MERCATOR PROJECTION



Rice fields on the island of Java in Indonesia. Southeast Asia has many fertile river plains and coastal lowlands. These are generally much more densely populated than the highlands.

8 Land

Problems To Solve

How does the land of Southeast Asia affect its people? To solve this problem, you will need to find out what the land of Southeast Asia is like, and make hypotheses about the different ways it affects the people. The following questions suggest some hypotheses:

a. How do the land features of this region affect national unity in the different countries?

- b. How do the land features help determine where the people live?
- c. How do the land features affect transportation and communication?
- d. How do the land features affect farming?

Chapters 12 and 16 will provide additional information to use in solving this problem.

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Southeast Asia is a region of islands and peninsulas. In the northwest is the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, which extends off the continent of Asia. Stretching southward from this peninsula is a long, narrow body of land called the Malay Peninsula. (See map below.) To the south and east are the islands of Indonesia and the Philippines. Together, the islands and peninsulas of Southeast Asia form a land area about half the size of the United States.

Mountain ranges and seas help to divide Southeast Asia into many isolated parts. Some of the seas are connected with the Pacific Ocean, and others are arms of

the Indian Ocean. Along some of the sea-coasts are lowlands that are densely populated. Many of the river plains between the mountain ranges are densely populated also.

One of the best ways to learn about the complex region of Southeast Asia is to view it from the air. A good starting place for an aerial tour of Southeast Asia is the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, where the countries of Laos, Cambodia, and North and South Vietnam are located. Most of Burma and Thailand also are located on this peninsula.

Southeast Asia is one of the most fragmented regions in the world. It is made up of peninsulas and islands, which are separated by arms of water. These areas are divided into still smaller parts by mountain ranges, over which few roads have been built.





The Indo-Chinese Peninsula

Highlands of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula.

From the air, you notice the many mountains, hills, and plateaus on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. In the north, high mountain ranges separate most of the peninsula from mainland Asia. Extending southward from these barriers are several other highland chains, which reach through the peninsula like giant fingers. In comparison with the mountains to the north, these are quite low. Most of them

rise less than eight thousand feet above sea level.

Most of the mountains on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula are forested. The forests are very dense on the ranges that stretch along the edges of the peninsula, for the rainfall here is heaviest. On the central highlands that receive less rain, the forests are more open. Some of the slopes here are covered with savannas, which are grasslands dotted with trees.

Highlands extend through North Vietnam and other parts of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Along the edges of the peninsula, where rainfall is heaviest, the highlands are densely forested. In drier areas, some slopes are covered with grass.





The Mekong Delta is one of several large deltas along the coast of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. These lowlands are formed mostly of sand and silt deposited by rivers. The main rivers of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula are the Mekong, the Irrawaddy, the Chao Phraya, and the Red.

Lowlands of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula.

Between the mountain ranges of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula are several great river valleys. In the western part of the peninsula is the valley of the Irrawaddy River. (See map on page 90.) This river begins in the mountains on Burma's northern border and flows southward to the sea. Southeast of the Irrawaddy is the valley of the Chao Phraya River, in Thailand. Farther east is the mighty Mekong River. It forms much of the border between Thailand and Laos, and then flows across Cambodia and South Vietnam. In the northeastern part of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula is the Red River, which flows through North Vietnam.

Where the large rivers of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula flow into the sea, there are plains called deltas. These deltas are formed mostly of sand and silt carried here by the rivers from the land through which they flow. The delta of the Red River is

one of the most densely populated parts of Southeast Asia. Some of the other deltas, such as the Irrawaddy Delta, were largely covered with swamps until recent times. Now, however, many of these swamps have been drained for rice farms.

Several of Southeast Asia's important cities are located on the deltas of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Among these are Rangoon in Burma, Bangkok in Thailand, Saigon and its suburb Cholon in South Vietnam, and Hanoi in North Vietnam. (See map on page 90.)

The Great Lake. There is one large lake on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. This is the Great Lake, in the broad central lowland of Cambodia. (See map on page 90.) The Great Lake was once an inlet of the sea. Over the centuries, however, the mouth of this inlet has been filled in with silt deposited by the Mekong River. (The Great Lake is discussed in more detail in Chapter 23.)



The Malay Peninsula and Singapore

Your aerial tour now takes you southward to the Malay Peninsula. The northern part of this peninsula is included in the countries of Thailand and Burma. The southern part is occupied by Malaya, which is part of Malaysia. (Compare maps on pages 90 and 93.)

Mountains and valleys of the Malay Peninsula. Forested mountain ranges stretch through the Malay Peninsula. These are the southern extensions of some of the highlands that extend through the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. (See map on page 13.) Among the mountains are the valleys

A plain in northwestern Malaya. Along the coasts of the Malay Peninsula are narrow, swampy lowlands. They lie on either side of the forested mountain ranges that extend through the peninsula. Some parts of the lowlands have been cleared for farming.





The city of Singapore is located on an island, also called Singapore. This small island is located off the southern coast of the Malay Peninsula. Singapore is one of the world's most important port cities.

of many short rivers. Most of these interior river lowlands are covered with swamps or dense, green rainforests.

Coastal lowlands of the Malay Peninsula. Bordering the mountains of the Malay Peninsula are coastal lowlands. Some of these lowlands are covered with swampy forests, but others have been cleared for farming. These are the most important farmlands on the Malay Peninsula. Large quantities of rice and rubber are produced

in these areas. (Compare maps on page 149 with map on page 93.)

The island of Singapore. Off the southern coast of the Malay Peninsula is the tiny island of Singapore, which is connected to the peninsula by a causeway. One of the world's most important port cities, also called Singapore, is located on this island. Outside the city are smaller towns and many little farms. There are also scattered patches of swamps and forests.



Indonesia

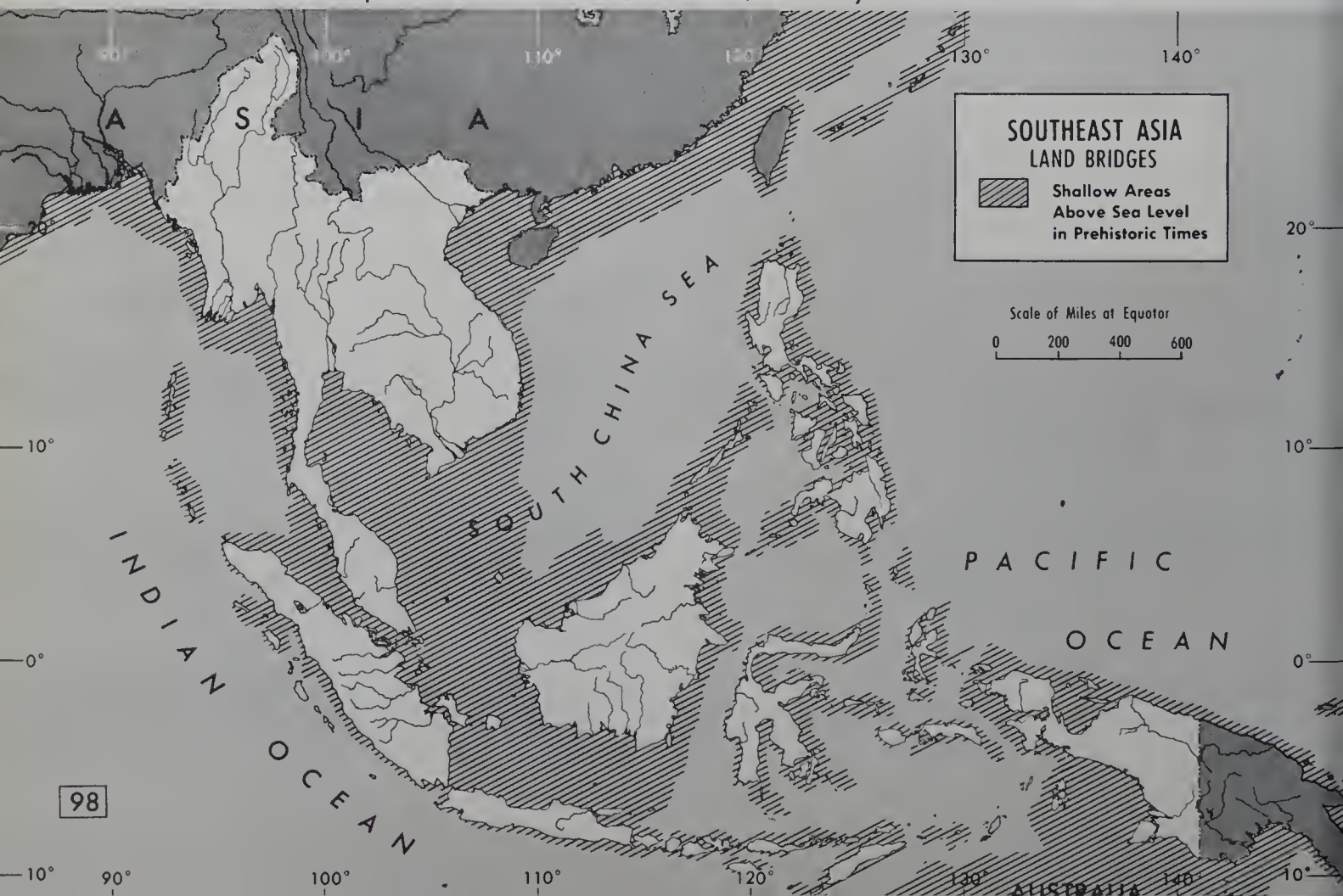
Near Singapore are several islands belonging to the great archipelago of Indonesia. About three thousand islands make up this archipelago. Most of these are very small. Five, however, are among the largest islands in the world. These are Borneo, Sumatra, Java, Celebes, and New Guinea.

The map on pages 90 and 91 shows that the archipelago is divided mainly between the independent countries of Indonesia and Malaysia. Two small areas, however, are under Western control. These are Portuguese Timor and Brunei. West New

Guinea was formerly under United Nations administration, but is now being governed by Indonesia. The Indonesians call this part of New Guinea West Irian. Eastern New Guinea, administered by Australia, is not commonly considered a part of Asia.

The seas and straits separating some of the islands of Indonesia from the Malay Peninsula are very shallow. (See map below.) Scientists say that at times long ago there was less water in the seas than there is now, and these shallow areas were above

Land bridges once connected Indonesia to the Malay Peninsula and to Australia. Today the plant and animal life of western Indonesia resembles that of the mainland of Asia. Eastern Indonesia's plant and animal life, however, is closely related to that of Australia.





On Java, Indonesia's most important island, rice is raised on the terraced slopes of volcanoes. The land on these slopes is very fertile, for ashes and other volcanic materials have enriched the soil. About two thirds of Indonesia's people live on this one island.

water. During these periods the Malay Peninsula and the western islands of Indonesia were connected by land. Today, many of the plants and animals in this part of Indonesia are like those on the mainland of Asia. Tigers and elephants roam the forests in Sumatra, as they do in India and other parts of mainland Asia.

In the easternmost islands of Indonesia, however, there are marsupials like those on the neighboring continent of Australia. When the seas were lower, the straits that

separated some of these islands from Australia were narrow enough to swim across. Other islands were connected to Australia by land bridges, over which animals could easily travel.

The island of Java. The most important island in the country of Indonesia is Java. (See map on page 90.) Although it is the smallest of the main islands, about two thirds of the country's people live here. The fact that volcanoes are located throughout the island helps to explain

why. Long ago, people discovered that ashes and other materials from the volcanoes helped to make the soil here very fertile. There are about eighty-five volcanoes on Java, and seventeen are still active. Millions of people live on Java's fertile mountain slopes. Many others live on the coastal lowlands that border the mountains.

The island of Sumatra. Northwest of Java is Sumatra, the second most important island of Indonesia. (See map on page 90.) A belt of mountains, many of which are volcanoes, forms a backbone along the west side of the island. Among the mountains are fertile basins and river valleys where land has been cleared for farming.

There are coastal lowlands on both sides of Sumatra's mountain backbone. On the west coast, the lowlands are very narrow, but along the east coast they are wide. Until recently, the dense, swampy forests that cover much of the eastern coastal lowlands discouraged people from living

Sumatra, Indonesia's second most important island, has a backbone of mountains, bordered by coastal lowlands.



Volcanic cones on Java. A band of volcanoes extends through Sumatra, Java, and many of the eastern islands of Indonesia.

there. However, parts of this forest area have been cleared for farming or for other purposes. Today, some of Southeast Asia's most productive plantations and oil wells are located on these lowlands.

The island of Borneo. East of Sumatra is the huge island of Borneo. Part of this island is a British protectorate and parts are included in the countries of Malaysia and Indonesia. The Indonesian section of Borneo is called Kalimantan.

Far fewer people live on Borneo than on Java or Sumatra. (See map on page 138.) The reasons for this are due partly to Borneo's geography. A major part of this mountainous island is covered with dense rainforests or swamps. In addition, the heavy rains that fall throughout the year in most of Borneo wash out of the soil the minerals and other substances needed to grow crops. Only a small percentage of the land is now under cultivation, although more is being cleared for farming all the

time. A comparison of the maps on pages 149 and 13 indicates that the main farming areas are on the coastal lowlands.

The island of Celebes. East of Borneo is Celebes, which the Indonesians call Sulawesi. The map on page 13 shows that this island resembles an octopus with arms reaching out in four directions. Curving, underwater mountain ranges thrust their peaks above the sea to form this strangely shaped island. There are many beautiful waterfalls and lakes on Celebes. Green rainforests cover most of the land. Most of the people on Celebes live on the northeastern and southwestern tips of the island, where there is fertile volcanic soil.

West New Guinea. East of Celebes is New Guinea, the second largest island in



Borneo is one of the world's largest islands. It is divided among Indonesia, Malaysia, and the British protectorate of Brunei.

The harbor of Makasar, a port city on the southwestern coast of Celebes. This island, also called Sulawesi, is the third most heavily populated island in Indonesia. Green rainforests still cover most of the land on this island, however.





New Guinea is the world's second largest island. Some of the highest mountains in Southeast Asia are located on New Guinea. In 1963, Indonesia began to administer the western part of the island. West New Guinea will decide later if it wants to become independent.

the world. Only the western part of this island is considered a part of Southeast Asia. A very high range of mountains extends from east to west through central West New Guinea. There are more highlands north of this range. The land south of the central range is generally level. Swamps and thick forests cover this broad lowland.

Other islands of Indonesia. Between West New Guinea, Celebes, and Java are hundreds of smaller islands. Some belong to a group called the Lesser Sunda Islands. (See map on pages 90 and 91.) Others belong to a group called the Moluccas, or Spice Islands. Many of these small islands in eastern Indonesia are the peaks of underwater volcanoes.



The Philippines

Your aerial tour of Southeast Asia now brings you to the Philippines. This cluster of islands does not spread over as wide an area as Indonesia. (See map on pages 90 and 91.) There are more than seven thousand islands in the Philippines, but only eleven are big enough to be important. At

the northern end is the largest island, Luzon. At the southern end is the second largest island, Mindanao. Between Luzon and Mindanao is an important island group, the Visayas. Somewhat separated from all these islands and stretching southwestward toward Borneo are the

Luzon is the largest island in the Philippines. Much of the land in the Philippine Islands is covered with rugged mountains. Most of the mountain slopes here are forested. The smaller islands in the Philippines are the peaks of underwater mountain ranges.



Sulu Archipelago and long, narrow Palawan Island.

Mountains of the Philippines. As you study the islands of the Philippines from the air, you see that they are very rugged. The smaller islands are the peaks of underwater mountains. Curving through the larger islands are mountain ranges that run in several different directions. The ranges that stretch through Luzon and Mindanao run generally north and south. On Palawan, however, the mountains are part of the range that stretches southwestward through Borneo. As in Indonesia, there are many volcanoes in the Philippines. Most of the mountain slopes on these islands are forested. In some places, often where patches of forest have burned,

there are large grasslands or bamboo thickets.

Lowlands of the Philippines. Although the islands of the Philippines are mainly covered with mountains, there are several lowlands here. In northern Luzon is the fertile valley of the Cagayan River. Southwest of this lowland is the large central plain of Luzon where Manila, the most important city in the Philippines, is located. There are many farms on both of these lowlands. Mindanao and the smaller islands of the Philippines also have coastal lowlands and interior valleys. Much of the lowland of Mindanao is still forested. On several of the smaller islands, however, the lowlands have been cleared for farming and are very densely populated.

Farm fields on Luzon. Although the land in the Philippines is generally mountainous, there are some important coastal plains and river valleys. Most of the farmlands in the Philippines are located in these lowland areas.



Mindanao is the second largest island in the Philippines. Most of this island is covered with forested mountains. Only a small part of the land has been cleared for farming.



Test a Theory

The following statements present sharply differing points of view. List as many facts as possible to support each theory and decide which you feel is more correct.

1. Southeast Asia should not be called a region because there are too many differences within it.
 2. The different parts of Southeast Asia are alike in enough important ways for it to be considered a single region of the world.
- In collecting facts for this project, you will want to refer to the map on pages 90 and 91. The other chapters and maps in Part 2 also contain helpful information.

Learning From Maps

Locate the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, the Malay Peninsula, the Philippines, and Indonesia on the map on pages 90 and 91. (Use the map on page 93 as a guide if necessary.) With the help

of the key box and scale of miles find out:

1. how wide the Indo-Chinese Peninsula is at its widest point
2. in what general direction the mountain ranges on this peninsula extend, and how high they are
3. how many countries there are on this peninsula and what their names are
4. how far the Malay Peninsula extends from north to south
5. how far it is from the westernmost tip of Sumatra to the eastern border of West New Guinea (How does this compare with the distance from the Atlantic coast to the Pacific coast of the United States?)
6. which island in Indonesia has the most large cities (Also see page 136.)
7. how the size of the Philippine island group compares with the size of the island of Borneo



Palm trees growing close to a temple in Thailand are typical of the dense tropical vegetation that covers much of Southeast Asia. In most parts of this region the air is warm and very humid, and the rainfall is heavy.

9 Climate

Problems To Solve

Most of Southeast Asia is near the equator, and has a warm climate. **How does the climate of this region affect the people?**

- How is farming affected by the climate?
- How does climate affect the way the people live?

- How does the climate affect the appearance of the countryside in this region?

Chapters 11 and 12 contain information that will be useful in solving this problem. The pictures in this book also provide useful information.

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Dense forests of tall trees and climbing vines cover much of the land in Southeast Asia. This lush vegetation is made possible by the heavy rainfall and the

warm weather in this region. The temperature in Southeast Asia does not change much from season to season anywhere except in the far north.

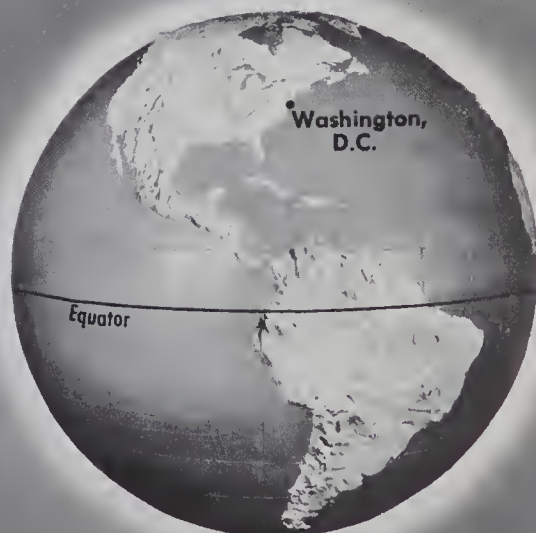
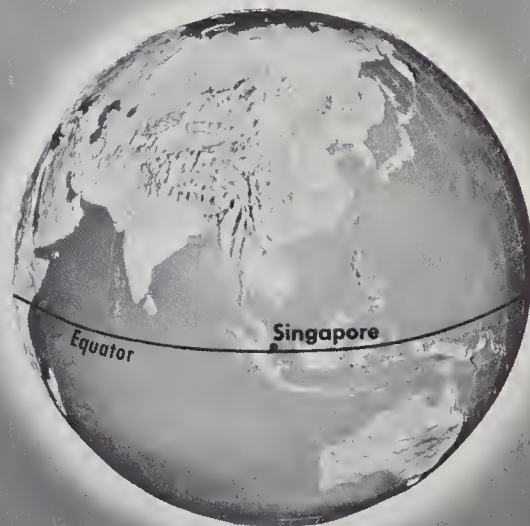
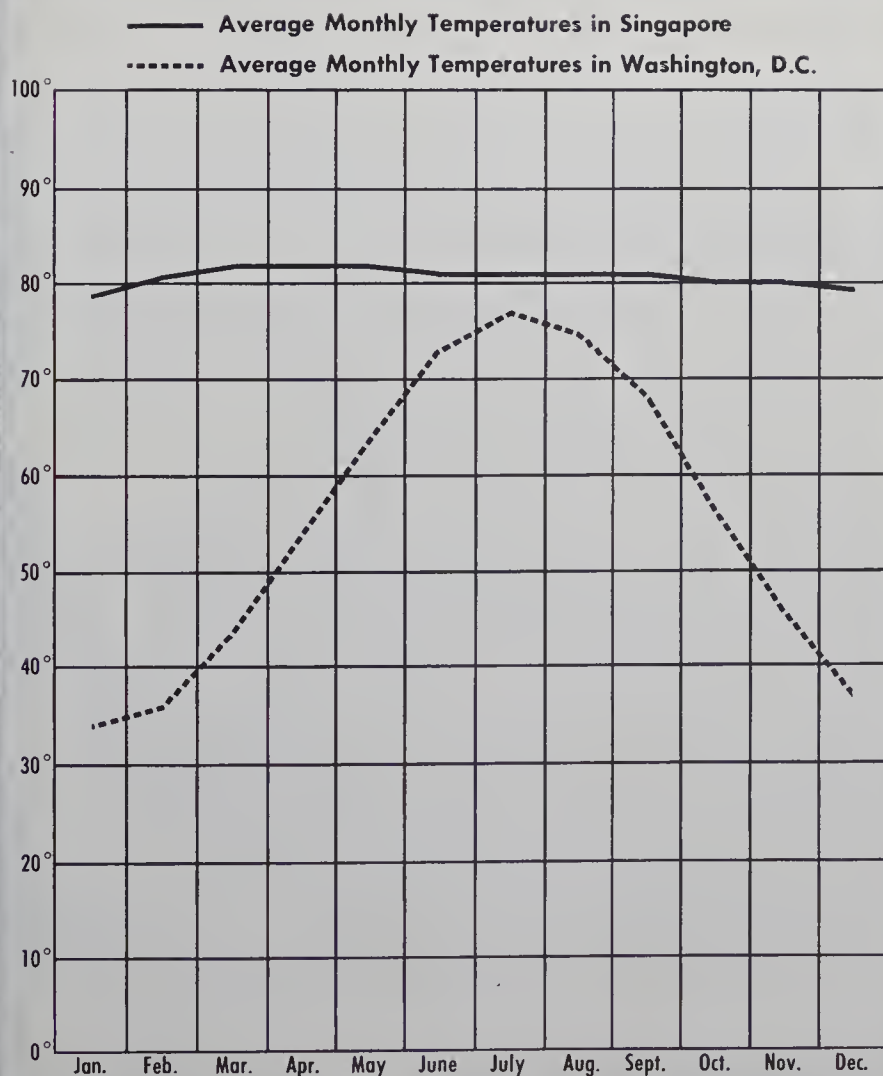
Why most of Southeast Asia is warm throughout the year. Locating Southeast Asia on a globe will help you understand why most of this region does not have cold winters. All but the northernmost part lies in the tropics. In tropical areas, the sun is almost directly overhead throughout the year, for these areas are never tipped far away from the sun, as other parts of the earth are at certain times. For this reason, tropical areas are generally warm throughout the year.

Highlands are cooler than lowlands. The only areas near the equator that have cool

weather are in the mountains. Far above sea level, the air is thin and does not hold the warmth of the sun. Because the highlands of Southeast Asia generally have pleasant temperatures, some people travel here when they wish to escape the heat.

Rainfall differs from season to season in much of Southeast Asia. Although the temperature does not change much throughout the year in most of Southeast Asia, the amount of rainfall does. In many places, the year is divided into a rainy and a dry season. As the following paragraphs show, these differ from place to place.

Comparative temperatures. Since all but the northernmost part of Southeast Asia lies in the tropics, most of this region is warm throughout the year. In places farther from the equator, such as Washington, D.C., the temperature changes from season to season.





The Climate of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula

Most of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula has wet summers and dry winters. If you were to tour the Indo-Chinese Peninsula in July, you would find that in most places the countryside was lush and green. Streams would be flooded, and many roads would be too muddy to use. Summer is the rainy season on this peninsula. In some areas, rain falls every day. Warm, moist ocean winds from the southwest, called summer monsoons, help to bring this rainfall.

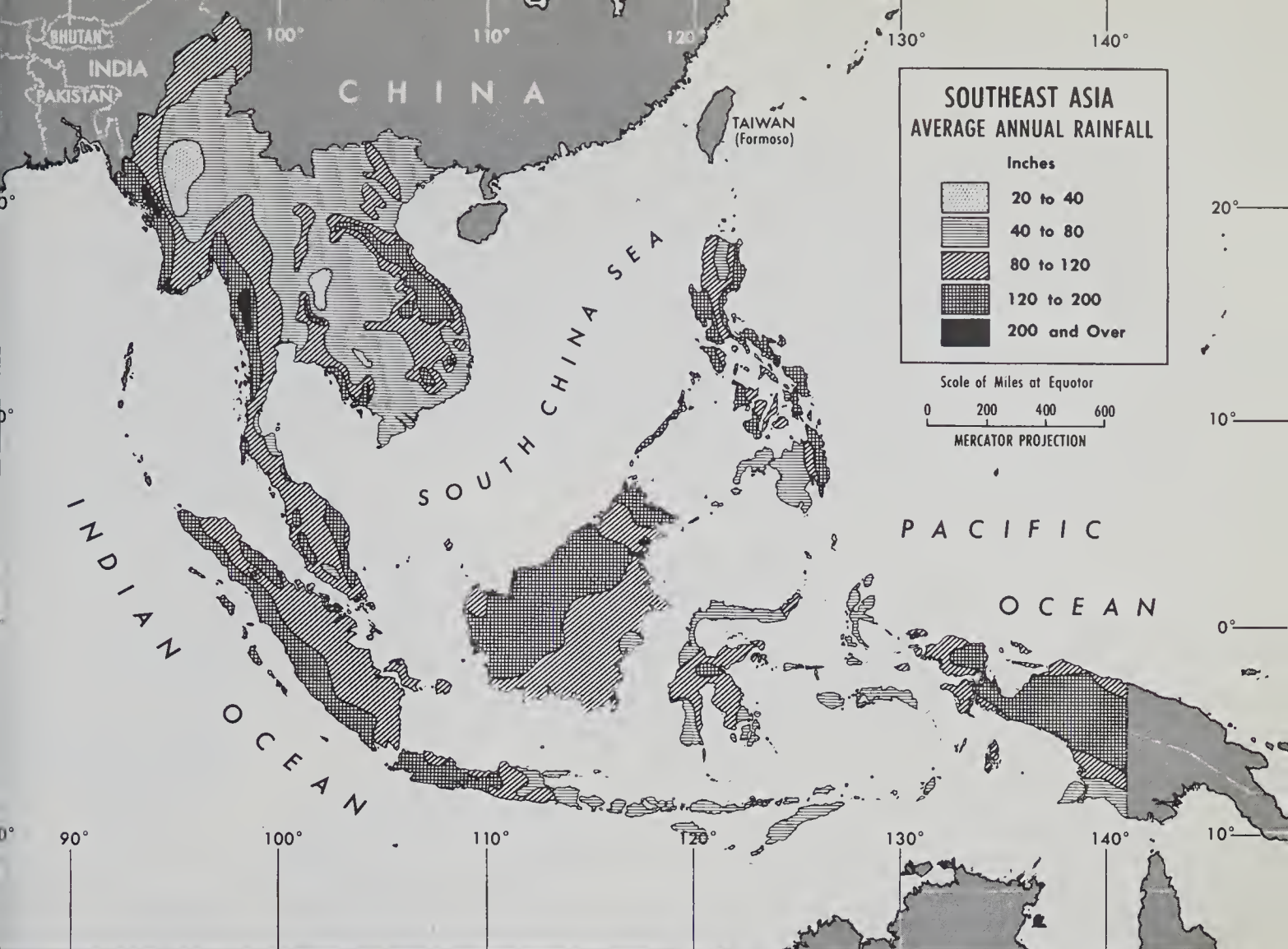
In October, the rains in most parts of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula become less frequent, and the dry season soon begins.

During the first part of the dry season the weather is cool. In February, however, it becomes unpleasantly hot. The countryside is dusty and brown, trees are bare, and many streams are dry.

The winds that blow during the dry season come mainly from across the seas to the northeast. When they reach the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, they are forced to rise in order to cross highlands along the Annam coast. This causes the winds to cool, which in turn causes some of their moisture to condense and fall as rain. By the time the winds have crossed the mountains, they have become drier. Also, when

Flooded farm fields on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Most of this part of Southeast Asia receives heavy rainfall during the months from May to October. Warm ocean winds called summer monsoons help to bring this rainfall.





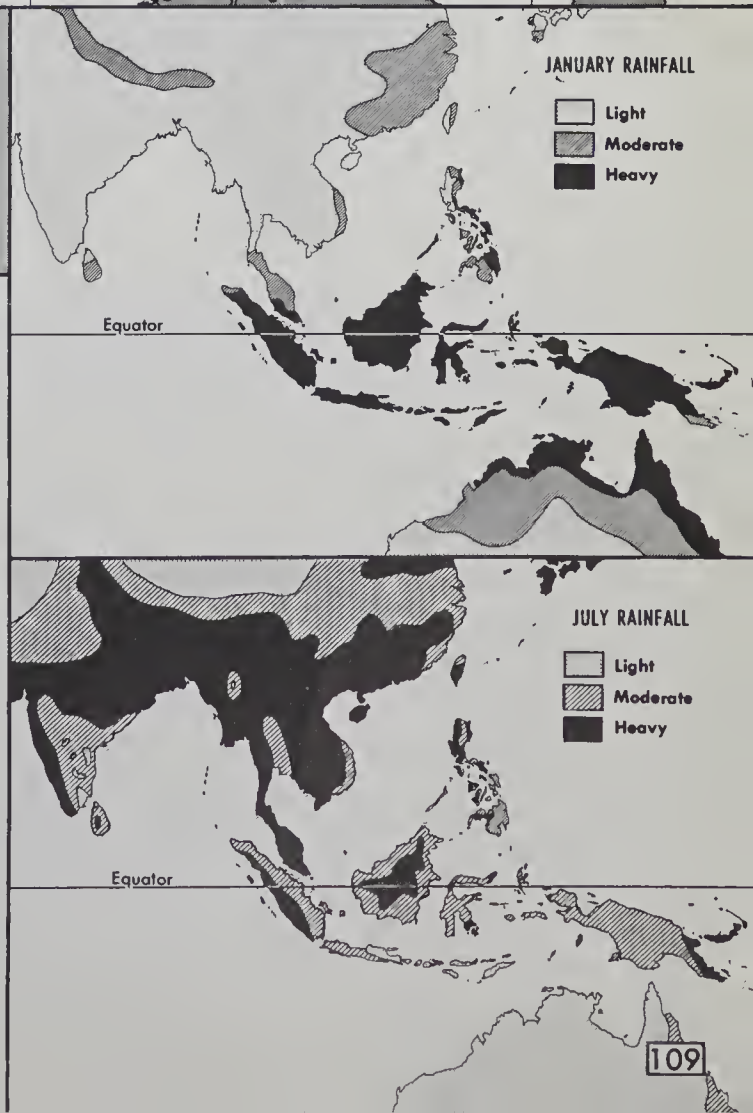
Exploring Climate With Maps

Southeast Asia is one of the world's rainiest regions. Most parts of this region have more rain in certain seasons than in others. The center and bottom maps show that these rainy seasons do not come at the same time everywhere.

The map above shows that some parts of Southeast Asia receive much less rainfall than others. Most of these drier areas are bordered by highlands, which shelter the land from moisture-bearing ocean winds.

Even the drier parts of Southeast Asia receive heavy rainfall when compared with most of the Soviet Union and the western part of the United States. However, because the drier parts of Southeast Asia are closer to the equator than these areas, the climate is warmer and moisture evaporates more quickly. Much water is also lost through transpiration,* the process by which plants give off moisture through their leaves.

* See glossary



they move down the other side of the mountains, they become warmer. Instead of giving off moisture, they absorb it from the land. This is one of the reasons why the land west of these mountains is dry during this season. If you compare the map on page 90 with the center map on page 109, you will find that the Annam coast receives moderate rainfall during the dry season, but in the rest of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula the rainfall is light.

The pattern of rainfall greatly influences farming on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. People depend on the summer monsoon rains for water to flood their rice fields. When the rains are late or too little rain comes, crops may fail. Elaborate ceremonies are often held to encourage the coming of the rainy season when it is delayed.

A dry season comes during the winter months to most of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. During this time of year, the countryside becomes dusty, and many streams dry up. Winds that blow during the dry season come mainly from the northeast.

Some parts of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula are drier than others. The top map on page 109 shows that some parts of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula receive less rainfall than others. One of these drier areas is in the central lowlands of Burma. There are no dense forests here. The hillsides are covered with coarse grass, thorny bushes, and clumps of trees. Farmers in this part of the peninsula raise millet, cotton, and other crops that require less moisture than rice.

To help you understand why some parts of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula receive less rainfall than others, compare the top map on page 109 with the map on page 90. You will find the places with the lightest rainfall are bordered by highlands, which shelter the drier areas from moisture-filled winds.





A Malayan fishing village. Most of the Malay Peninsula and Indonesia receive some rain during every month of the year. However, the season of heaviest rainfall differs from place to place. In some areas, thunderstorms occur nearly every day.



The Climate of the Malay Peninsula and Indonesia

Most of Indonesia and the Malay Peninsula receive some rain every month of the year. The center and bottom maps on page 109 show that the seasonal differences in rainfall on most of the Malay Peninsula and Indonesia are not great. Parts of these two areas receive heavy rainfall throughout the year. Although there is no distinct dry season in most of the Malay

Peninsula and Indonesia, there are periods of greater and lesser rainfall in some areas. These come at different times in different places, depending on what direction the prevailing winds come from in each area and whether these winds are blocked by mountains. The discussion of the Annam coast that begins on page 108 illustrates the influence of mountains on climate.



The Climate of the Philippines

Rainfall differs from place to place in the Philippines. The weather in the Philippines is warm throughout the year except in the highland areas. The center and bottom maps on page 109 show, however, that the pattern of rainfall on these islands varies from place to place. Much of the north-western part of the Philippines has dry winters and springs, and wet summers and autumns. In much of the southeastern part rain falls all year long, but the winter months are rainiest. Other sections of the country have heavy rain the year round.

Typhoons. Fierce tropical storms called typhoons are common in the Philippines. These are like the hurricanes that sometimes strike parts of the United States. Typhoons occur most often in late summer and in autumn. When one strikes, howling winds and sheets of blinding rain sink fishing boats in the harbors and flatten crops in the fields. Typhoons are most frequent in northern Luzon, but they also strike the central islands. Mindanao, in the southern part of the country, is seldom hit by these destructive storms.

The weather is always warm in the Philippines, except in the highland areas. Some parts of the country have a rainy season and a dry season, but others have rain all year round. Severe tropical storms called typhoons often strike the northern and central islands.





Baguio is a highland resort city on the island of Luzon, in the Philippines. It serves as the country's capital during the summertime. Many people spend their vacations in Baguio or in other mountain resorts located high above sea level, where the air is cool.

Terms To Understand

Briefly define each of the following terms:

typhoon
summer monsoons
tropics

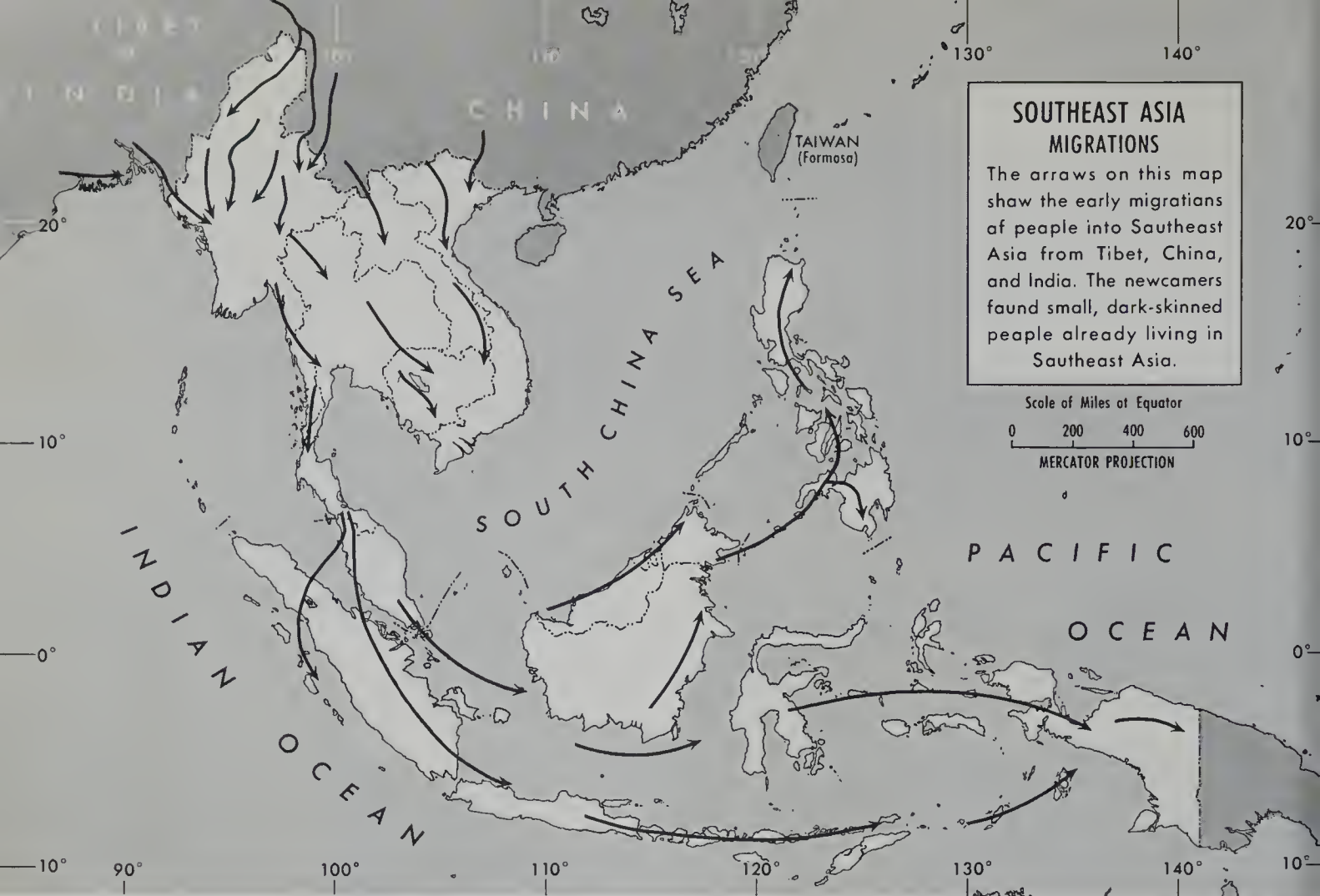
Explaining Statements

List as many reasons as you can to explain why each of the following statements is correct. Be prepared to illustrate your answers with maps where possible.

1. Most of Southeast Asia is warm throughout the year.
2. In the highlands of Southeast Asia, temperatures are cooler than in the lowlands.
3. Most of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula receives heavy rainfall in the summer.
4. A dry season comes in the winter to most of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula.

Report Topics

1. The changing seasons affect farming and the appearance of the countryside both in Burma and in the state of Vermont. Write a brief report contrasting the seasonal changes in farming and in the countryside in these two areas.
2. Using encyclopedias and other sources, write a report about typhoons. You may want to organize your report in a manner similar to the one below:
 - a. an opening section telling what a typhoon is
 - b. a section listing the parts of the world where typhoons occur and telling the times of the year typhoons are likely to occur
 - c. a closing section describing a particular typhoon and some of the damage it caused



Tribesmen from nearby lands began moving into Southeast Asia long before Christ was born. The first settlers stayed in the valleys of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Some of their descendants traveled on to the Malay Peninsula and to the islands of Southeast Asia.

10 History

Problems To Solve

1. Throughout history, Southeast Asia has been influenced in many ways by people from other parts of the world. **Why have so many outsiders come to Southeast Asia?** The following questions suggest hypotheses to consider in solving this problem:
 - a. What facts about the location of Southeast Asia help to explain why many outsiders have come to this region?
 - b. What facts about Southeast Asia's products help to explain why this region has attracted people from other countries?
- Chapter 14 and the chapters about the individual countries of this region will provide additional information.
2. Many changes have taken place in Southeast Asia in the years since World War II. **What brought about this period of rapid change?** In solving this problem you will need to consider the following:
 - a. the way most of the countries in Southeast Asia were governed prior to World War II
 - b. the Japanese conquest of Southeast Asia
 - c. foreign aid

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Southeast Asia Long Ago

Early people of Southeast Asia. Long before Christ was born, tribesmen from the neighboring lands of Tibet, China, and India traveled into the valleys of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Some of their descendants journeyed still farther to the Malay Peninsula and to the islands of Southeast Asia. Most of the newcomers had light-brown skin, and eyes that appeared to be somewhat slanted. They knew how to make better tools and weapons than the small, dark-skinned people already living in Southeast Asia. Some of these dark-skinned people were pushed back into the remote mountains and jungles. Others stayed in the valleys and coastal plains, intermarrying with the newcomers. As time went on, more and more settlers arrived in Southeast Asia.

By the first century A.D., there were many different groups of people living in Southeast Asia. Some groups in the remote areas gathered roots and other food, or hunted. Others burned trees in the forests to clear land for farming. When the soil in these clearings was no longer fertile, they moved on and cleared new land. The people in the coastal lowlands and river valleys grew rice in flooded fields. They knew how to make tools and weapons out of metal, and how to build boats strong enough to sail long distances across the seas.

Traders traveling between China and India visit Southeast Asia. In addition to the settlers who came overland, Southeast Asia had visitors who came by sea. Much of this region lies near the shortest water route between India and China. Traders traveling between these two lands stopped

in Southeast Asia. Seamen from Southeast Asia also sailed to India and China.

Southeast Asians learn new ways from the Indians. Some of the Indian traders established trading settlements in Southeast Asia. Later, religious leaders and other people from India also settled in these towns. From the Indians, people in many parts of Southeast Asia learned about the Hindu and Buddhist religions. The Indians also brought with them new ideas about government, art, and architecture. Southeast Asians did not copy their Indian teachers exactly. Instead, they used Indian ideas to create a unique culture of their own.

Kingdoms grow up around Indian trading settlements. Some Indian trading settlements in Southeast Asia grew into powerful cities that gained control of neighboring territories. Kingdoms were established, which frequently fought each other to gain more power and territory. Several

A carved scene showing Khmer warriors fighting neighboring tribesmen. The Khmers established a great empire in Southeast Asia.





Ruins at Angkor, near the Great Lake in Cambodia. The capital city of the Khmer Empire was located at this site. Like many other Southeast Asians, the Khmers were influenced by religious ideas and art forms brought by traders and missionaries from India.

kingdoms grew into great empires that at various times controlled large parts of Southeast Asia. Some of these empires were located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Others had their capitals on the islands of Java or Sumatra.

One of the most interesting empires was the Khmer Empire, which began as a little kingdom near the Mekong River. During the twelfth and early thirteenth centuries, the Khmer rulers gained control of most of the fertile lowlands on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Their empire even included the northern part of the Malay Peninsula.

The Khmer capital was at Angkor, near the Great Lake. (See map on page 234.) Ruins of magnificent stone temples built in this city still stand today. One temple,

the Angkor Wat, is among the largest religious buildings in the world. (See picture on page 238.)

The Khmers were frequently at war with neighboring tribesmen called the Thai. These tribesmen gradually overran much of the Khmers' territory and in 1431 invaded Angkor. Soon, all that remained of the once-great Khmer Empire was Cambodia.

Some Southeast Asians borrow customs from the Chinese. The Khmers borrowed many customs from the Indians, but there were other people in Southeast Asia who were influenced by the Chinese. These people lived in the territory later known as Vietnam. In 111 B.C., the northern part of this territory became a part of the Chinese

Empire. It did not gain its independence until A.D. 939. As a result, the Vietnamese adopted many Chinese customs.

The religion of Islam is brought to Southeast Asia. In the fifteenth century, the religion of Islam became important in Southeast Asia. For many years before this time, Moslem traders from Arabia and western India had been coming to Southeast Asia. The only place where they had converted large numbers of people, however, was in northern Sumatra. Early in the fifteenth century a trading center was established at Malacca, on the southwestern coast of the Malay Peninsula. Moslem traders persuaded many people in Malacca to accept Islam. From here, this religion spread to other parts of the Malay Peninsula and to the island of Java.

What was Southeast Asia like in the fifteenth century? A survey of Southeast Asia during the fifteenth century, when Islam

was becoming important, shows the following facts. The ancestors of the present-day Vietnamese were extending their control down the eastern edge of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. In the lowlands of the Chao Phraya River, a kingdom later known as Thailand was becoming important. It was bordered on the southeast by Cambodia. The other countries named on present-day maps of Southeast Asia were divided into numerous small independent territories.

Southeast Asia was an important trading area in the fifteenth century. One reason for this was its location on the water route between India and China. Another reason was that Southeast Asia produced goods that the rest of the world wanted to buy. The desire for some of these products—especially the spices—was to help shape the history of this region in the years to come.

A mosque in Malaya. Early in the fifteenth century, Moslems from Arabia and western India established a trading center at Malacca, on the Malay Peninsula. Many people in Malacca became converts to Islam, and soon this religion spread to other nearby areas.





Pepper vines on a plantation in Cambodia. Five hundred years ago, spices were highly valued as food preservatives. The eagerness of Europeans to obtain spices and other valuable products from Southeast Asia helped to shape the history of this region.

Westerners Come to Southeast Asia

Spices help to shape the history of Southeast Asia. Five hundred years ago, spices such as pepper, cloves, and nutmeg were far more important than they are today. There were no refrigerators, and many foods spoiled quickly. Spices helped to preserve food, and made it taste better when it was no longer fresh. The main spice-producing areas of the world were in Southeast Asia. The eagerness of Europeans to obtain spices and other valuable products from this region helped to shape its history.

Portugal gains control of the spice trade. In the spring of 1498, a Portuguese explorer named Vasco da Gama sailed into the harbor of Calicut, India. The expedition under his command had just completed the first all-water journey from Europe to India. (See map on opposite page.) From India, it would be possible for European ships to sail on to the distant spice lands of Southeast Asia.

Vasco da Gama's discovery of an all-water route to the spice lands was significant for several reasons. The old trade

routes between Europe and the spice lands crossed both land and water. (See map below.) Goods shipped along these routes had to be loaded and unloaded many times, which was expensive and inconvenient. Also, much of the territory through which the old routes passed was controlled by Moslems. Because Moslems had tried to invade Portugal for many years, they were bitterly hated by the Portuguese. Da Gama's discovery gave Portugal a better trade route than any that passed through Moslem territory. The Portuguese were now able to transport goods more quickly and cheaply than Moslem traders could.

In order to make as much money as possible, the Portuguese wanted to control

the spice trade completely. The Moslems, however, controlled several trading ports in Southeast Asia. In 1511, Portugal captured the most important of these ports, Malacca, located on the southwestern coast of the Malay Peninsula. During the years that followed, the Portuguese established fortified posts in Southeast Asia. They patrolled the seas near the spice regions to keep out the ships of other nations. Portugal also attempted to spread Christianity in the spice lands. It had little success, however, for most of the Portuguese who came to Southeast Asia behaved like conquerors rather than traders, and the people here came to hate them.

Trade routes between Europe and Asia. After the Portuguese explorer Vasco da Gama discovered an all-water route to India, Portugal controlled much of the spice trade with Southeast Asia. Later, other European nations began to send trading ships to the spice lands.



Spain claims the Philippines. Portugal was not the only nation that desired an all-water route to the spice lands. Spain was also eager to discover one. To prevent conflict between these two nations, the Pope divided the world into two parts. Portugal was allowed to trade and travel in one part, and Spain in the other. At first the boundary, or Line of Demarcation, between the two parts of the world was not clearly drawn in the Eastern Hemisphere, where Southeast Asia is located, because knowledge of this area was limited.

Early in the sixteenth century, a navigator named Ferdinand Magellan convinced the King of Spain that the Moluccas, from which most of the spices came, were in Spain's part of the world. Magellan thought that he could reach these islands by sailing west around the continent of South America. In 1519 he set out to find a westward sea route for Spain. On his voyage, Magellan came to the Philippines. He and his crew were the first Europeans to visit these islands. Magellan was killed in the Philippines, but one of his captains sailed on and finally returned to Spain. This was the first time a ship had sailed around the world.

Magellan's expedition succeeded in finding a westward water route to the spice lands, but this did not harm Portugal's trade. Spain's westward route was long and difficult, and the few Spanish ships that succeeded in reaching the Orient were captured by the Portuguese. Finally, in 1530, the Spanish and the Portuguese signed a treaty, agreeing that the Moluccas were in Portugal's part of the world.

The Philippines was in Portugal's part of the world, also. However, in 1565 an expedition led by a Spaniard named Legaspi succeeded in establishing a colony here. Before the end of the sixteenth cen-

tury, much of the Philippines was under Spanish control.

Portugal loses its power in Southeast Asia. Spain did not harm Portugal's trade with the spice lands, but other European nations did. At the end of the sixteenth century, Dutch ships began sailing to Southeast Asia. Portugal was unable to keep them out. Because of low pay, many officials and soldiers sent by Portugal to Southeast Asia were more interested in gaining personal wealth than in working for their country. In addition, the Portuguese had made so many enemies in Southeast Asia that people here welcomed other traders. Before long, British, French, Swedish, and Danish trading ships were also coming to Southeast Asia.

Foreigners gain control of all of Southeast Asia except Thailand. The European traders who came to Southeast Asia did not want anyone to interfere with their trade. Warships and soldiers from Europe were sent to this region. Frequently, the Europeans attacked each other's ships and tried to destroy each other's trading stations and forts. Sometimes they used force to make people in Southeast Asia trade with them. The Europeans also helped to keep order between warring peoples in Southeast Asia so that trade could be carried on in peace.

The more powerful European countries gained control of large territories in Southeast Asia. What is now the country of Indonesia became a Dutch colony. Britain gained control of Burma, Malaya, and northern Borneo. The territory now occupied by North and South Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia was taken over by the French. The Philippines was controlled by Spain until 1898, when it was taken over by the United States. Only Thailand remained independent. The history section of Chapter 22 explains why.



A Spanish fort in the Philippines. Early in the 1500's, a Spanish expedition organized by Magellan found a westward water route to Asia. In 1565, Spain established a colony in the Philippines. All parts of Southeast Asia except Thailand were eventually taken over by foreigners.

Westerners bring changes to Southeast Asia. At first, most of the Westerners who came to Southeast Asia wanted to obtain spices. Soon, however, it was discovered that this region could provide other valuable goods. There were rich mineral deposits, and the climate was suitable for growing tropical plants such as sugarcane and rubber trees. Mines and plantations were established, and roads and railroads were built to carry products to port cities where they could be shipped overseas.

The Westerners who came to Southeast Asia helped the people in many important ways. They brought peace to regions that had been torn by warfare. In several areas, missionaries introduced Christianity. Some hospitals and schools were started, new food crops such as potatoes and corn

were introduced, and new methods of irrigation and drainage were put to use. With peace, better health care, and increased food supplies, the population of Southeast Asia began to grow very rapidly.

The Western nations that gained control of Southeast Asia are remembered more by the people here for the ways they neglected this region than for the ways in which they helped it. Most of the Westerners who came were mainly interested in making money. They thought of Southeast Asia as a source of raw materials for their own use. Since the Western nations wished to exchange their own industrial goods for Southeast Asia's exports, little modern manufacturing was established in this region. In addition, people from the



Ho Chi Minh and Sukarno were among the Southeast Asian leaders who worked for independence. Although Westerners helped Southeast Asia in many ways, they thought of this region mainly as a source of raw materials for their own use, and as a market for manufactured goods.

Western nations held nearly all the important jobs. For this reason, only a few of Southeast Asia's people were able to get the kind of experience they needed for self-government.

The countries of Southeast Asia struggle for independence. Many Southeast Asian people were dissatisfied under Western rule and wished to be free. Late in the nineteenth century, people in several Southeast Asian countries began to work for independence. The leaders of the independence movements were often Southeast Asians who had learned about democ-

racy and other political philosophies while studying in Western schools.

As time went on, the leaders working for independence became increasingly impatient. In 1934, the United States made definite plans to grant the Philippines independence. However, the European nations that controlled other parts of Southeast Asia did not make any promises of complete freedom to their possessions. By the time World War II began and the Japanese invaded Southeast Asia, many people here were ready to welcome anyone they thought might help them achieve independence.

Independence

The Japanese conquer almost all of Southeast Asia. Early in the morning of December 8,* 1941, the news came through to the Philippines that Pearl Harbor had been bombed by the Japanese. Less than ten hours later, Clark Field, a military base outside the city of Manila, was the target of a similar attack.

The bombing of Pearl Harbor and Clark Field was part of a Japanese plan to gain control of eastern Asia. The island country of Japan needed more petroleum, iron, and other raw materials than it was able to produce. It also needed markets for goods manufactured in its many factories.

The Japanese decided to obtain by force the things they needed from other countries. As early as 1931 they invaded Manchuria, in northeastern China. Soon after World War II started, the Japanese realized that this was a good opportunity to gain control of the rich natural resources of Southeast Asia. The Germans had overrun the Netherlands and France, and were threatening Britain. These three Allied nations could not send many soldiers to defend their colonies in Southeast Asia. First, the Japanese occupied the parts of Southeast Asia controlled by France. (See top map on page 124.) Then they bombed

*See glossary

War ruins in Manila. World War II had been going on in Europe for more than two years when the Japanese attacked American military bases in Hawaii and the Philippines, in December, 1941. Japan hoped to gain control of the rich natural resources of Southeast Asia.

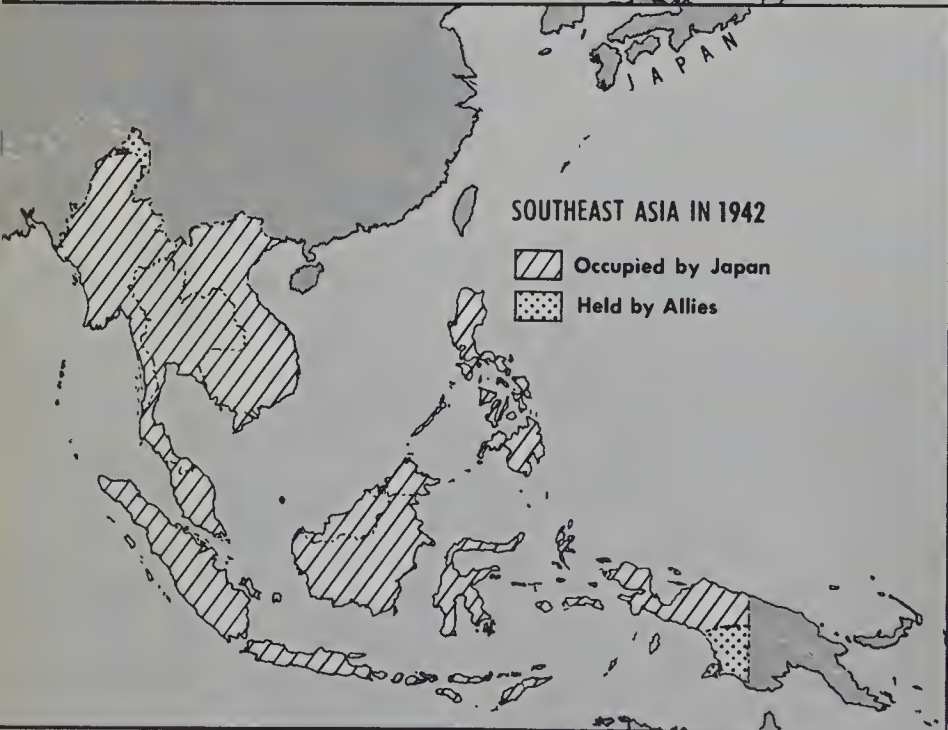


Exploring History With Maps



In 1910 all of Southeast Asia except the country of Siam was controlled by Western nations. Westerners established mines and plantations, built roads and railroads, and developed great trading cities.

Most of the colonial powers regarded Southeast Asia mainly as a source of raw materials. Many Southeast Asians became dissatisfied under colonial rule.



Soon after World War II started, Japan realized that this was a good opportunity to take over the Western territories in Southeast Asia. By August of 1942, most of this region was under Japanese occupation. When the Japanese were defeated, most people in Southeast Asia did not want the Westerners to return and rule their colonies as they had before the war.



Today, nearly all of Southeast Asia is independent. On September 16, 1963, the new country of Malaysia was formed. It included Malaya, Singapore, and the former British colonies of North Borneo (now called Sabah) and Sarawak. In 1965, Singapore withdrew from Malaysia and became independent.

West New Guinea, previously administered by the United Nations, is now governed by Indonesia. Brunei remains a British-protected sultanate. The eastern part of the island of Timor is a Portuguese Overseas Province.

Pearl Harbor and other American military bases that might have sent ships or planes to protect Southeast Asia. The United States declared war on Japan, but most of the American ships and planes in the Pacific area had been destroyed. It took many months to build the military equipment needed to fight the war in this area.

By August, 1942, almost all of Southeast Asia was under Japanese control. The Japanese claimed that they wanted to drive the Westerners out and restore Asia to the Asians. At first, this promise appealed to the people who were striving for independence. The Japanese also impressed the people of Southeast Asia with their swift defeat of the Westerners

in this region. Most of these once-powerful foreigners were imprisoned in Japanese concentration camps.

The Southeast Asians very soon realized that Japan's promise of "Asia for the Asians" was misleading. Japan wanted to drive the Westerners out so that it could take over Southeast Asia. In many places, the Japanese treated the Southeast Asians more harshly than the Westerners had. A few Southeast Asian leaders cooperated with the Japanese. Some did so because they thought that this might improve their countries' chances for independence. In many parts of Southeast Asia, however, bands of guerrilla fighters were organized to oppose the

Fortifications on Corregidor Island, in the Philippines. By the summer of 1942, the Philippines and most other parts of Southeast Asia had fallen to the Japanese.



invaders. The British and Americans furnished weapons to these bands whenever possible, even though some of them had Communist leaders. As the war continued, the Allies sent more and more men and equipment to fight the Japanese. Finally, in 1945, Japan surrendered.

Most of Southeast Asia gains independence after World War II. The war increased the determination of Southeast Asia's people to gain independence. When the Japanese took over, they placed Southeast Asians in many important government positions, for there were too few Japanese officials to run the countries in this region. Near the end of the war, the Japanese tried to win support by granting

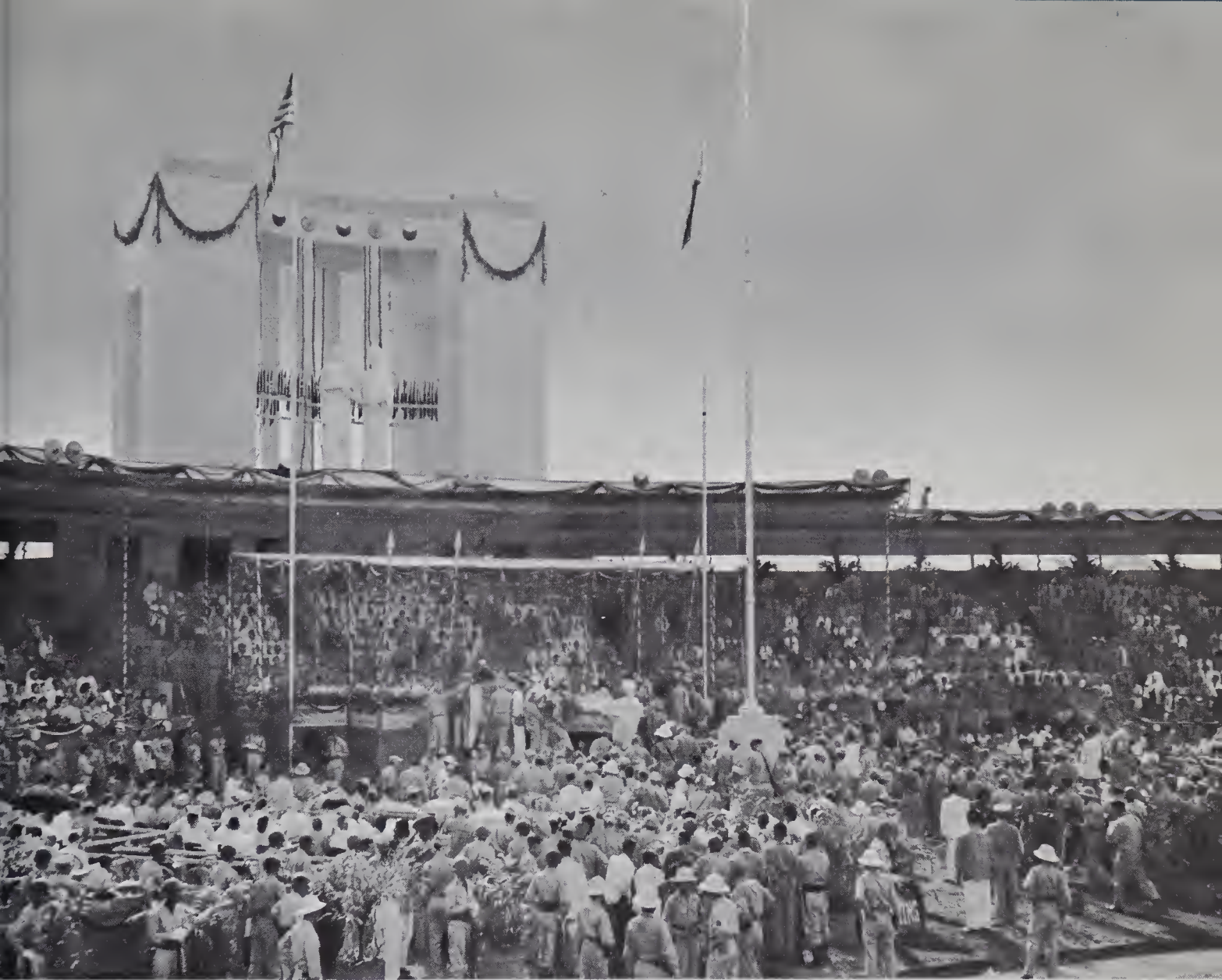
some of the countries token independence, with the Japanese remaining in actual control. When the war was over, and the Japanese left, most Southeast Asians did not want the Westerners to return and try to reestablish their colonies.

The history sections in the chapters about each country, in Part 3, tell more about how independence came to this region. Some countries, such as Indonesia, had to fight bitterly before their independence was recognized. Others, such as the Philippines, were granted independence in an orderly manner.

The new nations of Southeast Asia face many problems. Southeast Asia's new nations had many problems to solve when

The Japanese signed the formal surrender agreement in September, 1945. After the war, most Southeast Asians did not want the Westerners to return and take over their colonies again.





Independence ceremonies in the Philippines. Most parts of Southeast Asia were able to become independent after World War II. Some countries, such as the Philippines, gained their freedom peacefully, but others had to fight for it.

they gained independence. Roads, railroads, and mines had been destroyed during the war. There were far too few industries and schools. Most of the countries did not have enough trained government leaders and skilled workers, and many of the people were poor, sick, and uneducated. It was difficult for the newly independent countries to solve these problems, for they had little experience in running their own affairs. In addition, they had little capital.

Civil wars break out in several Southeast Asian countries. There is another reason why Southeast Asia's new governments have had difficulty in solving their prob-

lems. Many of the countries in this region did not exist until Westerners came to Southeast Asia. Before that time, these countries were divided into many small independent territories. Western nations joined together the territories they took over, established boundary lines, and set up colonial governments. Naturally, the different groups of people who were united under a colonial government seldom felt loyal to it. Later, when the colony gained its freedom, some groups had no feeling of loyalty to the newly independent government, either. In some countries, such as Burma, groups of people have rebelled and there has been civil war.

The Communist parties in most countries of Southeast Asia have caused trouble, also. These parties want to overthrow the governments, and have persuaded many discontented people to work with them. The Communists have encouraged strikes, led raids against plantations and villages, and helped cause other disorder to weaken the governments' power. It is difficult to defeat these rebels, for they hide deep in the jungles or disguise themselves as local farmers.

In two parts of Southeast Asia, Malaya and the Philippines, the Communist threat has been brought under control, but in Laos and South Vietnam it is still critical. Chapters 20, 24, 25, and 26 discuss the struggle against communism in each of these areas.

People in other parts of the world are helping Southeast Asia. Other countries are trying to help Southeast Asia's nations solve their problems. The United States is providing money and sending teachers,

Vietnamese government soldiers in Saigon. Since World War II, the Communists have worked hard to gain control of Southeast Asia. In Malaya and the Philippines, the Communist threat has been brought under control. In South Vietnam and Laos, however, it is still serious.





American corn being unloaded at Saigon. The United States is sending food, money, and other types of aid to countries in Southeast Asia. These countries are also receiving help from other nations, such as Britain, Australia, France, the Soviet Union, and Communist China.

farm experts, engineers, and other skilled people to countries in Southeast Asia. Nations such as Britain, Australia, France, the Soviet Union, and Communist China are also sending this kind of aid. The United Nations is helping, too.

The countries of Southeast Asia will continue to need help for many years. Although progress is being made, they still need more roads, railroads, schools, and factories. Too few people have the opportunity to earn a good living, and there is still the danger of rebellion in some countries. Although outside help is needed in

solving many of these problems, Southeast Asia's new nations do not want outsiders to interfere in their affairs. These nations worked hard to gain their independence, and now they are determined to guard it.

Some Southeast Asian nations feel, however, that they need outside help in preserving their independence. One example is Malaysia, which has a mutual defense treaty with Britain. Another is South Vietnam, where armed forces from the United States, Australia, and other Free World nations are fighting alongside Vietnamese troops against the Communists.

EDUCATION

Most countries in Southeast Asia are working hard to provide their people with an opportunity for more education. The Philippine government considers schools so important that about one fifth of the money it spends each year goes for education. In Indonesia, fewer than three million children attended school in 1940. Today Indonesia has more than ten million children in school, and many adults who never learned to read and write are attending classes. Other Southeast Asian countries are also making progress.

Much still remains to be done, however. Many adults do not know how to read and write, and millions of children are not in school. There are not nearly enough school buildings and well-trained teachers for the increasing number of people who want to study. Many schools are overcrowded, and educational standards are often low. Textbooks have to be translated from other languages and are often scarce. Another problem is that many students leave school after the first few grades.

Outside countries, and organizations such as UNESCO are trying to help solve these educational problems. Missionaries have established fine schools in some places. In addition, students from Southeast Asia are being sent to study in the universities of other countries.

A teacher-training school in Indonesia.



Spraying to kill mosquitoes in Thailand.

HEALTH

The Westerners who established colonies in Southeast Asia built some hospitals and improved health conditions. However, disease is still a serious problem. Among the widespread illnesses in this region are malaria, dysentery, tuberculosis, and yaws. In some areas, health conditions are so poor that half the babies die before they reach school age.

One reason why there is so much sickness in Southeast Asia is that many of the people have poor health habits. They drink impure water from ponds and canals, and do not practice proper sanitation. Many of them do not know that flies and mosquitoes frequently transmit disease. Often they are not able to obtain the variety of foods necessary for good health. Their main food is rice, which they prefer to eat after the brown, vitamin-filled outer covering has been removed.

There are not nearly enough fully trained doctors in Southeast Asia, but there are many medical workers with less training who treat common diseases successfully. There are also herb doctors and people who use magic ceremonies to try to restore health.

The governments of Southeast Asia's countries are trying to improve health conditions for their people. Organizations and governments in other parts of the world are also helping.

Facts To Review

1. From what parts of the world did the ancestors of most people in Southeast Asia come?
2. What important contributions to Southeast Asian culture did settlers and traders from India make?
3. Why was Southeast Asia an important trading area in the fifteenth century?
4. Why were spices so important five hundred years ago? How did they help to shape the history of Southeast Asia?
5. What was the first European nation to become powerful in Southeast Asia? Why did it lose its power there?
6. How did Westerners help the people of Southeast Asia? In what ways did they neglect this region?
7. Why did the Japanese want to conquer Southeast Asia? Why was the beginning of World War II a good time to carry out this ambition?
8. Why was Japan's promise, "Asia for the Asians," misleading?
9. How did the countries of Southeast Asia win their independence? (See also history sections of chapters in Part 3.)
10. What were some of the problems the newly independent countries of Southeast Asia faced?
11. Review the history sections of Chapters 19 through 27 and tell how you think unrest and warfare have influenced and continue to influence the history of Southeast Asia.

Report Topics

1. Imperialism

Southeast Asia was the scene of imperialistic policies on the part of many European countries. Look up the term "imperialism" in the dictionary. Using an encyclopedia and one other source, write a report exploring the following questions:

- a. What is imperialism?
- b. What are some of the aims that might be behind an imperialistic policy of a nation?
- c. What were the aims behind the imperialism of Western countries in Southeast Asia? Do you think Westerners did more harm than good in Southeast Asia?
- d. In your opinion, is imperialism a desirable or undesirable policy? Why?
- e. Some experts think that the policies of Communists could well be termed "Communist imperialism." Do you think this would be correct? Give reasons for your answer.

2. Islam

Islam is an important religion in Southeast Asia. Using an encyclopedia and one other source, write a report about Islam. You may want to organize your report in the manner suggested below:

- a. an opening section about Mohammed, the founder of Islam, and the early spread of his teachings
- b. a section outlining the philosophy of Islam
- c. a section about the various ceremonies and customs of Islam
- d. a section telling the parts of the world to which Islam has spread

Ideas for Discussion

1. How does the way in which Europeans first learned about the Philippines compare with the discovery of America?
2. In what important ways did the colonies established by Europeans in Southeast Asia differ from the Thirteen Colonies established in America?
3. Should the United States send military aid to countries in Southeast Asia, such as South Vietnam?

Keeping Up With the Times

Communists are constantly trying to gain headway in Southeast Asian countries, such as South Vietnam and Laos. Start a file of newspaper and magazine clippings about important events that deal with Communist intervention in Southeast Asian countries. As a class, discuss how these events will affect the people of these countries. How will they affect the rest of the world?

Reading Suggestions

The Second World War, by Winston Churchill and The Editors of *Life*

Guerrilla, by Charles Thayer

Vietnam Diary, by Richard Tregaskis

The Ocean: Man's Conquest of the Sea, by Alan Villiers

Burmese Family, by Daw Mi Mi Khaing

Adventurers in Siam in the Seventeenth Century, by E. W. Hutchinson

The Arts and Civilization of Angkor, by Jacques Arthaud

Land Below the Wind, by Agnes Newton Keith

Indonesia: Land of Challenge, by Marguerite H. Bro

The Story of Indonesia, by Louis Fischer

Asia in the European Age, by Michael Edwardes



Farm women in Thailand often wear loose blouses, bright-colored skirts, and large straw hats. The clothing worn by Southeast Asian villagers differs greatly from place to place.

11 People

Problems To Solve

1. Traders, colonial officials, missionaries, and immigrants from other parts of the world have brought many ideas to the countries of Southeast Asia. **How do the people of Southeast Asia reflect the influence of other nations?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how foreign influences are reflected in the following:
 - a. the lives of people in the large cities of Southeast Asia
 - b. the religious practices in Southeast Asia
 - c. the arts of Southeast Asia
2. **Why are the people who live in the lowlands of Southeast Asia generally more advanced than those who live in the remote highlands?**

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Southeast Asia is the home of more than 240 million people, about 45 million more than live in the United States. Most of these people have brownish or yellowish skin. The top map on page 138 indicates that Southeast Asia's population is very unevenly distributed. A comparison of

this map and the relief map on pages 90 and 91 shows that the more densely populated areas generally are on coastal lowlands and on river plains. There are several crowded highland areas, however. The most notable of these is the mountainous island of Java.

✓The number of people who live in Southeast Asia is increasing rapidly. Better food, hygiene, and medical care are largely responsible for this increase. ✕Fewer babies now become sick and die, and adults live longer than they used to. Today there are more than twenty times as many people in Southeast Asia as there were in 1800. In parts of Java and Thailand, and on the Red River Delta of North Vietnam, more than 1,500 people live on each square mile of land. In general, however, Southeast Asia is still one of the more thinly populated parts of the Eurasian land mass.

Most Southeast Asian people live in farming villages. Most of the people in Southeast Asia live in villages and earn their living by farming. The clothing these villagers wear and the customs they follow differ greatly from place to place. Therefore, no village can be considered typical.

Houses in Thailand. Village houses in Southeast Asia vary somewhat from country to country. However, they usually have peaked roofs and are made of wood, bamboo, or other forest products. The roofs of many of the houses are covered with thatch.

Nevertheless, a study of a specific village will provide some insight into the general standard of living in this region.

The village selected for this study is located in Thailand. Like many other villages in Southeast Asia, it is built along the bank of a river, and is almost surrounded by rice fields. Each house in the village is enclosed by a bamboo fence. Inside the fences are flowers, fruit trees, coconut palms, and small vegetable gardens.

The village houses reflect the influence of the climate in this region. Most of them are built of wood and bamboo, and have steep, pointed roofs that are thatched with nipa palm leaves or other types of broad leaves. Each house is built on posts that raise the floor five or six feet off the ground. This type of construction has several advantages. It protects the house from floodwater during the rainy season





A farm family in Burma. A large part of Southeast Asia's vast population lives in farming villages crowded together on the coastal lowlands and river plains of this region. Some fertile areas in the highlands are also densely populated.

and makes the house cooler. In addition, it helps to keep out the creeping insects and small animals that are common in tropical areas.

The village houses are furnished very simply. Each has a shaded porch, where the members of the family spend much of their time. In the sleeping rooms that open off the porch are wooden storage chests, and mats rolled up against the wall. These mats are unrolled at night and used as beds. There are no modern conveniences such as electricity and plumbing in most of the houses. Most villagers light their homes with kerosene or coconut-oil lamps, and cook their food on small clay stoves

that are shaped somewhat like overturned flowerpots. The villagers bathe every day in the river. Village people in Thailand who do not live along a river or other waterway bathe in small enclosures in their yards.

Except in the delta of the Chao Phraya River, where commercial rice farming is very important, village people in Thailand have very little money to spend. Nevertheless, they generally have the food and shelter they need. When a family needs a new house, neighbors usually help build it. Also, the members of the family raise nearly all the food they need on their own farm. Any surplus is sold or traded at the

village market. In the past fifty years, trading has rapidly given way to selling, and the village people have become accustomed to a money economy. Villagers seldom save their money, however. Instead, they are likely to invest it in land or spend it on special celebrations and such luxury items as cosmetics and sewing machines.

Both at work and at leisure, villagers in Thailand are unhurried and take time to enjoy each other's company. Parents and children show their affection for each other freely. Each family works together in the fields. At mealtime, the entire family eats together, sitting in a circle on the floor.

Some Southeast Asian people live in large cities. Although the majority of people in Southeast Asia live in farm villages, there are a number of large cities in this region. In these urban areas there are wide, paved streets, automobiles, and modern office buildings. City people often wear Western-style clothing. Some of them have electric lights, radios, piped water and gas, and

A street in Singapore. Southeast Asia's cities have been growing rapidly since World War II. Some city people wear Western-style clothing.



Tribal children in Thailand. Many primitive tribesmen live in remote wilderness areas in the highlands of Southeast Asia.

other modern conveniences in their homes. Important officials and wealthy people have large, beautiful homes. Toward the outskirts of the cities, however, are crowded neighborhoods of little houses much like the village homes described on pages 133 and 134.

Scattered groups of tribesmen live in the wilderness areas of Southeast Asia. Outside the crowded cities and farming areas of Southeast Asia, it is possible to travel for miles without seeing a single house or person. Large parts of this region are covered with swamps, and forested plains and mountains. In the remote highland areas are tribes of people who often live in a very primitive manner. Some are small, dark-skinned people who make their living as hunters and food-gatherers. Others have light-brown skin like the people of the lowlands. They usually clear small patches in the forests for farming.

Many different groups of people live in Southeast Asia. There are many groups of tribesmen who live in Southeast Asia,



CITIES OF SOUTHEAST ASIA

Most people in Southeast Asia live in villages, but the cities in this region have been growing rapidly since World War II. Today there are about fifty cities with populations of 100,000 and over. Several of these have a million or more people. (See map above.) All of Southeast Asia's largest cities are seaports or river ports to which the products of nearby mines, forests, and fields are brought for export. Except for Bangkok, these cities were former colonial government or trade centers.

Indonesia has more cities than any other country in Southeast Asia. Most of these are located on the densely populated island of Java. In each country on the Indo-Chinese

Peninsula, the capital is the largest and most important city. The Philippines has several important cities, but Manila is by far the most important. Singapore, off the southern tip of Malaya, is the largest port city for the Malay Peninsula.

Southeast Asia's cities are interesting places to visit. The various groups of people, such as the Chinese, Indians, and Malays, usually live in separate sections of the city. Some of the people dress in Western clothing, and some wear colorful native garments. Modern streets and new buildings as well as beautiful old temples and crowded neighborhoods of little thatch-roofed houses can all be seen in Southeast Asia's cities.

especially in the highland areas. These people generally differ in dress, language, and customs from the people of the lowlands. For example, in Laos most of the lowland people speak the Lao language and live in permanent agricultural settlements where they raise rice in irrigated fields. In the highlands, however, there are groups such as the Meo, the Man, and the Kha, who usually live in temporary settlements and farm in the manner described on page 145. Most of these tribal peoples speak different languages or dialects.

Today there are more than twelve million Chinese in Southeast Asia. They run many of the shops and businesses. Most of the Chinese have retained their own language and customs instead of becoming integrated into the various Southeast Asian cultures. They are often resented by the other people of Southeast Asia. In

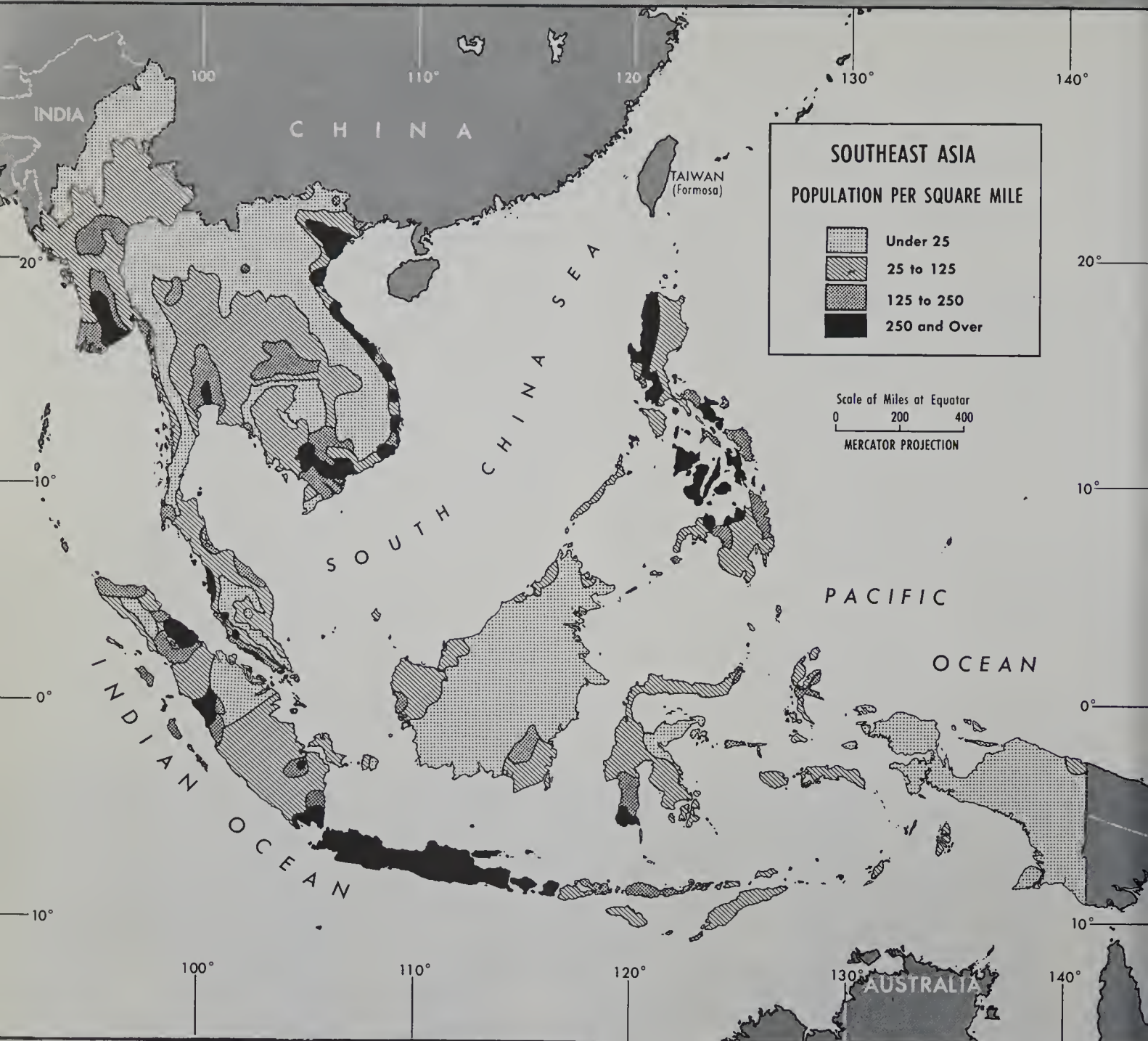
addition to the Chinese, there are people in this region from India and Pakistan. Some Westerners also live here.

Southeast Asia has borrowed religions and customs from other lands. Many different religions are practiced in Southeast Asia. On the island of Bali, in Indonesia, there are temples where gods of the Hindu religion are worshiped. Hinduism developed in India many centuries before the birth of Christ. Traders and missionaries from India brought this religion to Southeast Asia. (See Chapter 10.) For a while, Hinduism was important throughout most of Southeast Asia, but in time other religions took its place. Today, the Hindu religion is important only on Bali and the neighboring island of Lombok. However, people in other parts of Southeast Asia still enjoy watching skilled dancers act out Hindu legends.

Chinese people in Singapore. More than twelve million Chinese live in Southeast Asia. Instead of becoming integrated into the cultures of the various Southeast Asian countries in which they have settled, most of these people have retained their own language and customs.



Exploring Population With Maps



The map above shows that many people live in some parts of Southeast Asia, while other parts of this region are very thinly populated. When you compare this map with the map on pages 90 and 91, you will see that most of the densely populated areas are lowlands. The top map on page 149 shows that the crowded parts of Southeast Asia are generally important farming areas also.

If you will compare the map on the left with a globe on which place-names appear, you will see that India, China, and Europe have a larger proportion of densely populated territory than Southeast Asia. You will also notice that these other parts of the world have more large cities than

The religion followed by most people in Indonesia is Islam. It was founded in Arabia by a prophet named Mohammed, and was brought to Southeast Asia by traders and missionaries. Many people in Malaya are also followers of Islam. Moslems in Malaya and Indonesia have constructed beautiful Islamic temples, or mosques. (See picture on page 117.)

In Thailand there are many tall, pointed pagodas, and temples with colorful roofs that turn up sharply at the corners. These have been built by followers of a religion founded by Gautama Buddha,

who lived in India about 2,500 years ago. Traders and missionaries from India, and later from Ceylon, helped to spread Buddhism to Southeast Asia. Today it is the main religion of Thailand, Burma, Cambodia, and Laos. Most Buddhist males in these countries become monks for some period of time during their lives. They shave their heads and dress in yellow or orange robes. Each morning they walk through the streets carrying bowls, which people fill with food.

Many Vietnamese people are Buddhists, also. They belong to a different

Moslems in Indonesia. About 90 percent of the people in Indonesia follow the religion of Islam. There are also many Moslems in Malaya, where Islam is the official religion, and in the southern part of the Philippines.





Offering food to Buddhist monks in Thailand. Buddhism is the religion of most of the people who live on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. This religion spread to Southeast Asia from India, where it was founded about 2,500 years ago.

Women in South Vietnam. The Vietnamese borrowed Buddhism, as well as many other ideas and customs, from the Chinese.



branch of the religion from the one followed in other Southeast Asian countries, however. The Vietnamese learned about Buddhism mainly from Chinese monks, instead of from the Indians and Ceylonese who helped bring this religion to other parts of Southeast Asia.

Chinese influence has been important in other aspects of Vietnamese life besides religion. Many people in Vietnam eat with chopsticks as the Chinese do, and follow the teachings of the Chinese philosopher Confucius, who lived about 500 B.C. In addition, they worship the spirits of their ancestors.

Christianity is another important religion in Southeast Asia. Both Protestant and Catholic missionaries have come to

this region. In most countries of Southeast Asia, only a small proportion of the people have accepted Christianity. In the Philippines, however, more than 90 percent of the people are Christians. Most of them belong to the Roman Catholic Church.

Many Southeast Asian people whose religions came originally from other countries also practice spirit worship, or animism, as their ancestors did long ago. The

spirits are supposed to live in mountains, forests, streams, and other places. Some of the interesting customs in Southeast Asia have arisen from this belief in spirits. Close to almost every home in Thailand is a little spirit house, where the guardian spirit of the home supposedly lives. Each day it receives an offering of flowers, candles, and incense. Wayside shrines are also built for spirit worship.

A Roman Catholic Church service in the Philippines. The Spanish brought the Christian religion to the Philippines in the sixteenth century. Today, more than 90 percent of the people here are Christians. Most of them belong to the Roman Catholic Church.



Facts To Review

1. How does the density of population in Southeast Asia compare to population densities in other parts of Eurasia? (See bottom map on page 138.)
2. What parts of Southeast Asia are most densely populated? Why? (See also Chapter 8.)
3. Why is there such a great variety of people living in Southeast Asia? (See also Chapter 10.)
4. What are the people like who live in the remote highland areas of Southeast Asia? How do they differ from the people in the lowlands?
5. How does the number of large cities in Southeast Asia compare with the number in the rest of Eurasia? (See bottom map on page 138.)
6. Where are most of the large cities in Southeast Asia located? (See maps on pages 90, 91, and 136.)

Describing Scenes in Southeast Asia

Write a descriptive paragraph about one of the subjects below. You may want to read more about the subject you choose in an encyclopedia or some other source before you write

your paragraph.

1. a city in Southeast Asia
2. a wilderness area of Southeast Asia
3. a village home in Thailand

Learning More About Buddhism

One of the important religions in Southeast Asia is Buddhism. Write a report about Buddhism, using an encyclopedia and one other source of information. You may want to organize your report in the following manner:

- a. an opening section that briefly tells about the life of Buddha and how he came to be the founder of a new religion
- b. a section outlining the beliefs of Buddha
- c. a closing section describing the different ways Buddha's teachings have been interpreted

Making a Poster

Make a poster that shows some of the many different types of dress worn in Southeast Asia. You will want to refer to the pictures in this book as well as those in encyclopedias. The Cumulative Index of the *National Geographic* will help you find articles about Southeast Asian countries, which may contain pictures to help you with this assignment.

A spirit shrine in Thailand. Many people in Southeast Asia worship spirits, just as their ancestors did long ago before other religions were introduced to this region. The practice of spirit worship, or animism, is often carried on simultaneously with other religions.





Farmland in Thailand. Most of the workers in Southeast Asia earn their living by farming. In addition to food for Southeast Asia's people, some of the farmers here raise large amounts of agricultural products for export to other parts of the world.

12 Agriculture

Problems To Solve

1. **Why is Southeast Asia one of the world's important farming regions?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about the effect of each of the following on Southeast Asia's agriculture.
 - a. the climate of this region
 - b. the land features of this region
 - c. the number of people who live in this region
 - d. the former colonial status of most countries in this region
2. **Most farmers in Southeast Asia earn very little money. Why are farm in-**

comes in Southeast Asia generally low?

In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how farm incomes in Southeast Asia are influenced by the following:

- a. the farming methods used in this region
- b. land ownership and moneylending in parts of this region
- c. the degree of industrial development in this region

Chapter 7 contains additional information that will be helpful in solving this problem.

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Southeast Asia is one of the world's important farming regions. In most areas, crops can be raised the year round because the climate is always warm. Most of this

region also has heavy rainfall. Some parts of Southeast Asia produce large quantities of rice, rubber, and other agricultural products for export. There is enough

uncultivated land in this region to raise even larger quantities of farm products in the future.

Less than one tenth of the land is used for farming. Only about 9 percent of the land in Southeast Asia is under cultivation. In most of Southeast Asia, the main farmlands are on river plains and coastal lowlands. The silt that the rivers wash down from the mountains helps to make these lowlands fertile. On the island of Java, people have made level fields by terracing the slopes of volcanoes. Ashes and other materials from the volcanoes have enriched the soil in these fields. Some mountain slopes in northern Luzon are terraced, also. (See picture below.)

Swampy lowlands and forested mountains cover much of the rest of Southeast

Asia. The soil in many of these wilderness areas is poor, for heavy rains wash out the minerals and other materials needed by plants. Also, mosquitoes carrying malaria and other diseases make some of these areas unhealthy places in which to live. If the mosquitoes were controlled, swamps were drained, and land were cleared and fertilized, Southeast Asia would have more farmland.

Densely populated farmlands of Southeast Asia. Some of the farmlands of Southeast Asia are very densely populated. (Compare top map on page 138 with top map on page 149.) In the Red River Delta of North Vietnam and on the island of Java, small fields cover the countryside like pieces of a puzzle fitted closely together. Many farmers in these crowded

Terraced farmlands in northern Luzon. Mountain slopes in some parts of the Philippines and on Java have been terraced to make level fields for farming. Throughout most of Southeast Asia, however, the main farmlands are on river plains and coastal lowlands.





A tea plantation in Indonesia. Westerners established many large plantations in Indonesia and other parts of Southeast Asia. Although most of the workers on these plantations are Southeast Asians, some of them have come from India or China.

areas raise two crops on the same land each year. Even so, they often cannot produce all the food they need.

Less-crowded farmlands of Southeast Asia. Some lowlands in Southeast Asia have been cleared for farms only in the last one hundred years. Peasants using simple tools have drained huge swamps in the Irrawaddy Delta of Burma. Other areas have been cleared for farming in Cambodia and South Vietnam. As yet, the newer farmlands of Southeast Asia are not as crowded as those settled earlier. The farms are larger, and farmers usually raise only one crop a year. Even so, they are able to produce more than they need. Large quantities of rice are exported from these newer farmlands.

Plantations in Southeast Asia. As the top map on page 149 shows, Southeast Asia also has plantations. These produce rubber, palm oil, tea, tobacco, copra, and

other agricultural products for export. Most of Southeast Asia's plantations were established by Westerners, but many of them have come under local control.

Farms in forest clearings of Southeast Asia. Scattered throughout the remote forests of Southeast Asia are still other farmlands. Primitive tribesmen who live in these wilderness areas practice shifting cultivation. They cut down and burn trees to clear small patches of land for farming. Then they plant their crops among the burned stumps and fallen tree trunks. Every few years, when the soil has lost its fertility, the tribesmen move on and clear new land.

Problems that Southeast Asia's farmers face. About three fourths of Southeast Asia's workers make their living in agriculture. Most of these people use primitive farming methods. They plant and harvest their crops by hand and use simple tools



Farming methods are primitive in most of Southeast Asia. Farmers here need to use more fertilizer. Transportation also needs to be improved to enable farmers to get their products to markets more easily.

Harrowing a field in Indonesia. Farm animals such as water buffalo or oxen often take the place of tractors in Southeast Asia.



such as hoes and sickles. Water buffalo or oxen pull their plows. Sometimes rats, grasshoppers, or other pests destroy part of the harvest. Most of Southeast Asia's farmers need to use more fertilizer. In the parts of this region that have a dry season, irrigation is needed to help crops grow when there is no rain. Also, better roads need to be constructed to enable farmers to transport their products to markets more easily.

There are other serious problems that farmers in parts of Southeast Asia face. In many countries of this region, only one third to one half of the farmers own their farms or are free from heavy debts. Land-owners often charge high rents, and people who lend money to farmers or market their goods often demand unfair payment for these services. Some way must be found to help farmers obtain land of their

own, or to enable them to rent it at reasonable prices. They must also be given an opportunity to receive a fair share of the profits from their harvests.

Some work is being done to help Southeast Asia's farmers. In several countries, land reform laws have been passed. Co-

operatives are being established in some areas to help farmers market their goods and borrow money. In addition, farm experts from other parts of the world are working with Southeast Asians to discover ways of raising better crops and livestock in this region.

Main Crops of Southeast Asia

Rice is Southeast Asia's most important crop. About 60 percent of the cultivated land in Southeast Asia is planted in rice. In the lowlands, farmers plant their rice in small plots of ground called seedbeds, which are later flooded. When the young rice plants are about a month old, they are transplanted to larger flooded fields, where they grow and ripen. Flooded fields

are also found on the terraced mountain slopes of Java and Luzon. On highland farms where the land has not been terraced, farmers raise dry rice, which is grown in much the same way as wheat.

Rice is the main food crop in Southeast Asia. It is also an important export crop. Burma, Thailand, and Cambodia raise so much more rice than they need that these

Transplanting rice on Java. Rice is raised on about 60 percent of the cropland in Southeast Asia. Three countries in this region, Burma, Thailand, and Cambodia export large quantities of rice. Several other countries, such as the Philippines, must import rice.



countries are among the world's main rice exporters. In normal times, South Vietnam also exports rice. The rice is shipped to India, China, and other densely populated countries that do not produce enough food for their people.

Other crops that Southeast Asians raise for domestic use. People in Southeast Asia raise other food crops besides rice. In the drier parts of this region, farmers grow corn, sweet potatoes, and other crops that need less moisture than rice. Most farmers raise vegetables such as beans, which provide some of the proteins that people in other parts of the world obtain from meat.

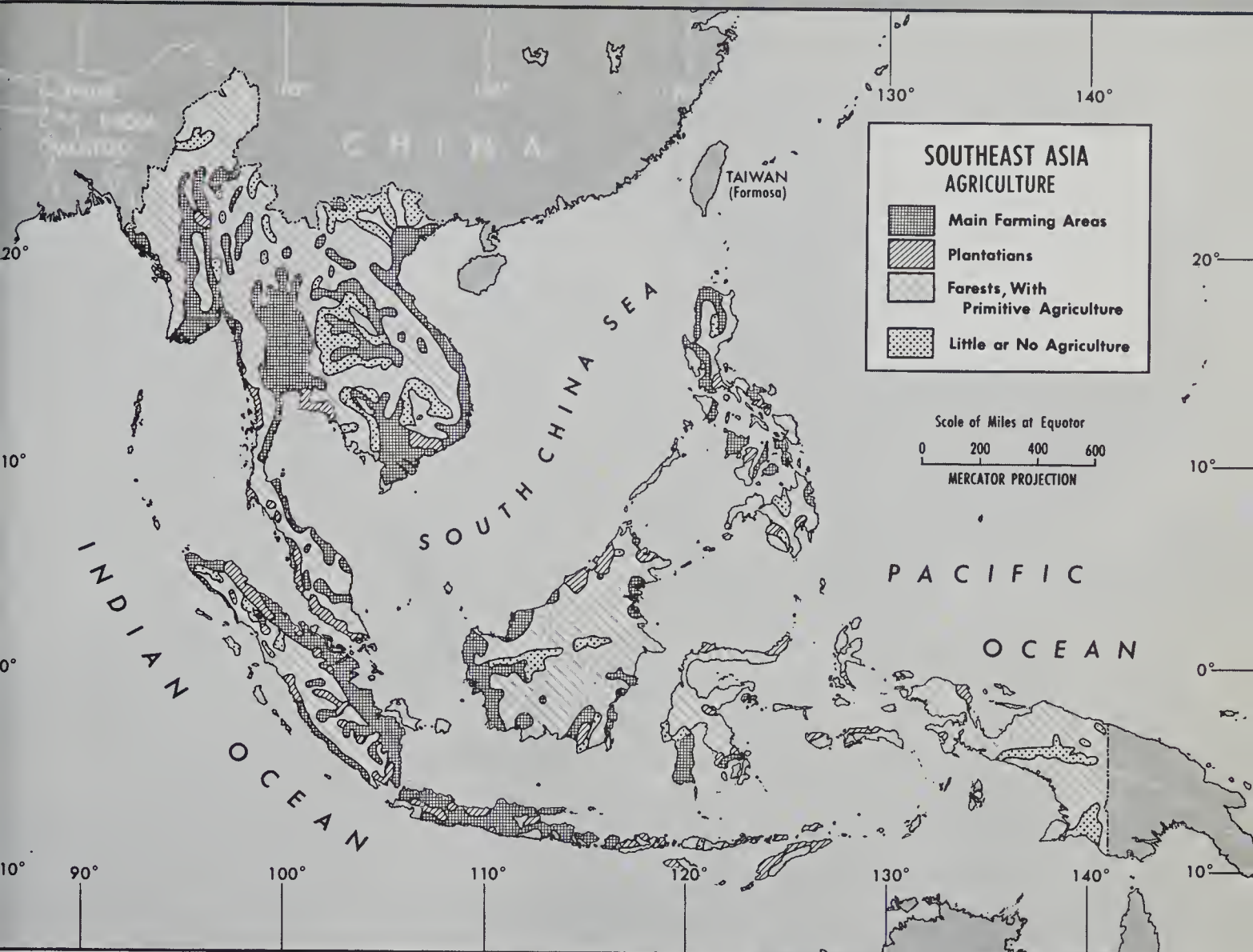
Mango, papaya, and other fruit trees grow around most village houses. Sugarcane is also raised for domestic use.

Agricultural exports of Southeast Asia. Southeast Asia exports other agricultural products besides rice. About 90 percent of the world's natural rubber comes from this region. Malaya and Indonesia are the main producers. Much of it comes from trees grown on large plantations. Increasing amounts of rubber, however, are obtained from small patches of trees that are owned and cultivated by Southeast Asian, Indian, or Chinese farmers.

Mechanized farming on an experimental rice farm in Burma. The Burmese government, with the help of the United Nations Food and Agriculture Organization, has undertaken several projects to improve farming methods in Burma.



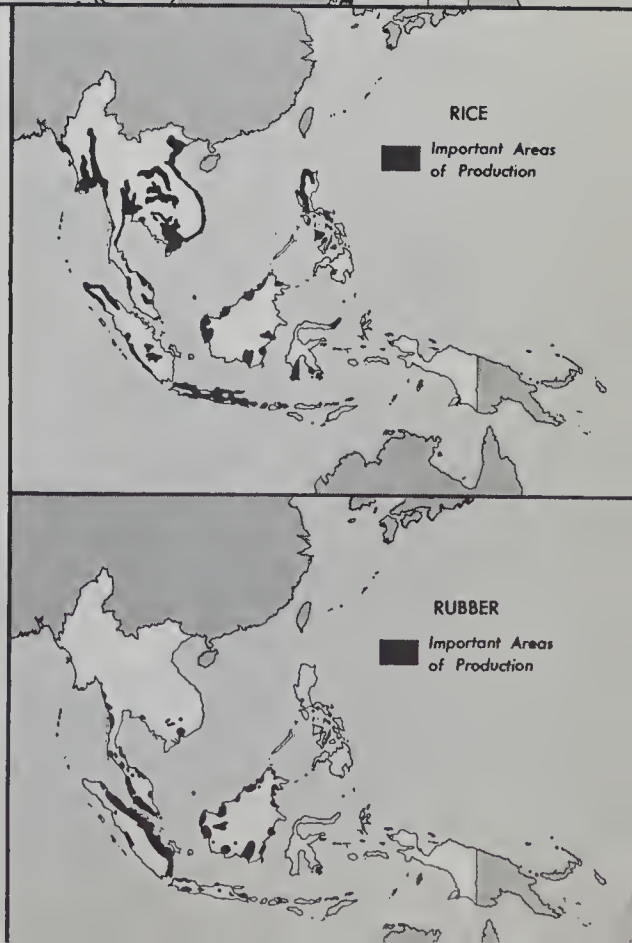
Exploring Agriculture With Maps



When you compare the map above with the map on pages 90 and 91, you find that most of Southeast Asia's main farmlands are in the lowlands. However, much of the rugged island of Java is also under cultivation. In addition to these main farming areas, there are patches of farmland in the forests. Here, primitive tribesmen cut down and burn trees to clear land for crops.

Rice is the most important crop raised on the farmlands of Southeast Asia. Thailand, Burma, and Cambodia raise more than they need, and export to other countries. In normal times, South Vietnam also exports rice. The center map shows the main areas where rice is raised.

Southeast Asia produces other farm products for export besides rice. About 90 percent of the world's natural rubber comes from this region. Among the other export products are copra, coffee, tea, and kapok. Some of these products come from small farms owned by Southeast Asians, Indians, or Chinese. Large quantities are produced on plantations established by Westerners. The map above shows where these plantations are located.





Rubber-tree seedbeds in Malaya. Westerners brought rubber-tree seedlings to Southeast Asia in the nineteenth century.

A tour of Malaya's western coast takes you past many large rubber plantations. The tall trees here have been planted in perfectly straight rows. Early in the morning, plantation workers carefully make slanting cuts in the outer bark of the rubber trees to gather latex, the fluid from which rubber is obtained. The latex is collected in small cups fastened to the trees, and then is poured into large pails. Later, it is weighed, and carried in a tank truck to the plantation's central building. There, an acid is added to the latex to thicken it. Then it is pressed thin between rollers and cut into pieces about the size of bath towels. These are dried for several days before being packed for export.

The groves of coconut trees that grow along the coasts of Southeast Asia provide

Collecting latex on a rubber plantation in Sabah. Southeast Asia produces about 90 percent of the world's natural rubber. Much of it comes from large plantations. Some of it, however, is produced by independent farmers who cultivate small groves of rubber trees.





Floating coconuts to market in the Philippines. More coconuts are grown in Southeast Asia than in any other part of the world. The dried meat of coconuts, called copra, provides a vegetable oil that is used in making products such as soap and margarine. 151

another important agricultural export. This is copra, or dried coconut meat, which is the source of a vegetable oil used in making soap, margarine, and other products. Three fourths of the world's copra comes from Southeast Asia.

Many other tropical crops are grown in Southeast Asia. Among these are coffee, tea, and spices. Indonesia raises larger quantities of these crops than any other country in this region. Cinchona trees are also grown in Indonesia. A medicine called quinine is obtained from the bark of these trees. Silky kapok, used in making life belts and pillows, is another export crop that comes from trees in Southeast Asia. The long, coarse fibers of the abaca plant, grown in the Philippines, are used to make strong rope that does not wear out quickly in salt water. Pineapples,

tobacco, and palm oil are also exported from the tropical farmlands of Southeast Asia.

Southeast Asia's agricultural exports are being replaced by synthetic products. The nations of Southeast Asia depend almost entirely on the export of raw materials such as rubber and copra for their income. However, these raw materials are now being replaced with products developed by modern science. Nylon is making abaca unnecessary, and new drugs are being used instead of quinine. Many people are using detergents in place of soap, which is often made of vegetable oil obtained from copra. In the future, synthetic rubber may ruin the market for Southeast Asia's natural rubber. The problem that synthetic goods present to the countries of Southeast Asia has not yet been solved.

Coconut meat spread out to dry. Southeast Asia's warm climate is suitable for a variety of crops besides coconuts. Among the other agricultural products of this region are coffee, tea, spices, and kapok. Cinchona trees, whose bark is used for making quinine, also grow here.





Sorting abaca in the Philippines. The long, coarse fibers of the abaca plant are used to make rope. Today, however, nylon is being used instead of abaca, just as many other synthetic products are being used in place of natural materials such as rubber and copra.

Facts To Review

1. How important is farming to the economy of Southeast Asia? (See also Chapter 11.)
2. How much land in Southeast Asia is under cultivation? Where are most of the farms?
3. What kinds of farms are there in Southeast Asia?
4. What are the main crops used for domestic consumption? What are the main export crops?
5. How could farm production be increased in Southeast Asia?
6. How do volcanoes influence farming in Southeast Asia?

Showing the Importance of Pictures

Using the pictures on pages 110, 146, and 183, write a paragraph explaining some of the problems that Southeast Asian farmers have. What could be done to solve these problems?

Writing a Report

Rice is the most important crop in Southeast Asia. Using the information in this chapter and an encyclopedia, write a report about rice. You may want to organize your report in a manner similar to the following:

- a. an opening section that describes the rice plant and the kind of climate necessary for growing rice
- b. a section that tells how rice is grown in Southeast Asia
- c. a section that describes the milling process of rice in regions such as Southeast Asia where modern machinery is not available
- d. a closing section that tells how rice is used other than for food

Defining Terms

Using the Glossary, Index, and other sources, write a brief explanation of each of the following terms:

terrace
copra

dry rice
latex

Making a Map

Make a map of Southeast Asia that shows the crops raised in various parts of this region. You will need to make a key box on your map that shows the symbol used to represent each crop. This chapter as well as the chapters on individual countries in Part 3 will help you determine where the different crops are chiefly grown.

another
This
is the
most
un-



The Great Lake in Cambodia is one of Southeast Asia's leading fishing grounds. About 130,000 tons of fish are caught here each year. The lake, which is connected to the Mekong River by the Tonle Sap River, is about four times as large during the rainy season as it is in the dry season.

13 Fishing

Problems To Solve

Fish takes the place of meat in the diets of many people in Southeast Asia. **Why is fish such an important food in Southeast Asia?** In making hypotheses, consider the following:

- the kinds of food available to people in Southeast Asia
- religions practiced in Southeast Asia whose teachings influence people's diets

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Fish is one of the most important foods in Southeast Asia. Fish takes the place of meat in the diets of many Southeast Asian people. There are several reasons for this substitution. Fish is plentiful here, while meat is scarce and expensive. The climate

here is too hot for some kinds of cattle. Also, religious beliefs discourage some people from eating meat. Moslems believe that pork is unclean, while Buddhists believe that it is wrong to kill any animals, even for food.

Farm families catch many of the fish they eat. The people who live in Southeast Asia's farming villages catch many of the fish they eat. These part-time fishermen use hooks and lines, and several kinds of nets and homemade traps. They fish in ditches, rivers, ponds, and swamps. Along the marshy coasts of several islands in the Philippines and Indonesia, large quantities of fish are raised in artificial ponds. In most of the areas where rice fields are flooded, the fields are stocked with fish.

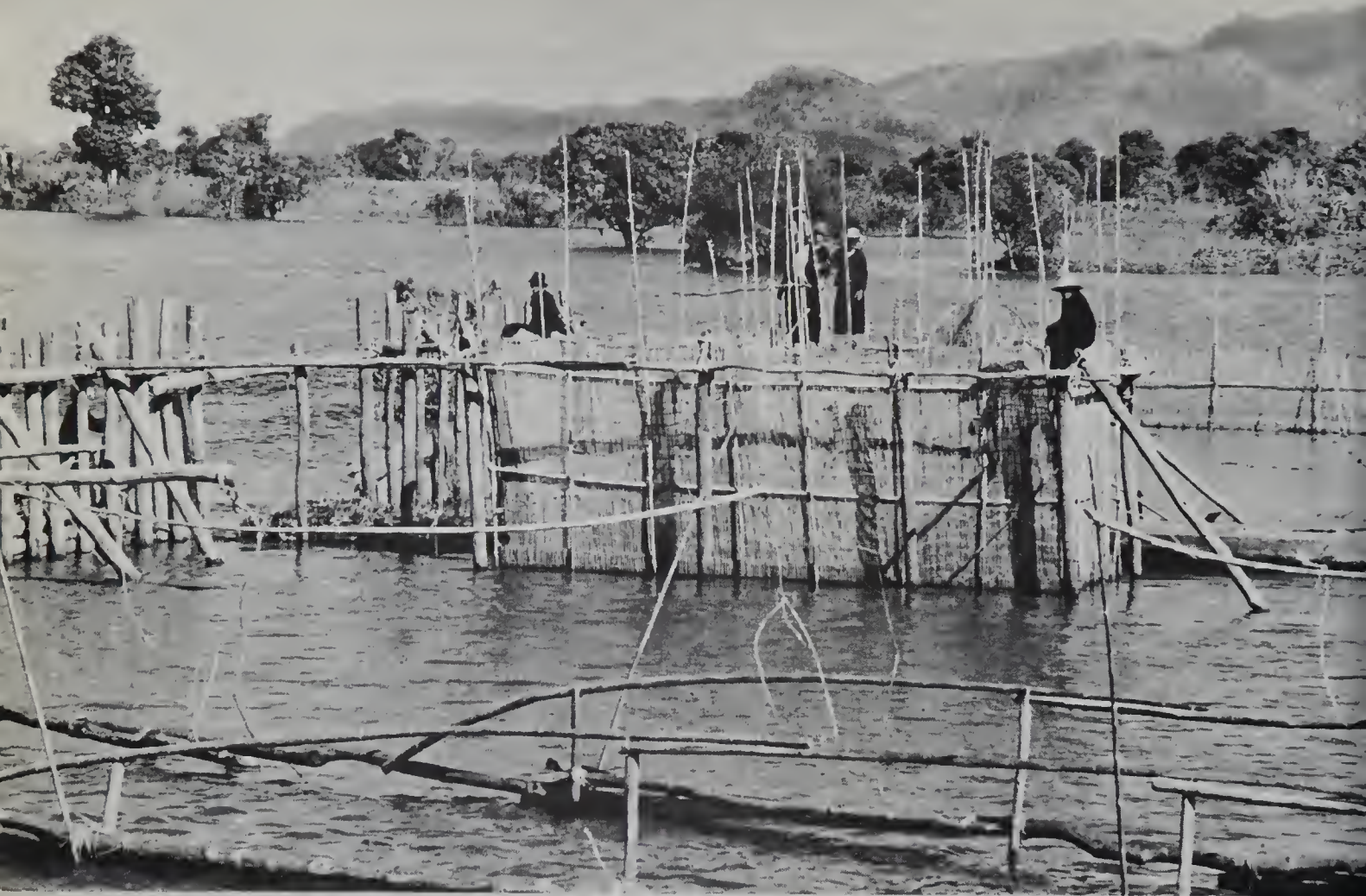
Commercial fishermen work on the Great Lake in Cambodia. One of the important commercial fishing grounds in Southeast Asia is the Great Lake in Cambodia. (See

map on page 234.) About 130,000 tons of fish are caught here each year. The Great Lake is connected to the Mekong River by a tributary called the Tonle Sap River. During the rainy season, the Mekong becomes so full that some of its water backs up into the Tonle Sap and flows into the Great Lake, causing it to flood the forest area that surrounds it. Huge schools of young fish from the Mekong enter the Great Lake at this time and swim into the flooded area. Finding plenty of food here, the fish grow very quickly.

When the rainy season ends, the water begins to recede. As the flooded area becomes shallower, the fish swim into the

Fishing with basket-shaped traps in Thailand. In many parts of Southeast Asia, farm workers are part-time fishermen. Families often catch fish in ditches and flooded fields, as well as in ponds and rivers. They use hooks and lines, and different kinds of nets and traps.





Trapping fish in the Great Lake. During the rainy season, many fish swim into the flooded forests that border the Great Lake. When the rainy season ends, fishermen place traps near the edge of the forests to catch these fish as they swim back into the lake.

deeper water of the lake. Then the busiest time of year for the lake fishermen begins.

Great Lake fishermen use various fishing methods. Some collect fish from giant traps that are placed in the water near the edge of the flooded forests to catch the fish as they swim out. (See picture above.) Others sail out onto the lake in small boats and scoop up fish in dip nets. Sometimes, several boatloads of fishermen work together to encircle a school of fish with a huge net.

Most of the fish caught in the Great Lake are processed at fishing villages in the vicinity. Processing must be done quickly, for there are no refrigerators here. Small fish are mixed with salt in wooden vats and permitted to ferment, making a

tasty, strong-smelling sauce that is eaten with rice and vegetables. Fish are also dried on huge racks in the sun. Dried fish are exported from this area to other parts of Southeast Asia. In addition, bamboo cages filled with live fish are floated down rivers to cities along the coast. There are no canneries near the Great Lake. However, a few have been established in Indonesia, Thailand, the Philippines, and some other parts of Southeast Asia.

Many fish are caught in shallow coastal waters. In addition to inland fishing waters, Southeast Asia has sea fisheries. Warm, shallow waters border many of the coasts in this region. (See map on page 98.) These waters are rich in the foods

needed by fish. Among the fish caught here are mackerel, tuna, anchovies, and different kinds of shellfish. Most of the boats used by coastal fishermen are quite small and frail-looking. Few of them go very far out to sea. Many fishermen do not even use boats. Instead, they build fish traps near the shore or wade through shallow water, catching fish in nets.

One of Southeast Asia's important sea-fishing centers is the port of Bagan Siapiapi, on the eastern coast of Sumatra. (See map on page 136.) Most of the fishermen here are Chinese. The fish brought to this port are salted, dried, or smoked. Then they are shipped to other parts of Southeast Asia.

What is being done to improve sea fishing in Southeast Asia. Several Southeast Asian countries are working to improve their sea fisheries. In Malaysia there is the Marine Fisheries School, where fishermen are taught how to use boats with motors. This school also teaches the fishermen skills that help them sail out to sea farther and more safely. Teams of Japanese fishermen have been invited to South Vietnam to teach the people better fishing methods. Shipyards in Indonesia and other Southeast Asian countries are learning to construct better fishing vessels. In these and other ways, the countries of Southeast Asia are trying to increase the supply of one of their most important foods – fish.

Fishing boats along the coast of Malaya. Fishermen catch mackerel, tuna, anchovies, and different kinds of shellfish in the warm, shallow waters that border many of Southeast Asia's coasts. Few of the fishermen take their boats very far out to sea.



Completing Paragraphs

Choose two of the topic sentences below and write a paragraph for each that expands and explains the sentence.

1. Fish is one of the most important foods in Southeast Asia.
2. The people of Southeast Asia are learning to improve their fishing methods and equipment.
3. The rainy season greatly influences fishing on the Great Lake of Cambodia.

Questions for Research

In order to answer the following questions, you will need to do additional research at the library.

1. How do the ways in which Southeast Asia's people preserve fish compare with the ways people in the United States preserve fish? (In addition to your own experience, an encyclopedia will help to answer this.)
2. Why do some of the religions followed by people in Southeast Asia discourage the eating of meat? (Make a list of important religions of Southeast Asia and use outside sources when necessary to find out the

restrictions these religions have concerning diet.)

Report Topic

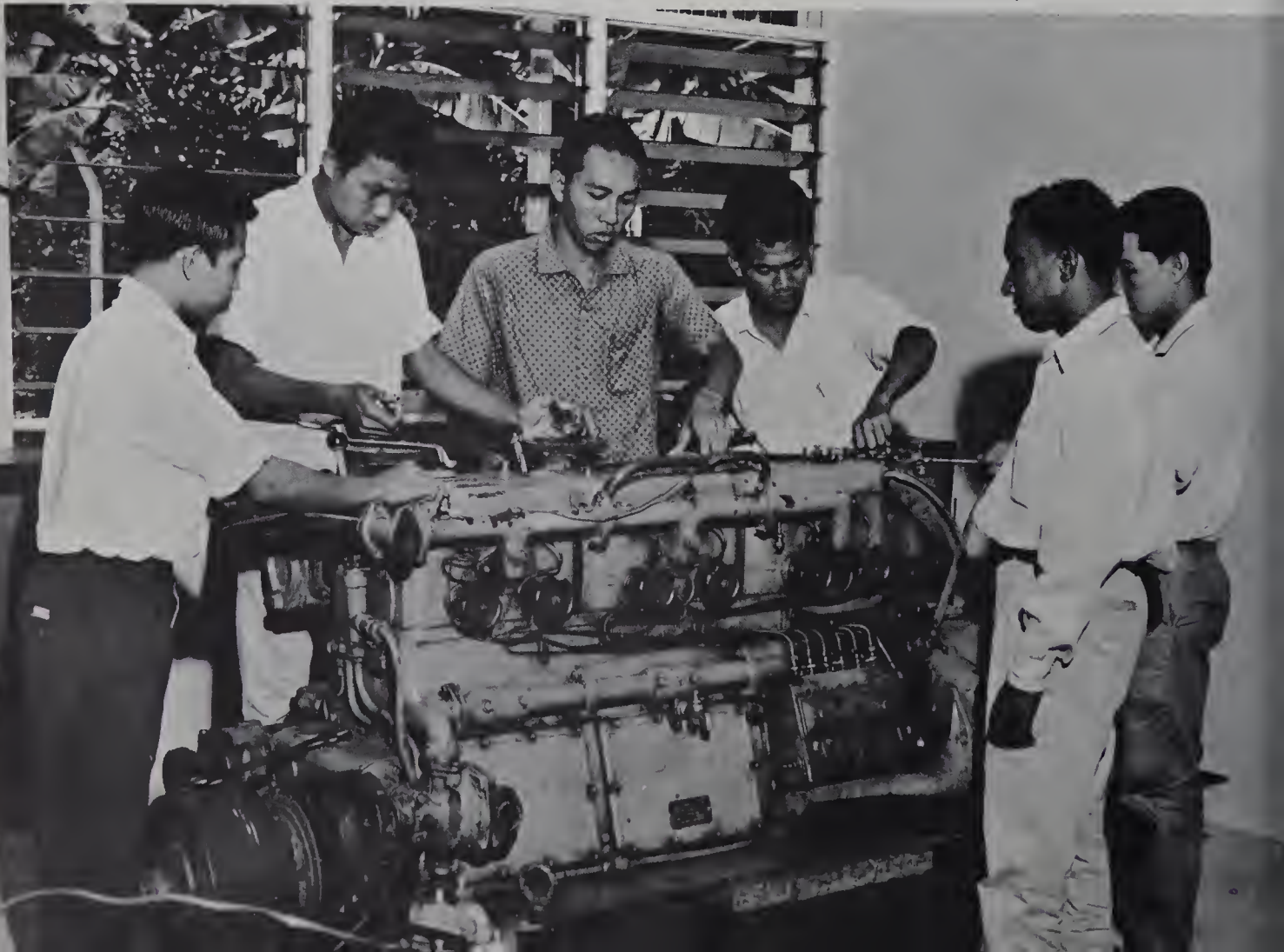
In recent years, there has been growing concern about the world's supply of fish. Using encyclopedias and several other outside sources, write a report about the possibilities of a decreasing fish supply. Wherever possible, relate your report to Southeast Asia. You may want your report to answer some of the following questions:

- a. What are some of the greatest threats to the world fish supply?
- b. In what way does modern technology threaten the world's fish supply?
- c. Where are some of the world's heavily fished areas?
- d. What are some of the ways the fish supply can be increased?

Reading Suggestions

The Sea Around Us, by Rachel Carson
The Fishes, by F. D. Ommanney and The Editors of *Life*
Fishes, by Herbert S. Zim and Hurst H. Shoemaker

Malayan fishermen at the Government Fisheries Training Center on Penang learn how to operate and care for boat machinery, and study modern fishing techniques. The countries of Southeast Asia are trying to increase their supply of fish, one of their most important foods.





Unloading rubber at Singapore. The countries of Southeast Asia depend on the export of raw materials and food to earn money for the manufactured goods they must import. In some years, world prices for Southeast Asia's exports are low, and many people here suffer hardship.

14 Natural Resources

Problems To Solve

1. **How important is Southeast Asia to the rest of the world as a supplier of raw materials?** The following questions suggest hypotheses to consider in solving this problem:

- How much of the world's production of important minerals comes from Southeast Asia?
- Are the forest resources of Southeast Asia important to the world?

2. **How important a part have Westerners**

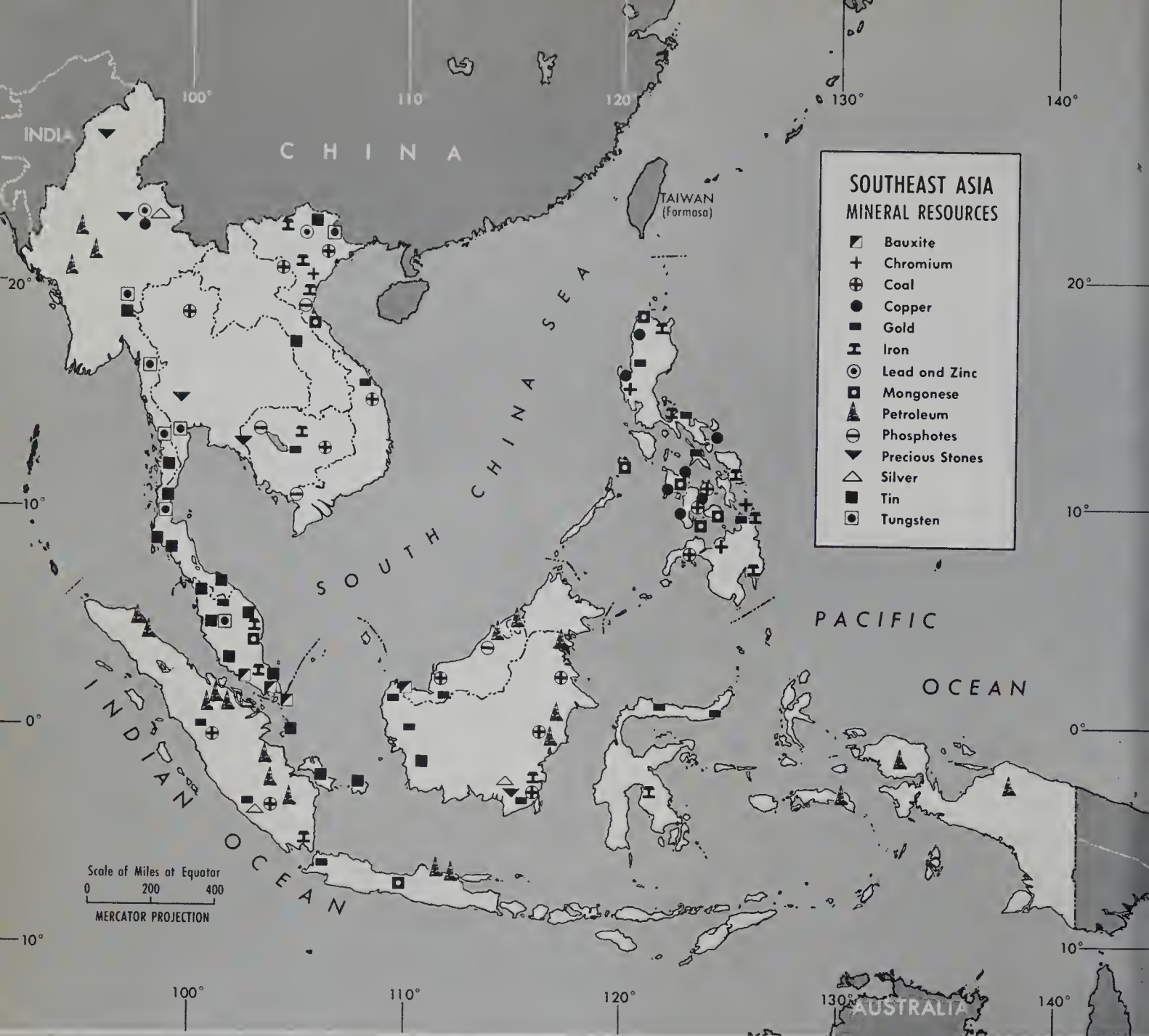
played in developing the resources of Southeast Asia? The following questions suggest hypotheses to consider in solving this problem:

- Who controls much of the modern industry in Southeast Asia?
 - Who buys most of the raw materials produced in Southeast Asia?
3. **How well have Southeast Asia's people used their resources to achieve a high standard of living?**

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Southeast Asia is a treasure-house of natural resources. More petroleum is produced in this region than in any other part of eastern Asia, and more tin is mined here

than in any other part of the world. Southeast Asia also has vast stretches of forest land, and many rivers that could be harnessed to produce hydroelectricity.



Southeast Asia has a great variety of mineral resources. The leading mineral exports of this region are tin and petroleum. Almost half the world's tin is mined here, mainly on the Malay Peninsula. The most important oil fields in eastern Asia are located in

Southeast Asia. Indonesia, Burma, and Brunei are the main oil-producing areas.

One important mineral resource that most of Southeast Asia lacks is high-grade coal. North Vietnam is the only country in this region that produces high-grade coal.

Foreigners helped to develop Southeast Asia's natural resources. The resources of Southeast Asia came to the attention of people in other parts of the world long ago. (See Chapter 10.) Western nations, anx-

ious to obtain the products of this region, gradually gained control of all the countries here except Thailand. Westerners established large mines and plantations in these countries. They hired many laborers

from China and India, for people in most parts of Southeast Asia did not want to leave their farms to take jobs in mines or on plantations. Many of the Chinese laborers saved their money and started farms, mines, or businesses of their own.

Today, most of Southeast Asia has become independent, but the new nations in this region generally do not have the money or the skilled workers to run many of the industries that have been started by foreigners. Europeans, Americans, and Chinese still control many mines, plantations, and businesses in Southeast Asia.

Southeast Asia is economically dependent on foreigners in another way. The outsiders who helped to develop its resources generally considered this region to be a supplier of raw materials and food for other parts of the world. Therefore, they established processing plants to prepare

minerals and agricultural products for export instead of factories to produce manufactured goods for the people of Southeast Asia. Today, Southeast Asia does not have enough factories that produce goods needed by the people and must import large amounts of manufactured goods. To pay for these imports, Southeast Asia exports large quantities of raw materials. In some years, world prices for the raw materials that Southeast Asia exports fall very low. When this happens, people in Southeast Asia who have jobs in tin mining or in other industries that produce or prepare goods for export earn less money than usual.

Most Southeast Asian countries are trying to overcome their economic dependence on the outside world by diversifying their economies. One way they are trying to do this is by establishing more factories.

Processing rubber in South Vietnam. Many of the plantations, mines, and businesses in Southeast Asia are controlled by foreigners and produce goods largely for export.



This will enable them to produce more of the goods they now import. It also will provide new employment opportunities for people who now earn their living

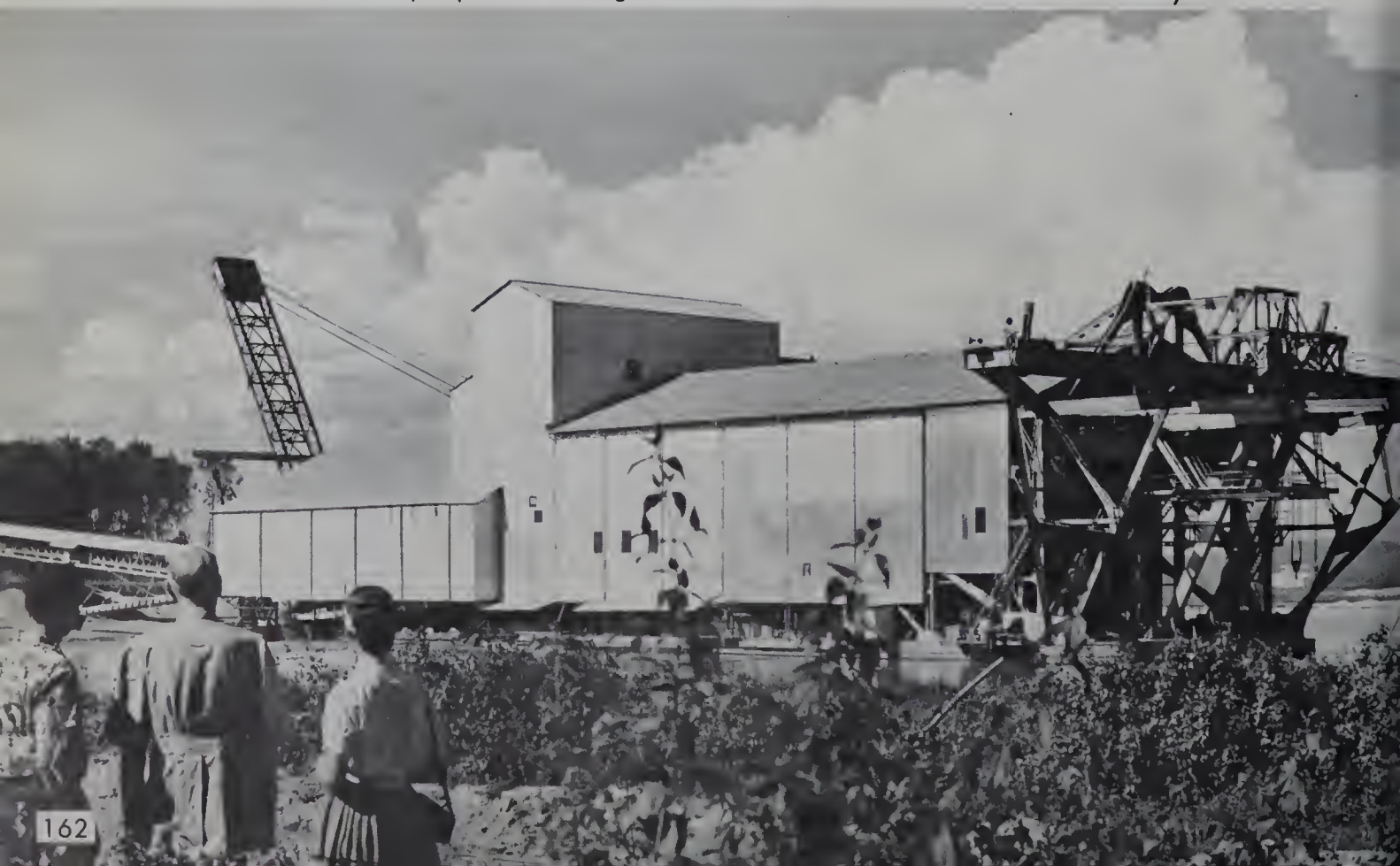
producing or preparing goods for export. At present, however, the countries of Southeast Asia are still heavily dependent on the export of raw materials.

Mineral Resources

Southeast Asia is the world's leading source of tin. Almost half of the world's tin is mined in Southeast Asia. The leading producer in this region is Malaya. However, Indonesia, Burma, Thailand, North Vietnam, and Laos also have tin mines. (See map on page 160.) Some of the tin ore mined in Southeast Asia is taken to smelters in Malaya, Singapore, or Bangka in Indonesia. There it is processed to make bars of tin, which are sent to factories in other countries that manufacture cans and other tin products. Most of the remaining ore is shipped to smelters in Europe or the United States.

Tin is mined in various ways in Southeast Asia. A tour of the mining areas of Malaya, the leading tin producer, will acquaint you with several methods. In a few mining areas there are dry tin mines, where power shovels dig into hillsides that are rich in tin ore. Where rivers have washed tin-bearing dirt down from the hills and deposited it in lower areas, other mining methods are used. Sometimes these alluvial tin deposits are flooded artificially, and tin is mined with dredges like the one pictured below. Buckets on these dredges scoop up dirt and sand that contain tin ore. Inside the dredges, this

A floating tin dredge in Malaya. Southeast Asia is the world's leading source of tin. The most important producer in this region is Malaya. About half of Malaya's tin is mined with dredges that scoop up tin-bearing mud from land that has been artificially flooded.





Powerful streams of water are used in some tin mines in Malaya to wash down dirt that contains tin ore. The mud is then pumped into troughs, where the tin is separated from the waste materials. This type of mining operation is often owned and operated by Chinese people.

alluvium is passed through machines that separate the ore from the waste materials. About half the tin produced in Malaya is mined with dredges like these. Most of them are owned by European companies. Powerful streams of water like those pictured above also are used to obtain ore from alluvial tin deposits. The alluvium that these streams of water wash down is pumped into long troughs, where the ore is separated from the waste materials. This type of mining operation is frequently owned and operated by Chinese people. The third method of obtaining ore from alluvial deposits is pictured at the right. According to law, only women may use this method in Malaya.

Women use wooden bowls to pan for tin in Malaya. About 2 percent of Malaya's tin is produced by this simple method.





An oil field in Brunei. Southeast Asia is the most important oil-producing area in the eastern part of Asia. Most of the oil produced here comes from Indonesia, Burma, and Brunei.

Southeast Asia is the main petroleum-producing region in the eastern part of Asia. Southeast Asia's second important mineral resource is petroleum. Together, Indonesia, Burma, and the British protectorate of Brunei produce about 2 percent of the world's oil. This figure may not seem impressive. However, when you consider that little petroleum is now produced in the rest of eastern Asia, the importance of Southeast Asia's oil fields becomes apparent. Each year, more and more people in Southeast Asia are using oil products as cooking fuel and for other purposes. Tankers transport oil from this region to Japan, Australia, and other countries.

Southeast Asia produces bauxite and other valuable minerals. The map on page 160 shows some of the other minerals pro-

duced in Southeast Asia. Bauxite, mined in Indonesia and Malaysia, is the main source of aluminum. Iron ore is found in the Philippines, North Vietnam, and other parts of Southeast Asia. The Philippines is among the world's five leading producers of chromite, which contains chromium, a metal used in making steel and for plating automobile parts. Lead, manganese, phosphates, gold, and sapphires are among the many other minerals found in Southeast Asia. Almost all of the mineral products of this region are exported. Many are shipped to Japan and the United States.

Southeast Asia does not have enough high-grade coal. One resource that most of Southeast Asia lacks is good-quality coal. Without this fuel it is difficult to establish modern industry. North Vietnam is the

only part of Southeast Asia that produces high-grade coal. Some of the low-grade coal mined in other parts of this region is used as fuel in steam locomotives. Electric power plants here also use low-grade coal to heat water for running steam-powered

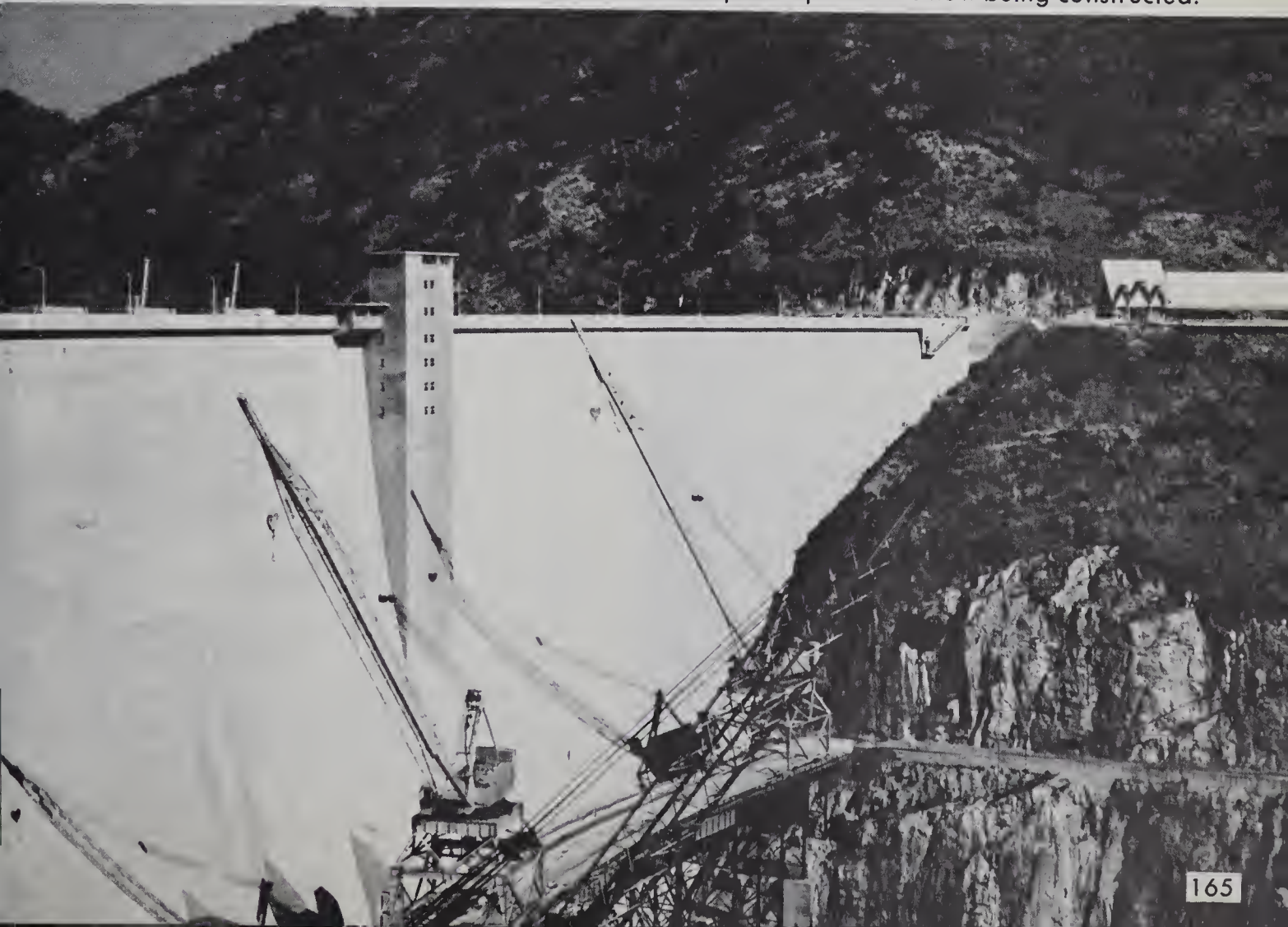
electric generators. In the large cities there are many small electric plants in which the generators are run by diesel engines. However, Southeast Asia needs much more electricity than all these plants together now produce.

Waterpower

Waterpower is an important natural resource of Southeast Asia. Although Southeast Asia does not have enough high-grade coal, it does have vast supplies of waterpower. Many rivers flow through this rainy, mountainous region. If more dams and power plants were built on these rivers, the people could have the electricity they need. Little of this waterpower has been utilized so far, however.

Almost every Southeast Asian country has plans to make better use of its waterpower. A huge dam has been constructed on the Ping River in Thailand. The World Bank loaned most of the money for this dam. Another hydroelectric project, being developed at Asahan Falls in northern Sumatra, could double Indonesia's supply of electricity. Among the other new projects are the Maria Cristina plant in the

Yanhee Dam in Thailand. The rainy, mountainous region of Southeast Asia has many rivers that could be used to provide the electricity needed by the people of this region. Little of this waterpower has been utilized so far, but some dams and power plants are now being constructed.



Philippines and the Cameron Highlands power project in Malaya.

Rivers can also be used to furnish water for crops. The dams that are being built on rivers in some Southeast Asian countries

will hold back water to be used for irrigation during the dry season. This will help farmers increase food production. The dams will also help to protect the land from floods during the rainy season.

Forest Resources

Forests are another important natural resource of Southeast Asia. Forests cover about 60 percent of the land in Southeast Asia. Like the waterpower in this region, the forests are not used as fully as they could be. One reason is that many different kinds of trees often grow in one area. It is difficult to reach the valuable trees and remove them from the forests. In forested areas that do not have navigable rivers, lack of transportation is another problem. The mountains and marshes of

Forests in Thailand. About 60 percent of the land in Southeast Asia is forested. These forest resources are not yet fully utilized.

Southeast Asia handicap road and railroad construction. (See Chapter 16.)

In spite of these problems, Southeast Asia's forests are important. They provide the people with wood for fuel, for building houses and furniture, and for many other useful things. Some forest products are exported to other countries.

The forests of Southeast Asia differ from place to place, for the amount of rainfall and the distance above sea level are not the same everywhere. These different forests are discussed in the following paragraphs.

The tropical rainforests. In parts of Southeast Asia where it rains all year round there are tropical rainforests. These are found in lowland areas, and on mountain slopes that are less than four thousand feet above sea level. The trees that grow here are tall, and remain green throughout the year. Their leafy branches form a roof through which the sun can scarcely shine. High in this green roof are climbing vines and wild orchids.

Many different kinds of trees grow in the tropical rainforests. Among these are the valuable Philippine mahogany trees. Wood from these trees is exported to Japan and other countries.

The monsoon forests. In Burma, Thailand, and other parts of Southeast Asia that have a dry season, there are monsoon forests. They are more open than the rainforests, and some sunlight can shine down





Teakwood is one of Southeast Asia's main forest exports. It is obtained from the monsoon forests of Thailand, Burma, and other parts of Southeast Asia that have a dry season. Lumbermen often use elephants to drag teak logs from the forests to streams.

between the trees. Most of the trees that grow here lose their leaves during the dry season. It is easier to obtain lumber from the monsoon forests than from the rainforests, for here valuable trees sometimes grow in groups.

On hillsides in the monsoon forests are large groups of teak trees. Sometimes these grow to be 150 feet tall, with leaves that are two feet long. Their strong, durable wood is good for building ships and making furniture. Elephants are often used to drag teak logs through the forests to streams. From there, the logs are floated

to sawmills in Rangoon or other cities. Teak is one of the main forest products that Southeast Asia exports.

Mountain forests. On mountain slopes above the rainforests and monsoon forests are oaks, chestnuts, and other trees like those found in temperate climates. Pines sometimes grow on the higher slopes. Paper mills have been built in Indonesia to use the wood from the pine forests of northern Sumatra.

Coastal forests. There are different types of forests along the coasts of Southeast Asia. On sandy, well-drained beaches,

coconut palms are a common sight. As Chapter 12 pointed out, coconut meat is dried and exported in large quantities from Southeast Asia. On swampy beaches where the tide washes in and out are forests of mangrove trees, which send down roots from their branches. Mangrove forests are an important source of firewood and of wood for charcoal. Above the high-tide line, nipa palms are common. Their feathery-looking leaves are used to make thatched roofs and baskets.

Other forest products. The countries of Southeast Asia export other forest products besides lumber and copra. Vinelike climbing plants in the tropical rainforests provide a woody material called rattan,

which is used in making baskets, furniture, and umbrella handles. Other forest products are gums and resins that are used in making chewing gum, varnish, soap, and medicines. Wood to be used for making incense is also gathered in the forests of Southeast Asia.

One of the most interesting and useful forest products of Southeast Asia is bamboo. This large, treelike plant belongs to the grass family. It often grows wild in places where forest fires have destroyed trees. Farmers also grow clumps of bamboo near their houses. The hollow stems of some types of bamboo grow to be eight inches across. Bamboo is an important building material in Southeast Asia.

Nipa palms grow near the coast, above the high-tide line. Their leaves are used to make baskets and thatched roofs. In swampy coastal areas where the tide washes in and out are forests of mangrove trees. Groves of coconut trees also grow along the coasts of Southeast Asia.





A bamboo grove in South Vietnam. Bamboo grows wild in many places in Southeast Asia. Farmers also grow clumps of this treelike plant near their houses. The hollow stems of bamboo plants are used as pipes, as a building material, and for many other purposes.

Learning From Maps

Name the countries on the map on page 160. (Use the map on pages 90 and 91 as a guide.)

With the help of the map and key box on page 160, list the following:

1. the different minerals found in the Philippines
2. the countries of Southeast Asia that have petroleum deposits
3. the main mineral resource of the Malay Peninsula

Write a Report

Make a written report that tells the ways in which Southeast Asia's forests are important to the people. You will need to do outside research to find out the important part forests play in preventing floods and soil erosion.

Statements To Prove

Use as many facts as possible from the chapter

to prove each of the following statements:

1. Southeast Asia has a vast supply of natural resources.
2. Southeast Asia is economically dependent on foreigners.
3. By establishing new factories, Southeast Asian countries are taking a step to overcome their economic dependence on other nations.
4. In Malaya, the method used to mine tin often depends on the group doing the mining.
5. The dams being built and planned in Southeast Asian countries will be a tremendous aid in the development of these countries.
6. Serious handicaps have prevented Southeast Asians from fully utilizing their forest resources.
7. The land features and the climate of Southeast Asia help to determine the types of forests that are found here.



Handmade articles on sale at a market in the Philippines. Southeast Asia is an underdeveloped region with very little modern industry. Many of the household articles and farming tools used by the people here are made by hand.

15 Crafts and Industry

Problems To Solve

1. Southeast Asia has very little modern industry. **Why is it difficult to establish modern industries in this region?** In forming hypotheses about this problem, you will want to consider how industry in Southeast Asia is influenced by the following:
 - a. the former colonial status of most
 - b. of this region
 - c. the people who live in this region
 - d. the raw materials that are available in this region
 - e. the amount of capital available in this region
2. **Why are handicrafts of such great importance in Southeast Asia?**

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Handicrafts are important in Southeast Asia. Many of the household articles and tools used in Southeast Asia are made by hand. Village people often make things they need at home. They do so from necessity, for most of them are subsistence farmers who earn too little money to buy everything they need. Craftsmen in small workshops also make handicraft products to be sold.

Craftsmen in Southeast Asia produce a great variety of articles. Carpenters make farm tools, and metalworkers hammer designs on handmade dishes of copper, aluminum, silver, or gold. Fishnets, fish traps, brooms, wooden spoons, hats, baskets, and mats also are made by hand.

A special study of the way Malayan villagers make the mats they use for sleeping illustrates the time and care that are put into Southeast Asia's handicrafts. The mats are made from the leaves of the pandan tree, which grows near many of the rice fields in Malaya. After the leaves are selected, they are cut into strips, soaked in water, and dried. Next, the strips are dyed various colors. These colored strips are then woven to form a mat that has an attractive design.

The making of batik offers another example of the patience required by Southeast Asian craftsmen. First, the outline of a batik design is drawn by hand. Next, all parts of the design except those to be dyed

Weaving a floor mat in South Vietnam. People in almost every part of Southeast Asia weave beautiful mats and baskets out of leaves, grasses, or other natural materials.



one special color, such as blue, are covered with hot, melted wax. This wax coating protects the rest of the pattern when the cloth is dipped into blue dye. After the blue parts of the design have dried, they are covered with wax, too. Then the wax coating on the sections of the design that are to be dyed another color is scratched off, and the cloth is dipped into dye again. This process is repeated several times until the desired colors have been added.

Although labor is very cheap in Southeast Asia, certain handicrafts cannot compete in price with manufactured goods. For this reason, some handicrafts such

as handweaving and the making of batik are becoming less common. The use of manufactured cloth, scissors, needles, and simple tools is growing. City people buy more manufactured goods than villagers, however, for they usually have more money. A large proportion of the manufactured goods sold both in the cities and villages is imported.

Southeast Asia has little modern industry. The countries of Southeast Asia have to import many machine-made goods because there are few factories in the countries of this region. Very little modern

Making batik on the island of Java. Many different processes are required to produce this beautiful material, which is made in Indonesia and some other parts of Asia.





The factories of Southeast Asia are located mainly in the large cities. Food processing is the main branch of manufacturing in this region. Another important branch is the preparation of raw materials for export.

The countries of Southeast Asia do not produce all the manufactured goods they need. Large quantities of machine-made goods are imported. Craftsmen also make many useful and beautiful articles by hand.

industry was developed in these countries before they gained independence. More is now being established, and today there are some large, modern factories in the cities. However, in most countries of Southeast Asia less than 3 percent of the workers are employed in factories that are equipped

with machinery. Only in Singapore and parts of Malaysia do a larger proportion of the people earn their living in modern industry.

It is difficult to establish modern industry in the countries of Southeast Asia. These countries usually do not have



Making shoes in Indonesia. Many articles are manufactured in small workshops in Southeast Asia. Since there are still not enough factories to produce all the machine-made items needed by the people of this region, large quantities of manufactured goods are imported.

enough money to pay for buildings and equipment. They lack trained factory managers and skilled workers, and they need more electricity to run machines. Most of them also lack important raw materials that are needed for industry, such as high-grade coal. In addition, they have too few roads, railroads, trucks, and freight cars to transport goods to and from factories.

Southeast Asian countries are trying to establish more industry. The governments of countries in Southeast Asia are encouraging industry. They try to plan the progress their countries should make to help industry to develop. In these plans they decide where new electric power plants are to be built and what improvements

are to be made in transportation. In addition, the governments of some countries, such as Indonesia, plan and manage many of the new factories.

Private businessmen are also establishing factories in Southeast Asia. Private industry is especially important in the Philippines, Malaysia, and Singapore.

The countries of Southeast Asia are receiving much aid in their efforts to industrialize. The United Nations, the World Bank, the Ford Foundation, and the Colombo Plan are providing money or other forms of assistance. The governments of Britain, the United States, France, Communist China, the Soviet Union, and other countries are helping, too. Arrangements have also been made

with foreign businessmen to build some of the new factories in Southeast Asian countries, and to manage them until the people here learn how to operate them.

The food-processing industry. The most important industry that the countries of Southeast Asia now have is the preparation of agricultural products for people to eat. Removing the husks from rice is the main type of food processing. Most Southeast Asian countries have more rice mills than any other type of mill or factory. Some of the mills are small sheds made of corrugated iron, while others are large buildings with modern machinery. Southeast Asia also has sugar mills, bakeries, and soft-drink bottling plants. In addition, there are a few modern fish canneries, as well as smaller establishments where fish are dried or made into sauce.



A cement plant in Manila. Most of the modern industry in Southeast Asia has developed in the large cities.

A rice mill in Thailand. Food processing is the most important industry in Southeast Asia. Most Southeast Asian countries have more rice mills than any other type of mill or factory.



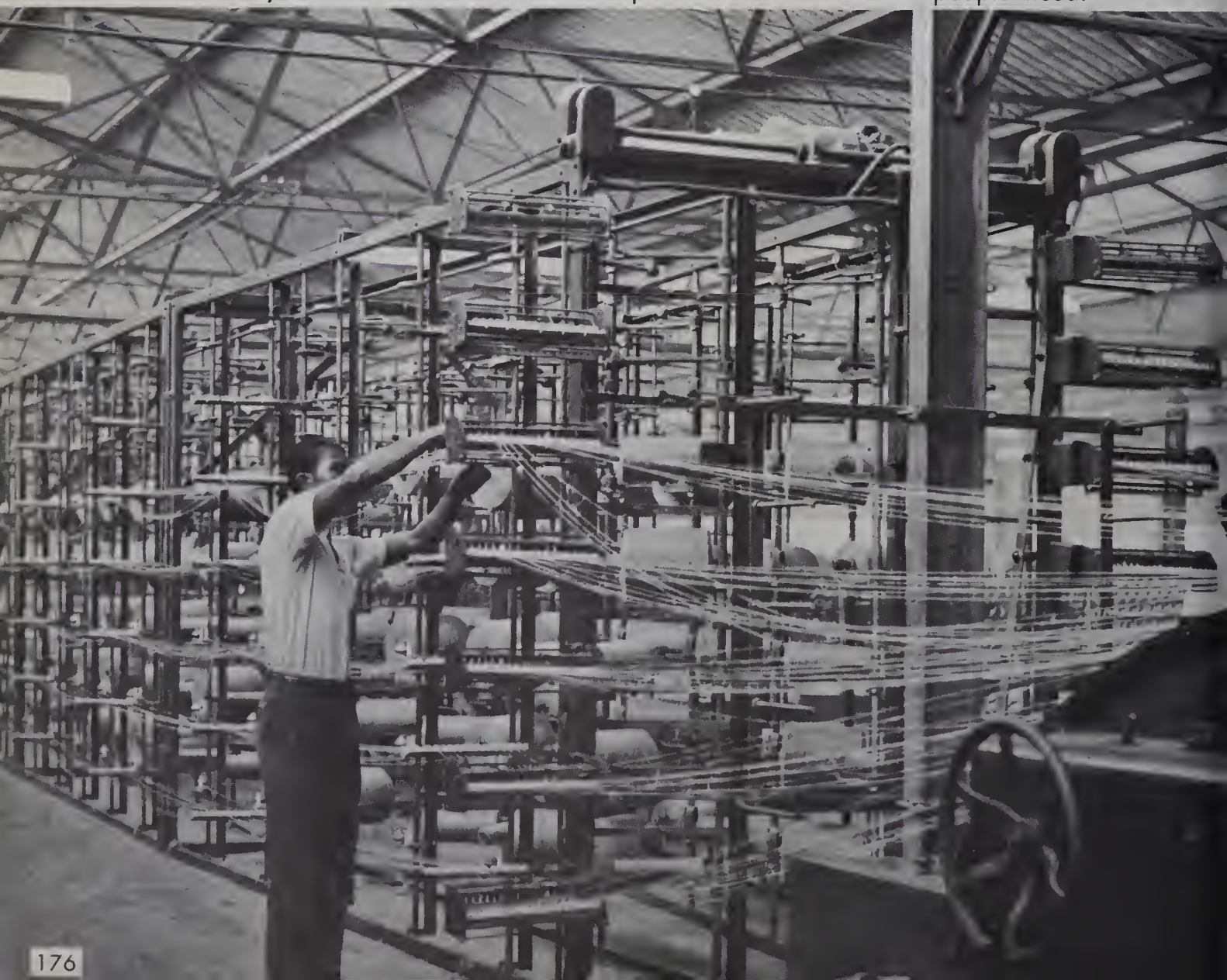
Preparing raw materials for export. Another important branch of industry in Southeast Asia is the preparation of raw materials for sale to other countries. Some of the laborers employed in this branch of industry work in tin smelters or petroleum refineries. Others are employed in saw-mills. Still others work on plantations, preparing rubber, copra, tea, or other agricultural products for export.

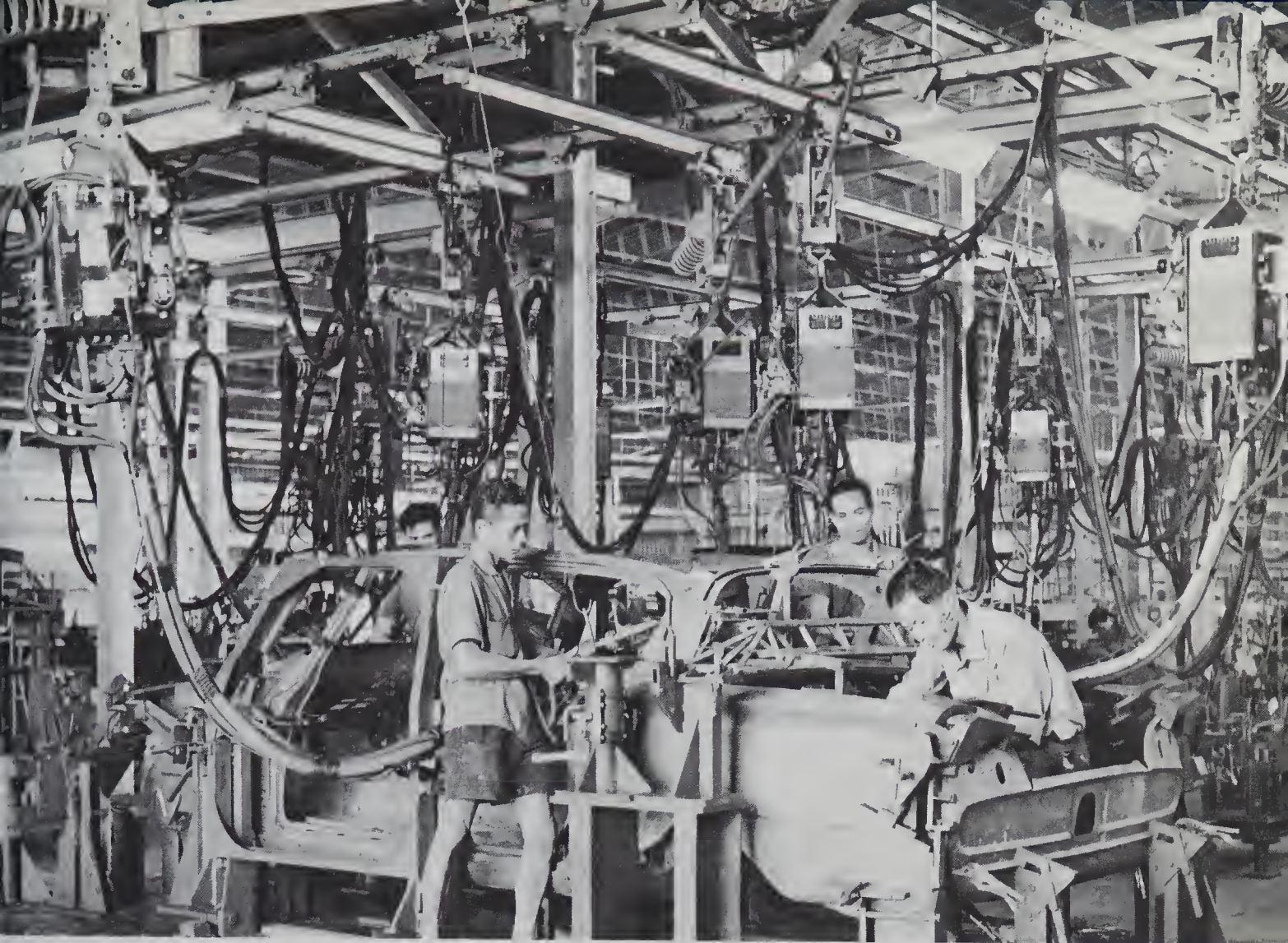
Increasing amounts of the raw materials processed in Southeast Asia are being used in this region. For example, factories have been established to make rubber footwear from local rubber supplies. As page 161 explains, however, the

countries of Southeast Asia are still economically dependent on the export of raw materials.

The textile industry. Another branch of industry in Southeast Asia is the manufacture of textiles. Some textile workers in this region weave beautiful fabrics on handlooms in their homes. Others are employed in mills equipped with power-driven machinery. These mills are usually located in the larger cities. Textiles are among the main imports of the countries of Southeast Asia, however, for the people here need much more cloth than they can now produce. Raw cotton for the manufacture of textiles is imported, also.

A textile factory in Thailand. Some of the fabrics produced in Southeast Asia are woven by hand, and others are made by machinery. The countries in this region need many more modern textile mills to provide all the cloth the people need.





In an assembly plant in Thailand, workers use imported parts to put together an automobile. In addition to assembly plants, Southeast Asia has machine-repair shops, factories that produce small metal articles such as nails, and several small steel mills.

The metal industry. Some of Southeast Asia's workers earn their living in the metal industry. Many of these people are employed in small workshops where jewelry and other articles are made by hand. Others run machines in small factories that produce metal goods such as nails, and pots and pans. Some work in assembly plants putting together the parts of cars, bicycles, trucks, or buses that were imported from foreign countries. Still others are employed in machine shops repairing equipment used in mines, plantations, railroads, or harbors. Several small steel mills have also been established in Southeast Asia, and more are planned.

Other industries. There are other types of workshops and factories in Southeast

Asia. Some of the largest plants in this region produce cement for buildings and roads. Others make tiles and bricks, or manufacture such products as shoes, soap, matches, or rubber tires.

Many observers feel that the growth of industry will help raise the standard of living in Southeast Asia. If the right factories are built and are efficiently run, they should provide people with more of the goods they need and want. Employment opportunities for the people in this region should increase also. It would be a loss to the world, however, if the establishment of modern industry discouraged the fine craftsmen in Southeast Asia from producing beautiful batiks and other lovely handmade articles.

Terms To Understand

Do research on the following terms, and write a brief paragraph explaining each.

Colombo Plan	subsistence farmers
World Bank	standard of living

Explaining Statements

Tell why each of the following statements is true.

1. The countries of Southeast Asia have to import many manufactured goods.
2. City people in Southeast Asia generally buy more machine-made goods than villagers.
3. Light industry and the processing of raw materials are more important than heavy industry in Southeast Asia.

Writing an Essay

One of the reasons some observers give for Southeast Asia's slow economic development is

the fact that most of this area was formerly under colonial rule. However, the United States and Canada also were colonial areas at one time. Write an essay that explores the following subject:

How seriously is an area handicapped by colonial rule?

Chapters 7 and 10 contain information that will be useful in preparing this report.

Class Debate

Hold a class debate on the following topic:

Modern factories should be established in Southeast Asian countries even at the expense of discouraging craftsmen who specialize in fine handmade articles.

Both sides will need to consider whether the growth of industry is the only way to improve the standard of living in an underdeveloped country.

A peddler in Singapore. In addition to handmade articles, Southeast Asia's people use some machine-made goods. People who live in cities can generally afford to buy more manufactured products than people who live in farming villages.





Boats on the Irrawaddy River, in Burma. In many parts of Southeast Asia, waterways take the place of roads and railroads. Steamers and other boats can travel for long distances on some of the great rivers of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, such as the Irrawaddy.

16 Transportation and Communication

Problems To Solve

1. **Why is water travel so important in the countries of Southeast Asia?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how the importance of water travel in Southeast Asia is affected by the following:
 - a. the climate of this region
 - b. land transportation facilities available to the people
 - c. the amount of money available to improve transportation facilities
2. **How would better transportation systems help the people of Southeast Asia?** In solving this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about how improved transportation would help the following:
 - a. farming in Southeast Asia
 - b. industry in Southeast Asia

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.



A canal in Bangkok. On some of the waterways in this city there are floating markets, where housewives may buy vegetables and other goods. Small, flat-bottomed boats much like those in Bangkok are used on many of the smaller streams and canals of Southeast Asia.

Water travel. Waterways take the place of roads and railroads in many parts of Southeast Asia. On the Indo-Chinese Peninsula there are several great rivers on which boats can travel for long distances. Branching off these main water routes are many smaller waterways, which are also navigable. Most of the rivers in the Philippines, Indonesia, and the Malay Peninsula can be used only by small, flat-bottomed

boats because of sandbars and rapids. However, in these areas, ships transport goods and passengers along the coasts or between islands.

For a case study of water transportation in Southeast Asia, let us examine Burma's main water highway, the Irrawaddy River, and its main port city, Rangoon. Like the other large port cities of Southeast Asia, Rangoon is a collection

and distribution station for goods coming in and going out of the country. Small boats from many parts of Burma bring rice, lumber, minerals, and other products for export to this port. Foreign freighters carrying cargoes of manufactured goods such as cloth, newsprint, and electric generators also dock here. In the bustling port city of Rangoon, these goods are exchanged. When the freighters leave the harbor, they carry in their holds the raw materials exported by Burma. The small boats that leave Rangoon carry to many parts of the country the manufactured products that Burma buys from other countries.

The main inland water highway along which smaller boats travel to and from Rangoon is the great Irrawaddy River. (See map on page 90.) A great variety of vessels use this waterway. Among them are diesel-powered boats and paddle-wheeled steamers. Most of the boats on the Irrawaddy, however, are propelled by sails, oars, or poles.

Like the other waterways of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, the Irrawaddy is affected by the pattern of rainfall here. During the dry season, steamboats can travel inland as far as the river port of Bhamo, which is located nearly nine hundred miles upstream. When the rains come, however,

The harbor at Rangoon. Almost every country in Southeast Asia has at least one important port city, to which oceangoing ships bring manufactured goods from other parts of the world. These ships carry away products such as rice, lumber, and minerals.





Road builders in Thailand. Many of Southeast Asia's roads are unpaved and cannot be used during the rainy season.

and the river rises, they can travel more than a hundred miles farther inland.

In the flat delta of the Irrawaddy, the river divides into branches. One of these is connected by a canal to the port of Rangoon. A traveler on this canal would notice that the delta is crisscrossed by many smaller waterways. Small, flat-bottomed boats loaded with rice from the delta farms travel along these waterways to Rangoon.

Roads and streets. A study of the road systems of Southeast Asia partially explains why water travel is so important in this region. Some areas in Southeast Asia have no roads at all. People who live in these isolated areas have to travel on foot unless there is a waterway nearby. Many of the roads that Southeast Asia does have are not paved and cannot be used during the rainy season.

Main roads of Southeast Asia. This region does not have enough good roads and highways, partly because the countries here lack the money and the trained engineers required for road building. Also, the geography of Southeast Asia makes it very difficult to construct roads.





An oxcart in Cambodia. Although Southeast Asia has many modern transportation services, wooden carts pulled by animals still provide one of the most dependable ways of carrying heavy loads. Such carts are especially useful in areas where there are no paved roads.

There are several reasons why Southeast Asia does not have more good roads. The nations in this region do not have enough money to build all the roads they need. Generally they do not have enough engineers, either. Geographic conditions also cause problems. It is difficult to build roads in many places, for there are steep mountains, and lowlands that are flooded during the rainy season. There are also numerous rivers over which bridges must be built. In addition, fast-growing vegeta-

tion makes it difficult to build roads and keep them in good repair.

For our study of road conditions and traffic in Southeast Asia, let us focus our attention on one of the main roads leading into Bangkok, the capital and largest city in Thailand. This paved thoroughfare is two lanes wide. Branching off it are narrow, unpaved side roads that lead back to farming villages. During the dry season, considerable traffic turns on and off the main road. Ox carts bring agricultural

products from the villages to markets in the city. Trucks and heavily loaded buses also travel between the capital and these outlying areas. When the rains come, however, many of the side roads become too muddy to use, and the traffic on the main highway is consequently much lighter.

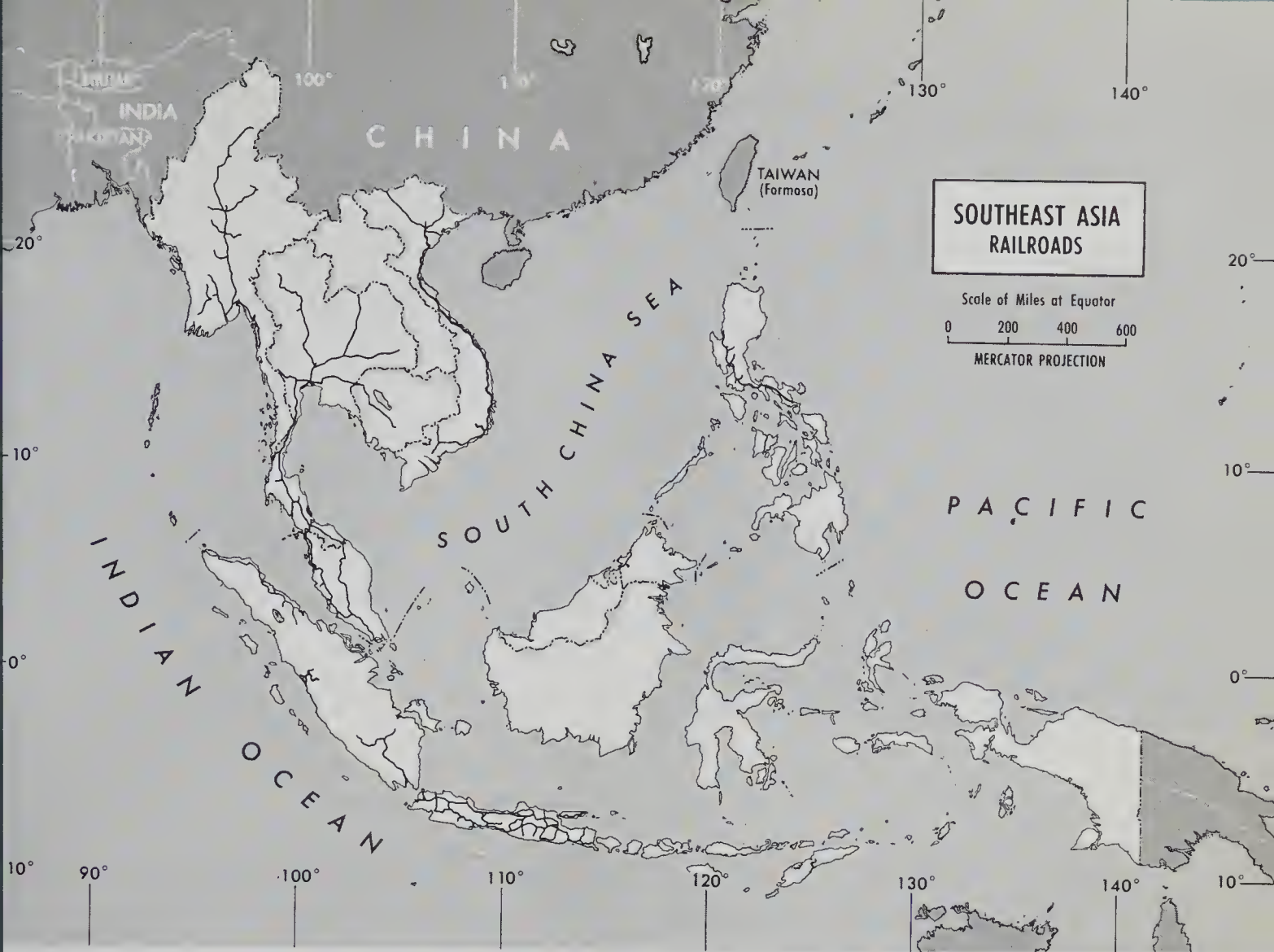
The traveler who follows the main highway into Bangkok soon finds himself in a busy stream of traffic. In the center of the city are wide, paved avenues, traversed by trucks, automobiles, and crowded trolley cars. Weaving through this heavy traffic

are people riding bicycles or motor scooters. Among the more colorful vehicles in the city are oxcarts and pedicabs. The latter look somewhat like bicycles, with passenger seats attached.

Railroads. The same factors that make it difficult to build roads in Southeast Asia also make it difficult to build railroads. Laos has none at all. In the rest of Southeast Asia, most of the railroads lead from the main cities through the densely populated coastal lowlands and river plains.

A street in Bangkok. Downtown streets in Southeast Asian cities are usually crowded with vehicles such as cars, trucks, trolleys, and bicycles. Three-wheeled pedicabs are used as taxis in Bangkok and other cities. Many people, however, walk to their destinations.





Southeast Asia's railroads. Most of the railroad lines in Southeast Asia lead from the main cities through the thickly populated lowlands. The island of Java has the densest rail network.

The densest rail network is on the island of Java. (See map above.)

Most countries of Southeast Asia are trying to improve their railroads. More and more diesel-electric locomotives are being used, although locomotives that burn wood or coal are still in use. There are some air-conditioned coaches, but the fare for riding in these is expensive. Most Southeast Asian people must travel in older cars that are noisy, crowded, and usually hot.

It is important for the countries of Southeast Asia to build more railroads and roads. Until they do, farmers in many parts of this region will not be able to get their produce to market. Improved transportation is also needed in order for industry to develop further.

A train in Thailand. Many countries in Southeast Asia are trying to improve their railroads by replacing old, worn-out equipment.



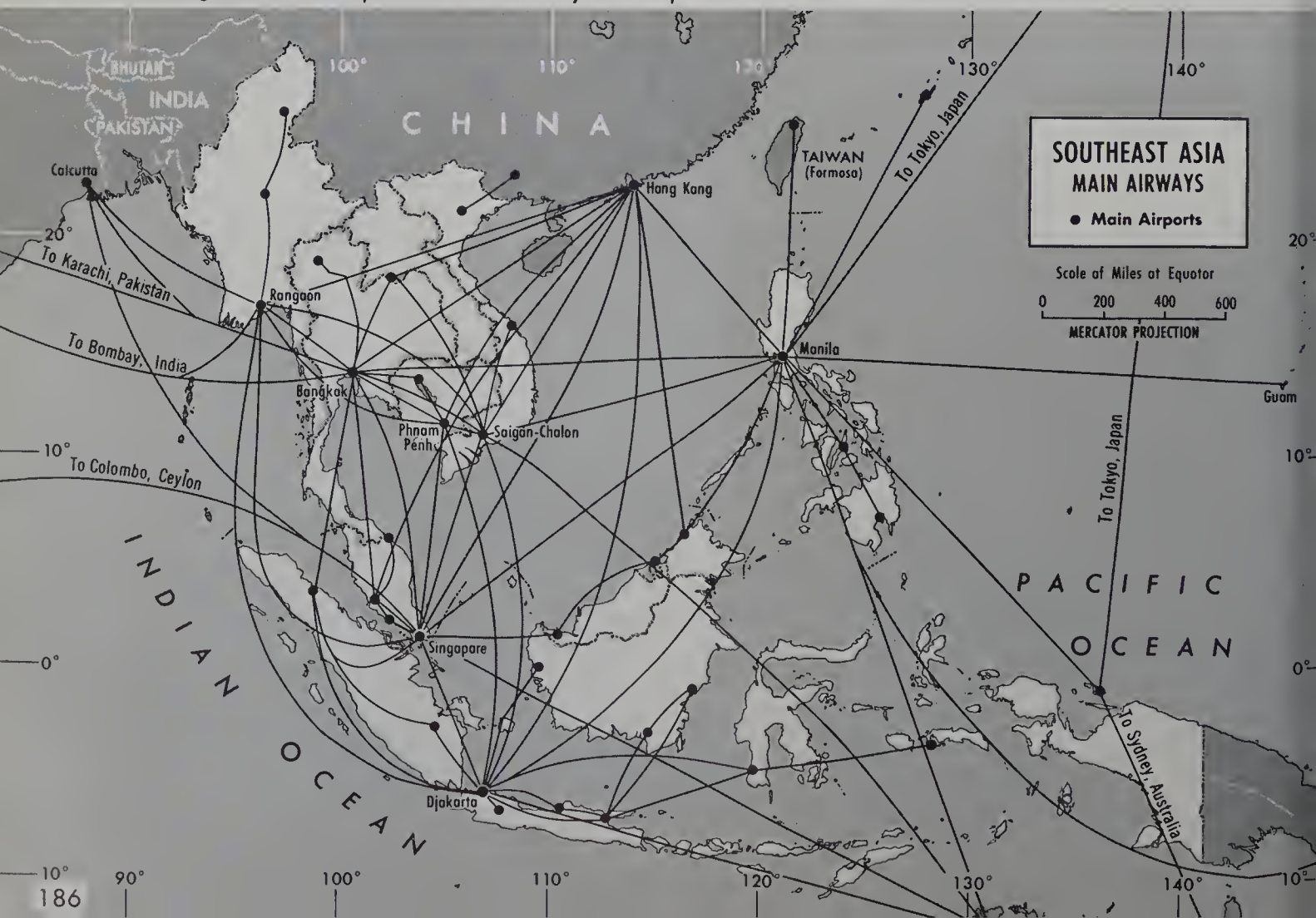


Bangkok airport. On several international air routes, Bangkok is exactly halfway around the world from New York City.

Air travel. Air travel is useful in a region such as Southeast Asia where other kinds of transportation are usually poor. Every country in Southeast Asia has its own airline, with planes that fly to most of the important cities. However, very few people can afford to use these airlines.

Planes from many parts of the world stop in Southeast Asia's large cities on their flights to and from Europe, Australia, North America, and other parts of Asia. Bangkok is Southeast Asia's most important center of international air traffic. On several international air routes it is exactly halfway around the world from New York City. Bangkok and other important cities such as Singapore, Manila, Djakarta, and Phnom Penh have airports that are large enough for jet planes to land and take off safely.

Air routes in Southeast Asia. All the countries in Southeast Asia have their own airlines. Also, the main cities in this region are included on the international flight routes of planes from many other parts of the world.





Unloading sacks of mail in Singapore. Every country in Southeast Asia has postal service, although mail in remote areas sometimes travels slowly. News may be spread more rapidly by radio, or by people talking to each other in the marketplace.

Communications. In all the large cities of Southeast Asia, and in many of the smaller ones, there are radios, telephones, and newspapers. A few cities also have television stations. Most village people do not have radios of their own. However, many community gathering places, such as a village meeting hall, have radios to which people may listen. Radio loudspeakers are set up in some villages, also.

Many of the cities and large towns of Southeast Asia have facilities for sending and receiving telegrams and cables. Postal service is provided throughout this region, but in remote areas letters may take a long time to be delivered. Although increasing numbers of people can read and write, news often travels fastest by radio and by people talking to each other in the marketplace.

Facts To Review

1. Why is water travel so important in Southeast Asia?
2. Why doesn't Southeast Asia have a better system of roads?
3. Why is a better system of transportation needed in Southeast Asia?
4. What are some of the most common methods of communication in Southeast Asia?

Making a Poster

Make a poster showing various kinds of transportation used in Southeast Asian countries. Include the most primitive means as well as the most modern types of transportation.

Ideas for an Essay

In Burma, many of the boats that sail along the Irrawaddy River belong to the Inland

Water Transport Board, which is owned by the government. Find out if the transportation systems in our country are in any way controlled by the government, and whether they are government controlled in any European countries. Write an essay on government control of transportation, and tell why you are or are not in favor of it.

A Panel Discussion

Form a panel of speakers to discuss the following topic:

Breaking a vicious circle

As an example of a vicious circle, you may wish to describe the way in which poor transportation in Southeast Asia hinders industrial development, which in turn makes it difficult to produce the equipment and materials needed for construction of transportation facilities.



A Roman Catholic festival in the Philippines. Each of the major faiths in Southeast Asia has its own celebrations. Harvesttime, the beginning and end of the rainy season, and holidays such as national independence days are also times of celebrations.

17 Festivals and Recreation

Problems To Solve

The people of Southeast Asia enjoy festivals and other leisure-time activities. **How do these compare with leisure-time activities in the United States?** The following questions suggest hypotheses to consider in solving this problem:

a. What similarities and differences are there between holidays in the

United States and holidays in the countries of Southeast Asia?

b. How do the informal leisure pastimes of Americans and Southeast Asians compare?

You will need to make an accurate, thoughtful survey of typical leisure-time activities in the United States in order to solve this problem.

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.

Festivals are celebrated throughout the year in Southeast Asia. A large number of these are religious. Other celebrations are held at harvesttime, the beginning and end of the rainy season, and on holidays such as national independence days. In addition, traditional Chinese festivals are observed by the Vietnamese and by the Chinese who live in Southeast Asia.

New Year's, as it is celebrated in South Vietnam, is a good example of a festival in Southeast Asia. The Vietnamese name for this holiday is Tet. Like the date of Easter, the date for this celebration differs from year to year. About a month before Tet arrives, brightly decorated stalls are set up in the markets and along nearby streets. These areas are thronged with



Buying flowers in Saigon. During the New Year's season, the Vietnamese decorate their homes with fresh flowers.

Shoppers in Saigon purchase New Year's gifts at gaily decorated stalls. New Year's, which the Vietnamese call Tet, is the most important festival in South Vietnam. In addition to exchanging gifts during the holiday season, the Vietnamese visit their temples for prayer.



people buying gifts for their friends, and flowers to decorate their homes. During the last three or four days before New Year's the crowds become very large. On New Year's Eve, however, business activity ceases and the streets become deserted, for most people go home. Families gather before altars in their homes to pay tribute to the spirits of relatives who have died and to invite them to share in the celebration. On New Year's morning, people dress in their best clothes and go to the temples for prayer. Visits are exchanged between relatives and friends,

and children offer good wishes for the coming year to their parents and grandparents. In return, the children receive red envelopes containing money.

Special events in a person's life are also celebrated in Southeast Asia. In Burma, for example, it is the custom for boys who are over seven years of age to enter a Buddhist monastery for a temporary period. This event in a boy's life is marked with an elaborate ceremony called a *Shinpyu*. The *Shinpyu* of a boy from a poor family is often paid for by a wealthy Buddhist. Another

In Burma, a special ceremony is held at the time a boy enters a Buddhist monastery. Throughout most of Southeast Asia, celebrations are held in honor of the important events in a person's life. A wedding may be celebrated with a banquet for the entire community.





In Cambodia, the planting season begins with a festival called the Plowing of the Holy Furrow. Fireworks, costumes, and parades make festivals in Cambodia colorful affairs.

celebration in Burma takes place at the time that a girl's ears are pierced for earrings.

In Indonesia, celebrations that mark special events in people's lives are called *selamatan*. A good example of a *selamatan* is the one held to celebrate a wedding. Everyone in the community is invited to participate in this celebration. The guests enter the house or special tent where the *selamatan* is being held, through an archway of palm leaves. After the ceremony, they take part in a banquet. During the

evening, they are entertained with music, dancing, and possibly a puppet show. (See page 199.)

Leisure-time activities. Like people everywhere, Southeast Asians enjoy relaxing and visiting with friends. Many businesses close for two or three hours at lunchtime so that people may rest during the early afternoon, when it is very warm. From dusk until bedtime, families often sit together and talk, or visit with neighbors. Sometimes a bonfire is lighted, and the young people have a contest to see who



Burmese students keeping a ball in the air with their feet. This ball game is popular in several Southeast Asian countries.

can make up the best verses to a song. At other times, village musicians perform, or a troupe of entertainers presents a play or a puppet show. Movies, radio broadcasts, and television programs are popular in areas that have them.

Games and sports. Southeast Asian people also enjoy different types of games. In Thailand and several other countries, a group of young men will often form a circle and pass around a ball made of rattan or hard rubber, keeping it in the air with their feet. Kite flying and cockfighting are other favorite pastimes. Boxing is very popular in the Philippines and in Thailand. One kind of Thai boxing permits the boxer to use his feet as well as his hands.

Boxers in Thailand. In one type of Thai boxing, the boxers are permitted to use their feet as well as their hands. Boxing is a popular sport in the Philippines and in Thailand.





A soccer game in Indonesia. Some of the games played in Southeast Asia are the same as those played in Europe or the United States. One of the most popular of these is soccer.

On the island of Madura, in Indonesia, bull racing is an exciting sport.

In some of Southeast Asia's large cities there are stadiums where crowds of spectators gather to watch many of the same sports as those played in Europe or the United States. One of the most popular of these sports is soccer. Frequently, the best soccer teams of different Southeast Asian nations compete with each other or with teams from other parts of Asia. They also

compete with teams from Europe and from Australia. Volleyball, badminton, tennis, basketball, and cricket are other sports played in Southeast Asia.

Teams from Southeast Asian countries take part in several international athletic competitions. Indonesian and Malaysian teams have won the badminton championship of the world. In addition, Southeast Asian athletes have participated in the Olympic Games.

Completing Paragraphs

Write a paragraph for each of the topic sentences listed below.

1. The most important festival in South Vietnam is Tet.
2. A *Shinpyu* is a Buddhist ceremony celebrated in Southeast Asia.
3. In Indonesia, celebrations called *selamatan* often mark special events in a person's life.
4. Southeast Asians enjoy some sports that are the same or that are similar to those played in our own country.

Class Project

As a class, divide into three groups, each collecting information on various festivals and ceremonies observed by people of the Buddhist, Hindu, or Islamic faiths. The information found by each group should be presented in report form to the remainder of the class. Where possible, photographs and sketches should be used to illustrate the reports. Each

group will need to do extensive research at the library to find the information necessary for this project.

Class Discussion

As a class, discuss the questions listed below concerning international competition in athletics.

1. Can international athletic competition further understanding between nations? If so, in what ways?
2. In what ways, if any, can athletic competition between nations be harmful?
3. In your opinion, do the good effects of competition outweigh the less desirable effects?

Reading Suggestions

Customs and Holidays Around the World, by Lavinia Dobler

Holidays Around the World, by Joseph Gaer
Fun and Festival From Southeast Asia, by C. M. Hallock

Playing basketball in the Philippines. Some Southeast Asian athletes have competed in international sports tournaments, such as the Olympic Games.





Buddhist statues at the ruins of Angkor, in Cambodia. Most traditional Southeast Asian art was created to be used in worship. Religious art and architecture differ from country to country, depending on the main religion followed by the people.

18 Arts

Problems To Solve

1. How have the religions practiced in Southeast Asia influenced the traditional arts of this region? To solve this problem, you will need to make hypotheses about the religious influences that may be seen in the following:
 - a. the traditional sculpture and painting of this region
 - b. the traditional architecture of this region
 - c. the traditional dances and literature of this region
2. How have Southeast Asia's artists been influenced by Western art?

See TO THE STUDENT, pages 7-8.



Borobudur, a Buddhist temple in Java, was built more than a thousand years ago. This stone temple is one of the world's most impressive religious structures.

Borobudur. In a forest clearing on the island of Java stands one of the world's most magnificent religious structures—the Buddhist temple Borobudur. This vast stone temple is larger than the great cathedrals of Europe. It was built more than a thousand years ago, when Buddhism was an important religion in Indonesia.

Borobudur is a huge, stairlike pyramid crowned with a large, bell-shaped tower. (See picture above.) The lower levels of this pyramid are square and the upper three levels are circular. Stairs lead from one level to another. Seventy-two bell-

shaped towers adorn the upper levels of Borobudur, while the walls of the lower levels are decorated with delicate carvings illustrating scenes from the life of Buddha. The names of the artists who carved these scenes are unknown for until recently most sculpture and painting in Southeast Asia were anonymous.

Religious architecture and art. There are many other beautiful religious structures besides Borobudur in Southeast Asia. Most of the oldest and finest art and architecture in this region was created to be used in worship. Southeast Asia's religious architecture differs from place to

place. In the countries of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, where Buddhism is the main religion, there are many Buddhist temples and pagodas. The vast, golden Shwe Dagon Pagoda in Rangoon is one of the largest Buddhist temples in the world. People who visit it may buy small packages of gold leaf to place on its glistening surface. In the Philippines, where most of the people are Roman Catholics, there are great stone churches. Beautiful mosques have been built in the country of Indonesia and in Malaya, where the religion of Islam is important. On the island of Bali are Hindu temples.

Carvings and paintings add to the beauty of Southeast Asia's fine religious

buildings. Buddhist temples contain murals and many different statues of Buddha. Roman Catholic churches and Hindu temples in Southeast Asia also contain examples of fine sculpture. There are no pictures or statues of people or animals in mosques, for the religion of Islam forbids such images. However, Moslems often decorate their religious buildings with intricate geometric patterns or flower designs.

Other traditional art and architecture. Through the centuries, artists and architects in Southeast Asia have also created secular works of art. The picture below shows a beautiful pavilion on the grounds of one of the royal palaces in this region.

A pavilion on the Royal Palace grounds in Cambodia. In addition to religious art and architecture, Southeast Asians have created many secular works of art.



Among the other interesting examples of nonreligious art in Southeast Asia are the slender, wooden statues carved on the island of Bali.

Dancing. Another highly developed art form in Southeast Asia is dancing. One of the beautiful dances of this region is the *Legong*, which is performed on the island of Bali. The picture below shows *Legong* dancers dramatizing an episode from an ancient Hindu legend, the *Ramayana*. The young girls who dance the *Legong* wear wide, golden collars, and crowns of gilded leather covered with masses of delicate flowers. Gold thread decorates the sashes

that are wrapped tightly around their bodies. *Legong* dancers receive extensive training, for every motion they make has a special meaning.

The *Legong* is only one of the many dances performed in Southeast Asia. The *Leng Trot* of Cambodia is a ceremonial dance performed to encourage the coming of the monsoon rains when they are late. In the beautiful *Tari Piring* of Sumatra, the dancers hold plates with lighted candles in their hands. Originally, this dance was performed after the harvest to honor the rice goddess. Dances are also performed at weddings and other celebrations in Southeast Asia.

Legong dancers on the island of Bali act out an episode from an old Hindu legend called the "Ramayana." Each motion these dancers make has a special meaning. Many other interesting dances are performed in the different countries of Southeast Asia.





Handmade leather puppets in Indonesia. In many parts of Southeast Asia, plays are produced by casting the shadows of large, flat puppets onto a cloth screen. These plays, which may last for hours, are usually dramatizations of ancient legends.

Shadow-puppet plays. Another interesting art form in Southeast Asia is the shadow-puppet play, called the *wayang kulit*. The large, flat puppets used in these performances are made of leather, and cut out and painted by hand. (See picture above.) They are generally used to dramatize ancient legends. The screen against which the puppets are moved is made of white cotton cloth and is lighted from the

puppeteer's side with a bright lamp. As the puppeteer moves the figures, he narrates the story. The spectators who watch the performance from the other side of the screen see it as a shadow play.

Shadow-puppet plays are a popular form of entertainment at special family celebrations in Indonesia. The performances may last until dawn. Although the spectators may go out for refreshments



Musicians accompany a dancer in Thailand. In Southeast Asia, music for dances and puppet plays is provided by a variety of musical instruments. Some musicians play Western instruments, and others play Southeast Asian gongs and drums.

from time to time, they usually do not leave until the end of the performance.

Music. Musicians accompany puppet plays, dances, and dramas in Southeast Asia. The instruments used by orchestras here are carefully made and often very beautiful. They include gongs, drums, and instruments that resemble xylophones. There are also flutelike wind instruments, and stringed instruments somewhat like

violins. Much of the music in Southeast Asia sounds strange to Western ears. However, some of the popular music heard in this region is reminiscent of Hawaiian or South American music. Usually, this is because of the Portuguese and Spanish influence on music in all of these areas.

Literature. Much of Southeast Asia's literature is very old. Ancient Hindu legends such as the *Ramayana* are familiar

to the people. Other early literature includes love stories, tales of magic, and episodes from the life of Buddha. Poetry is also well loved in this region. Often, poems and stories in Southeast Asia are passed along orally, for until recently most people in this region could not read.

Modern writers in some countries of Southeast Asia are producing short stories and novels about the everyday lives and problems of the people. Sometimes these

modern writings appear in newspapers, for few people can afford to buy books.

Modern art. Some contemporary works of art and architecture are being created in Southeast Asia. Several of Southeast Asia's modern artists have copied the methods of Western artists. Others, however, are borrowing from the rest of the world what they feel is useful, and are combining this with their countries' traditional art forms.

Indonesian wood carvings. Today, Indonesian artists still practice the old art of wood carving. Many modern artists in Southeast Asia are combining the methods and ideas of Western artists with the traditional art forms of their own countries.





An art class at an Indonesian technical college. Some artists in Southeast Asia are trying to create the same kind of art that is produced in Western nations.

Writing a Report

The dances described in this chapter are important art forms in Southeast Asia. In many parts of the world, ballet is considered an important art form. Read about ballet in an encyclopedia, and write a report comparing and contrasting it to dances such as the *Legong* or *Leng Trot*.

Presenting a Puppet Show

In an encyclopedia or other source, read about the *Ramayana*. Organize a committee to put on a puppet show that dramatizes an episode from this story. Puppets can be made out of construction paper, with designs similar to

those on page 199.

Panel Discussion

Present a panel discussion on the following topic: What can the arts of a country tell about its people and its history? If you are not a member of the panel, be prepared to ask intelligent questions.

Making an Exhibit

Find examples of the painting, sculpture, and architecture of Southeast Asia. Locate as much information about each example as possible. Then exhibit the pictures and information you have collected.



PART 3

COUNTRIES OF SOUTHEAST ASIA



19 Indonesia

Facts About Indonesia

Area: Indonesia, the largest country in Southeast Asia, consists of about three thousand islands. Excluding West New Guinea, these islands together have a land area of 575,893 square miles.

Population: 104,366,000.

Capital and Largest City: Djakarta (population 2,973,052).

Literacy: About half of the people in Indonesia can read and write.

Main Religion: Islam.

Main Occupation: About three fourths of Indonesia's workers are farmers.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$62. Although most Indonesians who work on small farms have little money, they usually grow enough food for their families and exchange extra crops and handmade articles at village markets for other things they need. Plantation workers have become unionized since World War II and make a better living than they used to, but still must go without some things they need. Many city people are very poor.

Important Farm Products: Rice, corn, cassava, fruits, sweet potatoes and other vegetables, peanuts, and soybeans are raised for food. Important export products are rubber, tobacco, copra, palm oil, coffee, tea, pepper, cinchona, cacao, kapok, and sisal.

Natural Resources: Tin, petroleum, coal, bauxite, manganese, nickel, and forests.

Manufacturing: Handicrafts and the processing of farm products are the main kinds of manufacturing in Indonesia. In addition, there are shipyards, assembly shops, and factories that produce tires, rubber shoes, textiles, soap, or other goods.

Currency: Indonesia's unit of money is the *rupiah*. About 500 *rupiah* are officially worth \$1.00.

GEOGRAPHY

Land. The island country of Indonesia is located along the equator, between the continents of Asia and Australia. It stretches about three thousand miles from east to west.

Indonesia's largest islands are Borneo, Sumatra, Celebes, and Java. Only the southern two thirds of Borneo, called Kalimantan, belongs to Indonesia. (See map on page 206.) In May, 1963, the western half of New Guinea came under Indonesian administration. West New Guinea is 160,606 square miles in size. Excluding West New Guinea, the islands of Indonesia together form a land area more than twice that of Texas.

Climate. The islands of Indonesia lie both north and south of the equator. Except in the high mountains, these islands have warm weather throughout the year. Most of Indonesia receives plenty of rain. In much of the country there are periods of greater and lesser rainfall. Only a part of southeastern Indonesia has a distinct dry season.

Natural resources. Indonesia is among the richest countries in the world in natural resources. It is a leading producer of tin, and the largest producer of oil and natural gas in eastern Asia. The tin deposits are found mainly on several small islands near the Malay Peninsula, and the oil reserves are located mainly on Sumatra and Kalimantan. (See map on page 160.) Indonesia also has bauxite, coal, manganese, diamonds, gold, silver, and iron.



Rice fields on the island of Bali. All together, the three thousand islands in the country of Indonesia are more than twice the size of Texas. Indonesia's population is over 100 million, which is the largest of any country in Southeast Asia.

About two thirds of the land in Indonesia is covered with forests.

People. Indonesia has the largest population of any country in Southeast Asia. It is the home of 104,366,000 people. West New Guinea has a population of about 750,000.

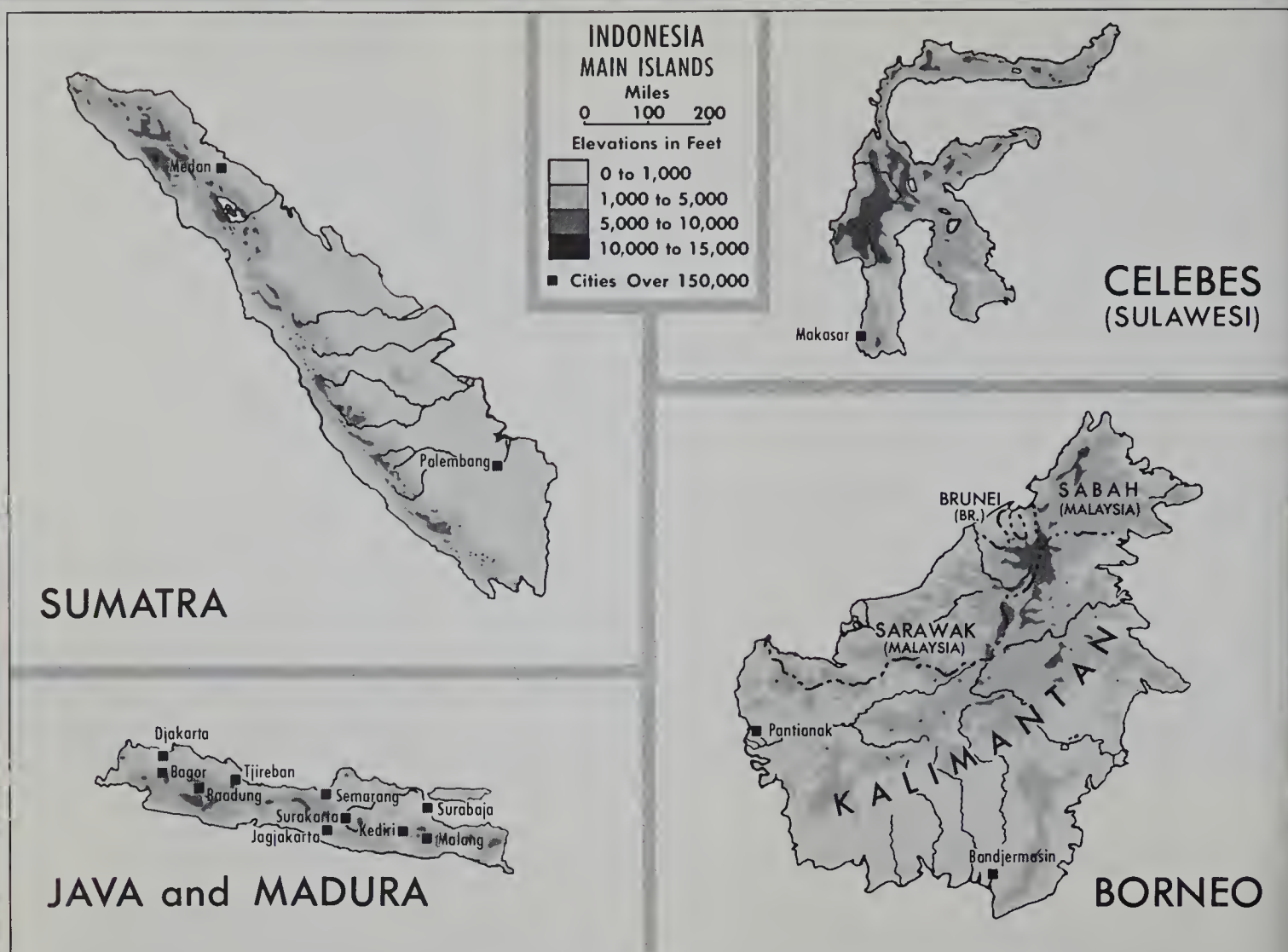
About two thirds of Indonesia's people are crowded onto the island of Java. Large parts of other islands are very thinly populated. (See top map on page 138.)

Ninety-five percent of the Indonesians belong to a group of people called Malays, who have brown skin and dark eyes. The Malays of Indonesia are divided into more than one hundred groups that speak different dialects or languages. Some of these groups also dress and live in very different ways. In addition, there are Chinese, Indians, Arabs, and Westerners in Indo-

nesia. The official language of the country is Bahasa Indonesia. Ninety percent of the people are Moslems.

Earning a living. About three fourths of the working people in Indonesia earn their living as farmers. Most of them work on small farms and raise only as much food as their families need. However, more and more of Indonesia's rubber, tea, pepper, and other agricultural exports are being produced on small farms. In addition, there are many large plantations that produce rubber or crops for export. Most of these plantations are on Java and Sumatra.

About one tenth of Indonesia's workers earn their living in manufacturing. Fewer than half of them have jobs in factories that employ ten or more workers. Most manufacturing is done by hand in small



Island	Area	Population	Some Important Facts
Java (including the small neighboring island of Madura)	51,032 square miles	67,000,000	Java, Indonesia's most densely populated island, has nearly 60 percent of the country's cultivated land. Most of the people here are farmers who live in permanent villages and raise rice as a main crop. In the uplands are plantations that produce agricultural exports such as rubber and tea.
Sumatra	182,859 square miles	17,150,000	Sumatra produces 70 percent of Indonesia's exports. Many people here work on plantations or have jobs in the petroleum or fishing industries. Large numbers still farm in temporary forest clearings.
Celebes (Sulawesi)	72,986 square miles	7,700,000	Celebes produces rice and some export crops such as coconuts in the northeastern and southwestern parts of the island. In the mountains people farm in temporary clearings. On the coasts, many people are fishermen or traders.
Kalimantan (Indonesian Borneo)	208,286 square miles	4,470,000	Most of Kalimantan is a wilderness inhabited only by tribesmen. Near the coast are some oil wells, farms, mines, and towns.

workshops or at home. Some people in Indonesia make a living as full-time or part-time fishermen or lumbermen. Others work as miners or shopkeepers.

Transportation and communication. Indonesia has about 36,000 miles of all-weather roads and about 4,150 miles of railroads. Java has the best transportation system in Indonesia, and Sumatra the next best. Kalimantan has no railroads and very few roads.

Garuda Indonesian Airways schedules flights between important cities in the different islands, and to neighboring countries. In addition, airlines in other countries schedule flights to Indonesia. The Indonesian government is trying to build up a fleet of ships to take the place of the Dutch shipping line that operated among the islands before 1957.

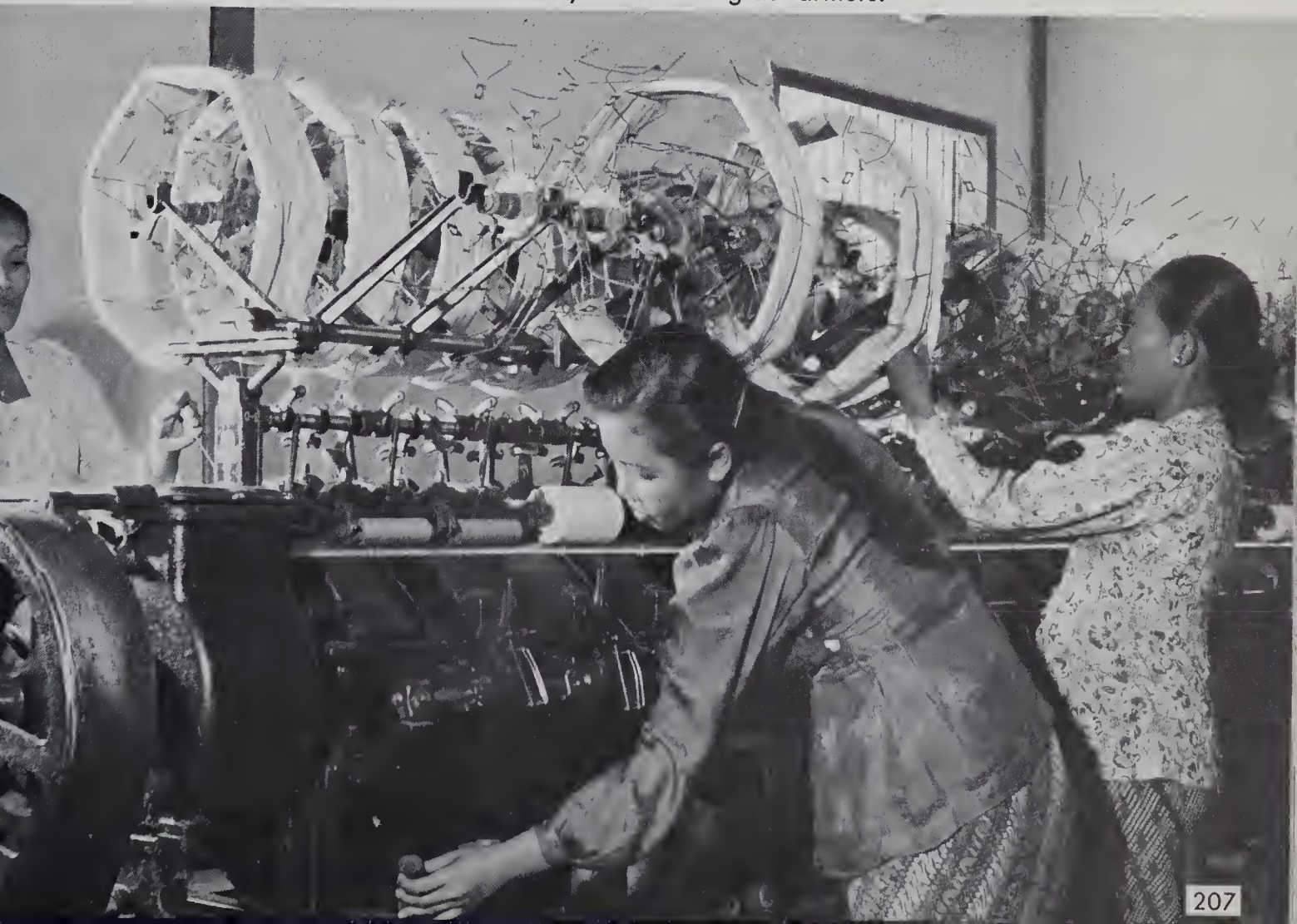
Indonesia has a television station in the Djakarta area, and a network of government radio stations. Most of the radios belong to people who live in large cities. However, many other people are able to listen to radio programs over loudspeakers that have been set up in some of the villages.

Most of Indonesia's telephones are on Java. There are also telephones in a few large cities on the other islands. The different parts of Indonesia are connected by postal service, telegraph, and radio-telephone.

Cities. Indonesia has more large cities and towns than any other country in Southeast Asia. The largest Indonesian cities are located on the island of Java.

Djakarta (population 2,973,052), formerly called Batavia, is the capital and

A textile mill in Indonesia. Only about one tenth of Indonesia's working people earn their living in manufacturing. Most of these people work at home or in small workshops. About three fourths of the workers in the country earn a living as farmers.



largest city of Indonesia. It is located in western Java, at the mouth of the Tjiliwong River. Among the many industries in Djakarta are iron foundries, sawmills, textile mills, and tanneries.

Some of Djakarta's streets are very wide, and others are narrow and twisting. Along many tree-shaded streets are attractive houses built by the Dutch. Most of these have now been taken over by the Indonesians. There are also many kampongs, or neighborhoods of native houses made of bamboo matting and thatch. Since World War II the population of Djakarta has grown rapidly, and the city is very crowded.

Djakarta has many large buildings in which oil companies and shipping firms have their offices. There are also small shops that sell handmade articles such as intricately carved picture frames, as well as batik and other fabrics. Some of the

interesting places to visit in the city are the museums, the botanical gardens, and the colorful markets.

Surabaja (population 1,007,945) is Indonesia's second largest city. It is an important port and industrial city, located in eastern Java at the mouth of the Kali Mas River. There are textile, chemical, shipbuilding, and petroleum industries in Surabaja.

Bandung (population 972,566) is located on a beautiful plateau in western Java. Because it is high above sea level, Bandung has a pleasant climate and is a popular resort city. In Bandung there are factories, wide streets, and modern buildings, as well as busy open-air markets.

Jogjakarta (population 312,698) is one of the most interesting cities in Indonesia. The walled palace of the Sultan of Jogjakarta was built in the eighteenth century. Twenty-four miles outside the city is

Washing clothes in a canal in Djakarta. Indonesia's capital and largest city is Djakarta, located near the western end of the island of Java. About three million people live here. Other important Indonesian cities on Java are Surabaja, Bandung, and Jogjakarta.



the Buddhist temple Borobudur. (See Chapter 18.) Jogjakarta is famous for its silver and batik work, as well as for its dance and drama festivals. Indonesia's largest university, Gadjah Mada University, is located here.

HISTORY

Early history. Before Europeans began coming to Southeast Asia, Indonesia was divided into many independent states. Some of these were powerful enough to gain control of others and establish empires.

One of the greatest empires in early Indonesia was Majapahit. In the fourteenth century, it controlled Bali, Madura, and eastern Java. Like many other parts of Southeast Asia, Majapahit was strongly influenced by the civilization of India. (See Chapter 10.) Two of its important religions, Buddhism and Hinduism, had been brought to Southeast Asia by Indian traders and missionaries.

Near the end of the fourteenth century Majapahit began to lose its power, and soon the great empire was divided into many small parts. This helped a new religion to spread through the islands—the religion of Islam. Moslem traders from Arabia and western India had been coming to the islands for many years, but they had not been able to gain political power while Majapahit was strong. As it became weaker, however, the Moslems took over many ports. They converted people to Islam and established small Moslem states.

Portuguese traders arrive. At about the same time that Islam was spreading through the islands, traders from Portugal began to come in search of spices. For about a hundred years, the Portuguese controlled most of the trade with the Spice

Islands of Indonesia. (See map on page 119.) In the seventeenth century, however, other European countries took away Portugal's trade.

The Dutch East India Company becomes powerful in Indonesia. Among the first Europeans to challenge the Portuguese were the Dutch. In 1602, competing Dutch trading companies were combined to form the Dutch East India Company. This company gained control of important ports in the East Indies, as Indonesia was then called, and forced many native rulers to pay tribute. For more than 150 years, the Dutch East India Company was the strongest power in this area.

Indonesia becomes a Dutch colony. The Dutch East India Company spent so much money governing and guarding its territories that it went bankrupt in 1798. The Dutch government then assumed political administration of the East Indies. Early in the nineteenth century the Netherlands temporarily lost the Indies to the British but soon regained them.

During the nineteenth century the Dutch government ruled Indonesia harshly. Like other colonial powers in Southeast Asia, the Dutch regarded their colony mainly as a source of raw materials. The Indonesians were forced to produce large quantities of farm products for export. The people were not able to produce enough food for themselves. Reforms were made later, but these did not satisfy all the Indonesians. In the early part of the twentieth century, many people began to work for independence.

World War II strengthens Indonesia's determination to win independence. During World War II the Japanese occupied Indonesia, and many of the Dutch there were imprisoned. The Japanese placed native Indonesians in important government

offices, for there were too few Japanese officials to fill these positions. On August 17, 1945, shortly after Japan had surrendered, Indonesia declared its independence.

Indonesia fights for independence. The Netherlands did not want to relinquish its colony. During the next four years there was bitter fighting between the Dutch and the Indonesians. Finally, in 1949, the Netherlands recognized the independence of its former colony with the exception of the western part of New Guinea. (See bottom map on page 124.)

The Dutch and the Indonesians quarreled over West New Guinea for more than ten years. Finally, in 1962, the Dutch agreed to relinquish it. It was administered by the United Nations for a brief period, and came under Indonesian control on May 1, 1963. Sometime before the end of 1969, elections are to be held in which the people of West New Guinea will decide whether they wish to become a part of Indonesia or to become independent.

Independence brings many problems. Sukarno, a leader in the fight for independence, became Indonesia's first president. He faced serious problems. Many people in the islands outside Java felt they were not being fairly treated by the central government. They rebelled and tried to establish separate countries. An extremist political party, the Darul Islam, also caused serious disorder in Indonesia. Members of this party insisted that Islam should be the only religion in the country. They murdered people, destroyed property, and took over villages.

In addition to rebellions, there were other problems. The government confiscated many of the industries and businesses that the Dutch and Chinese had started, and large numbers of these for-

eigners left the country. Few Indonesians had the skills needed to take over their jobs, however. Soon many goods became scarce, and prices went up. Another problem was the large number of political parties in Indonesia. Disagreement among these parties made it difficult to enact legislation needed by the country.

"Guided democracy" is established under Sukarno's leadership. President Sukarno decided that the kind of democracy many Western nations have was not suitable for Indonesia. He announced a return to the 1945 constitution that granted him more power as president. In 1960, he dissolved the elected parliament and began to rule Indonesia with the help of appointed officials. He called this form of government "guided democracy."

The Communists and the army struggle for power. Although Sukarno was the most influential leader in Indonesia, he was not all-powerful. Two organizations in particular stood in his way and prevented him from running the country entirely as he wished. One was Indonesia's large Communist Party, which had close ties with Communist China. The other was the Indonesian army, which was basically anti-Communist. Sukarno was strongly sympathetic toward communism, but allowed neither the Party nor the army to dominate him.

In 1965, a confusing chain of events occurred that tipped the balance of power in favor of the army. Six army generals were murdered. Although it was not certain who was responsible, the Communists were immediately accused. The army, supported by mobs of citizens, began to hunt the Communists down. At the time this book was printed, the Indonesian army was clearly in control of the country.

GOVERNMENT

In 1945, when Indonesia declared independence, the revolutionary leaders chose Sukarno to be the country's president. The first constitution, adopted in 1945, gave Sukarno great power. Later, temporary constitutions were adopted at different times. They provided for a more democratic form of government, and officially reduced much of the president's power. However, Sukarno did not abide by these constitutions. In 1959, when quarreling political parties and other problems were causing much difficulty in Indonesia, Sukarno announced that the country was returning to the 1945 constitution.

About a year later, Sukarno established what he called "guided democracy." In place of elected officials, Sukarno appointed a policy-making group, called the People's Consultative Assembly, and several other advisory groups. Sukarno held most of the top government offices in the country. Under his leadership, the government managed many of the country's large industries, and controlled the price of sugar, rice, gasoline, and other scarce goods. The publishing of books and magazines was also closely supervised by the government.

Until the 1965 uprising, which was discussed earlier, Sukarno was Indonesia's most powerful leader. He remained in office after the uprising, but at the time this book was printed, the army had taken over full political power.

EDUCATION

Before World War II, only about 7 percent of the people in Indonesia knew how to read and write. Today, about half the people have these important skills.



Students learning auto mechanics in a trade school. Indonesia needs many more schools to teach modern work skills to its young people.

There are still too few teachers and classrooms for all Indonesian children to receive an education, but the government is establishing more schools as fast as possible. In addition, there are a few private schools, and many religious schools where children are taught about Islam. Indonesia has twenty-four government universities and more than seventy private and religious universities. It also has other institutions of higher learning. A mass-education program is helping to educate adults who do not know how to read and write.

Address: Embassy of Indonesia
2020 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20006



20 The Philippines

Facts About the Philippines

Area: The Philippines is made up of about 7,100 islands, which together form a land area of 115,707 square miles.

Population: 31,261,000.

Capital: Quezon City (population 397,990).

Largest City: Manila (population 1,138,611).

Literacy: About three fourths of the people in the Philippines can read and write.

Main Religion: Christianity, predominantly Roman Catholicism.

Main Occupation: Three fifths of the workers earn their living by farming.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$121.

Important Farm Products: The Philippines is the world's largest producer of coconuts and abaca, which are raised mainly for export. Cane sugar and tobacco are other important export products. For their own use, farmers raise rice, corn, sweet potatoes, beans, peas, and fruit.

Natural Resources: Copper, iron, chromite, gold, manganese, forests, fisheries, and waterpower.

Manufacturing: The processing of foods and the preparation of farm products for export are the main kinds of manufacturing. Cement, textiles, paper, plywood, soap, drugs, and many other goods are also manufactured.

Currency: The Philippines' unit of money is the *peso*, which is officially worth about 26 cents.



Mount Mayon, in southern Luzon. The Philippines is made up of about 7,100 islands. The largest and most important island is Luzon.

danao, Palawan, Samar, Negros, Panay, Mindoro, Leyte, Cebu, Bohol, and Masbate. (See map on page 215.) Chapter 8 contains more information about the land of the Philippines.

Climate. Except in the highlands, the weather is warm all year round in the Philippines. Total yearly rainfall varies from 40 inches to 180 inches in different parts of the country. (See top map on page 109.) Chapter 9 contains more information about the climate of the Philippines.

Natural resources. More than half the land in the Philippines is covered with forests. Lumber, plywood, and veneer are important exports. There is also a variety of rich mineral deposits in the islands. Copper, iron, chromite, gold, and manganese are the leading minerals being mined. Hydroelectric power is now being

GEOGRAPHY

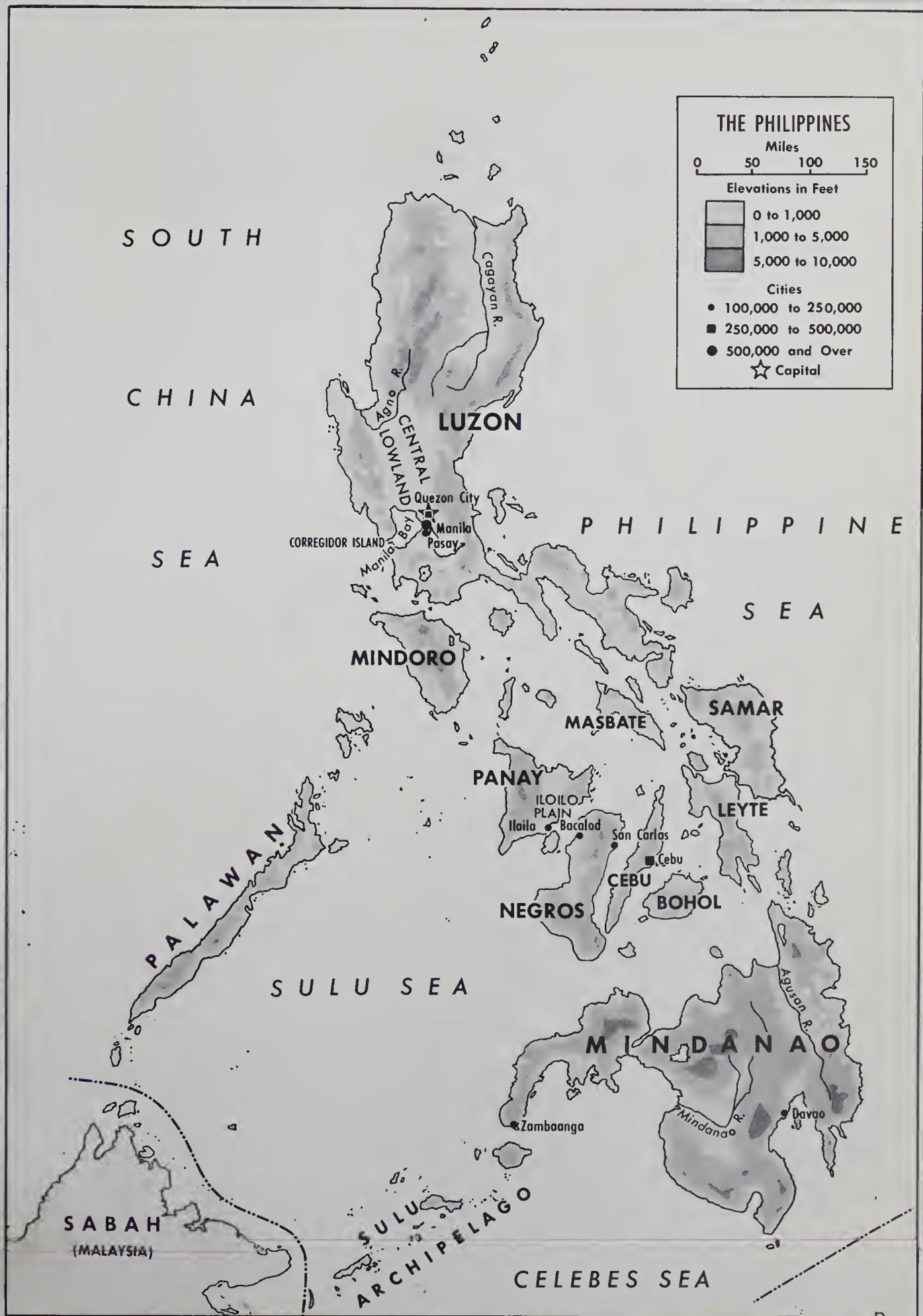
Land. The Philippines is an archipelago of about 7,100 islands located east of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. This island country is about the size of the British Isles.

The eleven largest islands of the Philippines include more than nine tenths of the land area. These islands are Luzon, Min-



A rainy day in the Philippines. Most Filipinos are related to the brown-skinned Malays of Indonesia and Malaya. 213

Island	Area	Population	Some Important Facts
Luzon	40,420 square miles	13,745,673	Luzon is the largest and most important island in the Philippines. Manila, the country's main port and manufacturing city, is located here. Much of Luzon's cropland is in the central lowland, which produces two fifths of the country's rice. Coconuts, abaca, and tobacco are other important crops. Luzon also has gold, iron, copper, and chromite mines.
Mindanao	36,537 square miles	6,108,996	Most of Mindanao is still covered with forests. Along the coasts and in a few valleys are farms that produce abaca, coconuts, corn, pineapples, and rice. Lumber, gold, iron, and hydroelectric power are also produced on Mindanao.
Samar	5,050 square miles	871,857	Most of the people on the mountainous island of Samar live on the coastal lowlands. Coconuts, rice, corn, and abaca are raised on these lowlands. Samar is frequently hit by typhoons.
Negros	4,905 square miles	1,930,800	Negros is the main sugar-producing island in the Philippines. Tobacco is also raised on Negros. Volcanoes help to fertilize the soil on this island. Most of the farmlands are along the coasts.
Palawan	4,550 square miles	162,918	Most of Palawan is still a forested wilderness. Some corn, rice, and vegetables are raised on hillside farms. Mercury is produced in the central part of the island.
Panay	4,446 square miles	1,520,143	Panay is an important rice-growing island. Much of the rice is grown on the fertile Iloilo Plain in eastern Panay. This is one of the most thickly populated lowlands in the country.
Mindoro	3,759 square miles	311,440	Most of Mindoro is still covered with forests. Farms are located on the northeastern and southern coasts. Livestock, rice, coconuts, and sugarcane are raised on Mindoro. Philippine mahogany is also produced here.
Leyte	2,785 square miles	972,323	The interior mountains of Leyte are forested. Along the coasts are farmlands that produce abaca, rice, tobacco, and coconuts.
Cebu	1,702 square miles	1,340,439	Cebu is the most densely populated island in the Philippines. Corn is the main crop. Other crops are rice, sugarcane, tobacco, and coconuts. Coal, copper, and cement are also produced on Cebu.
Bohol	1,491 square miles	602,497	The little island of Bohol is densely populated. Most of the farms are along the northwestern and southwestern coasts. Rice, coconuts, corn, and abaca are important crops.
Masbate	1,262 square miles	336,709	Masbate has scattered farmlands that produce coconuts, rice, corn, tobacco, livestock, and other products. There are important gold mines on the island.





Harvesting rice on Negros. Farming is the main occupation in the Philippines. Farmers raise crops such as rice and vegetables for their own use, as well as export crops such as abaca. The Philippine government is trying to help tenant farmers obtain farms of their own.

developed in the Philippines, especially on Mindanao.

People. More than 80 percent of the people in the Philippines are related to the brown-skinned Malays of Indonesia and Malaya. They live mainly in the lowlands and are divided into many groups that speak different languages.

A small part of the population of the Philippines consists of Negritos and other highland tribesmen. Chinese, Americans, and Spaniards also live on the islands. The three official languages of the country are Tagalog, English, and Spanish. All school-children learn Tagalog, but they study their other subjects in English.

More than 80 percent of the people are Roman Catholic. Smaller numbers are Protestant or belong to the Philippine In-

dependent Church. Islam is the religion of the Moro people of southern Mindanao and the Sulu Archipelago.

Earning a living. Farming is the main occupation in the Philippines. The average size of the farms here is about eight and one-half acres. On the central plain of Luzon and on the island of Negros, most of the farmland belongs to wealthy land-owners. The government is trying to help tenant farmers obtain their own farms. Some large estates have been bought by the government and divided up for sale at low prices. Frontier forests are also being cleared to provide more farmland.

Manufacturing, mining, fishing, lumbering, and handicrafts such as embroidery also provide jobs for people in the Philippines. Many new industries have

been established since World War II. Most of the factories are in or near Manila, but industries are expanding in northern Mindanao, where hydroelectric power is being developed.

Transportation and communication. There are about 19,000 miles of all-weather roads in the Philippines and more are being built. Bus companies provide service on the main islands. Two-wheeled wooden carts are also an important means of transportation. The Philippines has about 640 miles of railroads.

Ship and plane services connect the various islands of the Philippines. Ships sail on regular schedules among the islands. Planes of the Philippine Air Lines

link Manila to other cities in the country, and also schedule international flights.

Postal service, radiotelephone, and telegraph connect the different parts of the Philippines. There are seventy-two radio stations and seven television stations in the country.

Cities. The Philippines has more large cities than any other country in Southeast Asia except Indonesia. (See map on page 136.)

Manila (population 1,138,611) is the largest city and main port of the Philippines. It is located on the island of Luzon, facing Manila Bay. Most of the Philippines' industry is located in the Manila

Manila is the largest city and main port of the Philippines. More than one million people live in this city, which is located on Luzon. Manila was founded by Spanish colonists in 1571, and served as the capital until recently. Quezon City is now the official capital.



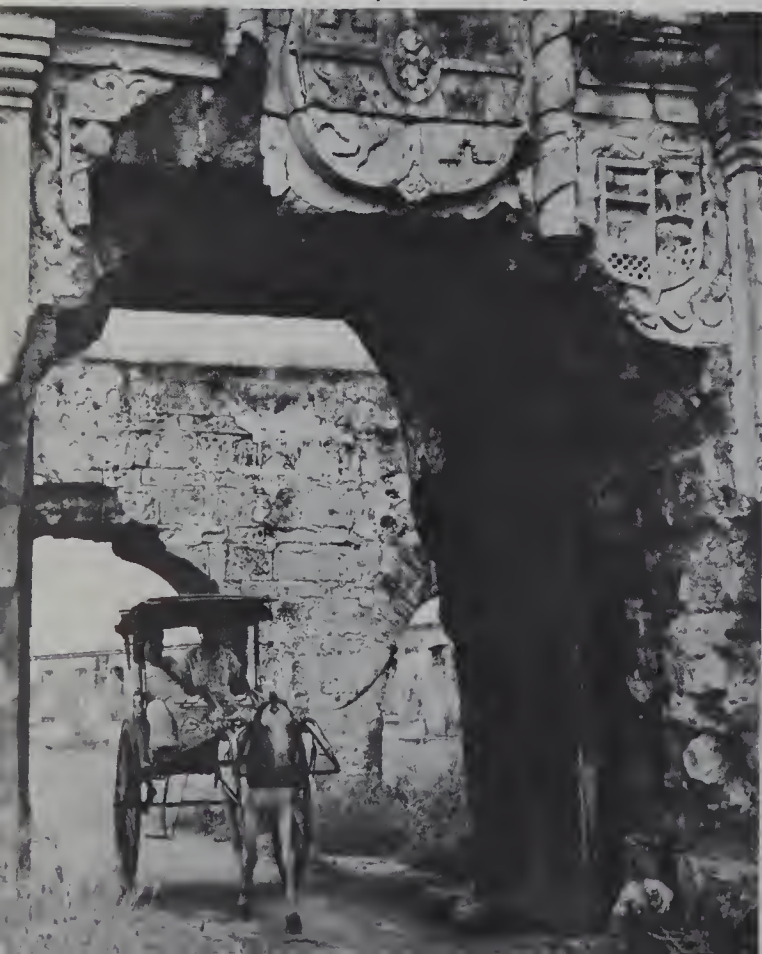
area. There are machine shops, sugar refineries, cotton mills, and many other kinds of factories in and around the city.

Manila is divided into two parts by the Pasig River. On the south bank is the Intramuros, the old walled city built by the Spanish. North of the Pasig is the newer section. During World War II, nearly all of the Intramuros and much of the newer section were destroyed. Most of Manila has now been rebuilt. There are many modern buildings and wide avenues in the city. There are also little nipa huts much like the ones in Filipino farming villages.

There are many churches in Manila. One of the most interesting is St. Augustine, the oldest stone church in the Philippines. It was the only church left standing in the Intramuros after World War II.

Quezon City (population 397,990) was founded in 1940 and became the official capital of the Philippines in 1948. It is located ten miles northeast of Manila.

The entrance to a fort in the Intramuros, the old Spanish section of Manila. Much of Manila was destroyed during World War II.



Cebu (population 259,194) is the third largest city in the Philippines. It is located at the place where Magellan landed in 1521, and is the oldest Spanish settlement in the islands. Cebu is the main port and market city for the densely populated island of Cebu.

HISTORY

Spain rules the Philippines for three hundred years. The first European to see the Philippines was Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese sea captain who had been sent by Spain to find a westward route to the Moluccas, or Spice Islands. Magellan was killed in the Philippines in a battle with native warriors, but Spain later sent other explorers to the islands.

In 1565 Spain succeeded in establishing a permanent settlement in the Philippines. By 1600 all the islands except Mindanao, Palawan, and the Sulu Archipelago were under Spain's rule. The Spanish introduced Christianity to the islands. They also united most of the people under one government for the first time. However, during the three centuries of control over the Philippines, the Spanish put down many revolts.

The United States gains control of the Philippines. In 1898, during the Spanish-American War, the Spanish fleet in Manila Bay was destroyed by the Americans. At about the same time, the Philippines revolted again and declared independence. Neither the United States nor Spain recognized this declaration of independence, however. In the treaty between the Americans and the Spanish that was signed at the close of the war, the United States gained control of the islands.

The United States plans to give the Philippines independence. President McKinley, who was in office when the United States



The city of Cebu is the main port and market city for the small, densely populated island of Cebu. It is the third largest city in the Philippines. Only Manila and Quezon City are larger. Founded in 1565, Cebu is the oldest Spanish settlement in the Philippines.

took over the Philippines, gave instructions that the islands were to be governed for the happiness, peace, and prosperity of the people who lived there. In 1934 the United States government passed a law that promised the Philippines independence after a period of nearly complete self-government. When the islands were invaded by the Japanese during World War II, Filipinos and Americans fought side by side. On July 4, 1946, less than a year after the war ended, the Philippines became independent.

Communists try to overthrow the new Philippine government. In the early years of

independence, many people in the Philippines were deeply discontented. Much of the country's farmland belonged to wealthy landowners, and farmers were very poor. Large numbers of dissatisfied people joined raiding bands that were led by Communists. These raiders, called the Huks, attacked villages and towns and tried to overthrow the Philippine government.

Ramón Magsaysay, who was Secretary of Defense, realized that the Huk revolt could not be put down unless the government made some reforms that would help the farmers. Magsaysay, who was elected

president in 1953, was killed in an airplane crash while still in office. However, the reforms that he started, together with strong military action, have almost completely overcome the Communists in the Philippines.

The Philippines is anti-Communist. There have been some temporary disagreements between the Philippines and the United States, but these two nations are close allies. In 1954 the Philippines joined with seven other nations to form an alliance called SEATO, to try to stop the spread of communism in Southeast Asia and the Southwest Pacific. In 1961, the Philippines, Malaya, and Thailand formed the Association of Southeast Asia, to promote closer economic and cultural relations among nations in Southeast Asia.

GOVERNMENT

The Philippines is a republic with a government similar to that of the United States. The president and the vice-president are elected by the people for four-year terms. Congress is made up of two houses, the Senate and the House of Representatives. Men and women who are twenty-one years of age or older may vote if they can read and write English, Spanish, or one of the native languages. The Supreme Court is the highest court in the country.

The Philippines is divided into fifty-six provinces. These are divided into municipalities, which are made up of groups of villages called barrios. The provinces and municipalities have their own governments.

EDUCATION

The Spanish built fine schools in the Philippines, but there were not nearly enough for all the children to receive an education. When the Americans took

over, they worked hard to establish a good system of public education. Today, all children between the ages of seven and ten are required by law to attend school. About three fourths of the people can read and write.

Many schools in Philippine farming communities try to help adults learn better methods of farming, better health habits, and other ways of improving their living conditions.

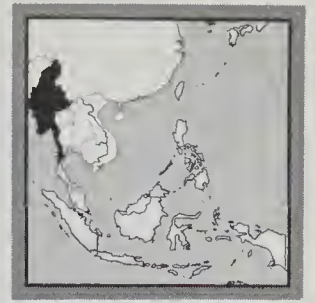
In addition to public schools, the Philippines has many private schools. There are also teacher-training schools, trade schools where students may learn job skills, and more than twenty-five universities.

Address: Embassy of the Philippines
1617 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20006

A school library in Mindanao. Besides schools maintained by the government, the Philippines has many private schools and colleges.



21 Burma



Facts About Burma

Area: 261,789 square miles.

Population: 23,664,000.

Capital and Largest City: Rangoon (population 800,993).

Literacy: About 60 percent of the people in Burma can read and write.

Main Religion: Buddhism.

Main Occupation: About 70 percent of the workers are farmers.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$50. Although most people in Burma have very little money, they usually raise all the food they need. They exchange extra crops and handmade articles at village markets.

Important Farm Products: Burma is the world's leading rice exporter. Other important farm products are cotton, sesamum, corn, sugarcane, tobacco, pulses, peanuts, millet, and rubber.

Natural Resources: Petroleum, lead, silver, zinc, tin, tungsten, teak trees, and gemstones.

Manufacturing: About 2 percent of Burma's workers earn their living in factories. Most of them are employed in rice mills or sawmills. About 9 percent of the workers make articles by hand in small workshops or at home.

Currency: Burma's unit of money is the *kyat*, which is officially worth about 21 cents.

GEOGRAPHY

Land. Burma is a little smaller than the state of Texas. Most of the country is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, but the southeastern part extends like the tail of a kite into the Malay Peninsula. This section of Burma is called Tenasserim. Burma's neighbors on the west are India and Pakistan. On the northeast is China and on the east are Laos and Thailand.

A great lowland basin stretches from north to south through the heart of Burma. It is formed of several river valleys separated by low mountains. The main river flowing through this basin is the Irrawaddy, Burma's most important waterway. The northern part of the lowland basin receives less rainfall than the rest of the country. This is Burma's Central Dry Zone. Farther south the basin

Burma. Most of Burma is on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula, but a small part extends into the Malay Peninsula.



spreads into the Delta Zone, which borders the coast. (See map on page 221.)

The lowland basin of Burma is bordered on the east, the west, and the north by a horseshoe of forested highlands. Between the western highlands and the sea are the small plains of the Arakan Coast.

Climate. The weather in Burma is usually warm, except in the highlands. Most of the rain that falls comes between May and October. From November to January, the weather is cool and dry. In February, March, and April, it is uncomfortably hot and dry.

Natural resources. More than half of the land in Burma is covered with forests. Teak is the main forest product. Burma



Teak from Burma's forests is exported. In addition to valuable forest resources, Burma has oil and a variety of other minerals.

Region	Land Features	Rainfall
Central Dry Zone	Area of rolling plains and hills in northern part of Burma's lowland river basin.	Most of this region receives less than 40 inches of rain a year.
Delta Zone	Area of river plains in southern part of basin, along coast; includes a section of low mountains.	Very rainy.
Horseshoe of Highlands	North and west of the basin are mountains. On the east is the rugged Shan Plateau.	Mountains near coast receive heavy rain. Snow falls on mountains in north.
Tenasserim	Forested mountains and small coastal plains in southeast corner of Burma.	Very rainy.
Arakan Coast	Small plains between the western mountains and the sea.	Very rainy.

also has a variety of minerals, including petroleum, lead, zinc, silver, tin, tungsten, copper, and gemstones such as rubies and jade. The main oil fields are in the Central Dry Zone. Most of the other mineral deposits are found on the Shan Plateau. Tin and tungsten are also mined in Tenasserim.

People. About two thirds of the people in Burma are Burmans. They live mainly in farming villages and cities in the lowlands. Many Indians and Chinese also live in the lowlands. In the highlands are groups of tribesmen who speak different languages and follow different customs.

About 85 percent of Burma's people are Buddhists. The teachings of their religion are very important in the lives of these people.

Earning a living. About 70 percent of Burma's workers are farmers. Formerly,

much of the farmland in the fertile Delta Zone belonged to wealthy landowners. Many of these people were Indian money-lenders who had claimed the farms of people who could not pay their debts. Since independence, the government has taken over much of the land that belonged to foreigners and has divided it among Burmese farmers and farm cooperatives.

Only about 10 percent of the workers in Burma earn their living in manufacturing. Most of them make articles by hand in small workshops or at home. Only about 2 percent of Burma's workers have jobs in factories.

Some of Burma's workers are shopkeepers, miners, or lumbermen. Still others work on railroads, inland waterways, or other means of transportation.

Transportation and communication. Many of Burma's roads and railroads were damaged during World War II and during the fighting that took place afterward. Much of the damage has now been repaired, but Burma still lacks adequate land transportation. However, railroads

Threading a loom. Most workers in Burma are farmers, but some are craftsmen who make articles by hand at home or in small workshops.



Region	Farmlands	Products
Central Dry Zone	Burma's oldest farming region. Many fields are irrigated, but dry farming is also important.	Cotton, peanuts, sesamum, beans, pulses, millet, wheat, corn, tobacco, some rice, petroleum.
Delta Zone	Contains Burma's main rice-growing lands.	Rice, jute, lumber.
Horseshoe of Highlands	Temporary forest clearings in the mountains.	Dry rice, millet, yams, sugarcane, lumber, lead, tin, tungsten, and other minerals.
Tenas-serim	Permanent farms on coastal plains. Temporary forest clearings in the mountains.	Rice, rubber, tin, tungsten, some fish.
Arakan Coast	Permanent farms on coastal plains.	Rice, fish.

connect Rangoon with the richest farming lowlands and some of the highland mining regions, and the country has about 6,800 miles of surfaced roads. There are many miles of unsurfaced roads also, but most of these cannot be used during the rainy season.

Both water and air travel are important in Burma. The Irrawaddy River is the country's main water highway. The Union of Burma Airways schedules international flights, as well as flights between Burma's larger cities. Several foreign airlines schedule flights to Burma, also.

Large towns and cities in Burma have telegraph and postal services. Most of the telephones are in Rangoon. The Burma Broadcasting Service broadcasts radio programs in Burmese and also in several tribal languages.



The Shwe Dagon Pagoda is one of Rangoon's many Buddhist temples. Rangoon is Burma's capital, largest city, and main port.

Cities. Burma has few cities. Most of the large towns and cities are located in river valleys or on coastal plains.

Rangoon (population 800,993) is the capital and largest city in Burma. It is located on the Rangoon River, in the Delta Zone. Although Rangoon is about twenty miles from the sea, it is Burma's most important port. The main industries in the city are oil refining, rice milling, and sawmilling.

Rangoon is famous for its many pagodas. Towering above the other buildings in

the city is one of the world's largest Buddhist temples, the Shwe Dagon Pagoda, which is covered with gold. At the exact center of Rangoon is another famous pagoda, the Sule. Rangoon also has several fine parks and two beautiful lakes.

Mandalay (population 198,974) is Burma's second largest city. It is located on the Irrawaddy River, in the Central Dry Zone. Mandalay is an important river port and railway center. It has many beautiful old pagodas and temples.

Moulmein (population 112,373) is the third largest city in Burma. It is a seaport located in Tenasserim, at the mouth of the Salween River.

HISTORY

Early history. In the eleventh century a powerful king named Anawrahta united several small states in the area where Burma is now located, and formed a strong kingdom with the city of Pagan as its capital. Near the end of the thirteenth century, Mongol invaders from the north captured Pagan, and the kingdom was split into small states.

Burma was reunited in the sixteenth century, but was soon divided again. However, in the eighteenth century, it was once more reunited. In the years that followed, Burma frequently fought with its neighbors.

The British gain control. In 1824, while trying to gain more territory, Burma became involved in a war with Britain. By 1886 the British had gained control of all of Burma.

The British governed Burma as a province of India. In 1917, Britain promised that India would someday be self-governing, but did not make the same promise to Burma. Large numbers of Burmese objected strongly, and the British began to grant them more rights. Finally, in 1937

the British government separated Burma from India. Burma's new constitution gave the people more opportunities for self-government.

World War II helps bring independence to Burma. In 1942, Burma was invaded by the Japanese. To win the support of the people, Japan granted them independence. However, the Japanese really remained in control of the country.

When Japan was defeated and the British returned to Burma, they soon realized that the people would not be satisfied until their country was completely free. Conferences were held between the British and Burmese leaders, and on January 4, 1948, Burma became independent.

Rebels try to overthrow Burma's government. After independence, Communist rebels tried to overthrow the Burmese government. A large group of tribesmen called the Karens also rebelled against the government. There was so much fighting in the country that at times the army took over the government to restore order. Peace has now been established in Burma, but there is still unrest among rival political parties and among different groups of tribesmen.

Burma is neutral. Burma is friendly both to Communist nations such as China, and to democratic nations such as the United States. The Burmese government feels that this is the best way to guard the

Burmese soldiers on guard against Communist rebels. There have been several revolts in Burma since it became independent in 1948. Burma's government feels that the best way to maintain independence is to remain friendly both to Communist and democratic nations.



country's independence and help bring world peace.

GOVERNMENT

The Union of Burma is made up of six main divisions. In one of these, which is called Burma proper, most of the people speak Burmese. There are also four frontier states and a special division, which are inhabited by various tribesmen.

Burma's constitution provides for a parliament to make the country's laws and to elect the president. It also provides for a premier. However, since March, 1962, the constitution has been temporarily put aside. The government is now being run by a Revolutionary Council controlled by the military.

EDUCATION

About 60 percent of the people in Burma can read and write. Most of the children attend Buddhist monastery schools. Others go to private or government schools. The government is trying to build enough schools so that all children may receive an education. It has also established village education centers where adults may learn to read and write. There are two universities, and several teacher-training colleges and technical institutes in Burma.

Address: Embassy of Burma
2300 S Street, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20008

Village schoolchildren in Burma. Most of the children in Burma attend schools maintained by Buddhist monasteries. The government is trying to establish more schools and education centers so that everyone in Burma can learn to read and write.



22 Thailand



Facts About Thailand

Area: 198,455 square miles.

Population: About 29,700,000.

Capital and Largest City: Bangkok (population including suburbs about 1,800,000).

Literacy: About 70 percent of Thailand's people can read and write.

Main Religion: Buddhism.

Main Occupation: More than 80 percent of Thailand's workers earn their living by farming.

Income: According to the government of Thailand, the average yearly per capita income is about \$100. Although most people in Thailand do not have much money to spend, they usually grow enough food for their own needs. At village markets, they exchange extra crops and handmade articles.

Important Farm Products: More than 60 percent of the farmland in Thailand is planted in rice. Other important farm products are cotton, sugarcane, tobacco, castor seed, corn, rubber, and livestock.

Natural Resources: Teak trees, tin, and tungsten.

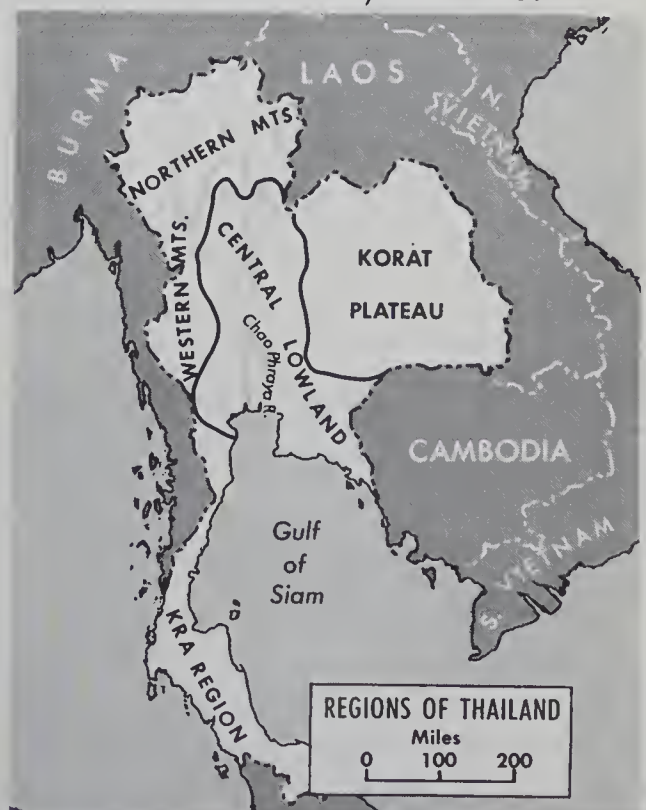
Manufacturing: About 2 percent of the workers in Thailand earn their living in manufacturing. Rice milling is the main branch of industry. There are also sawmills, sugar mills, textile mills, and a tin smelter. Handicrafts are carried on in workshops and at home.

Currency: Thailand's unit of money is the *baht*. Twenty *baht* are officially worth about \$1.00.

Malaya. To the west is Burma, and to the east are Laos and Cambodia.

Thailand may be divided into four main regions. (See map below.) In the north and west is a region of mountains. In the northeast is a tableland called the Korat Plateau. Between the mountains and the plateau is the Central Lowland, where most of Thailand's people live. This region is formed of the valleys of the Chao Phraya and several other rivers. The part of the Central Lowland near the coast is called the Delta. Thailand's fourth region, the Kra Region, stretches southward into the Malay Peninsula.

Thailand. Most of this country is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. The rest is on the Malay Peninsula.



GEOGRAPHY

Land. Thailand is about the size of France. Most of the country is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. The southern part, however, stretches like a long, curving handle into the Malay Peninsula. Thailand's neighbor on the south is

Region	Land Features	Rainfall
Central Lowland	Area of river plains. Flat delta near coast; rolling hills in north.	Much of the region receives between 40 and 80 inches of rain a year.
Northern and Western Mountains	Forested ranges running from north to south, cut by narrow valleys.	Higher mountains receive as much as 120 inches of rain a year.
Korat Plateau	Forested tableland bordered by low mountains on south and west, Mekong River on north and east. Has flat-topped ridges between wide valleys.	Most of plateau receives less than 60 inches of rain a year. Higher edges receive as much as 120 inches.
Kra Region	Part of Malay Peninsula. Has forested mountains bordered by small coastal plains.	Most of the region has more than 80 inches of rain a year.

Climate. The temperature seldom falls below sixty-five degrees in Thailand, except in the northern highlands. In most of the country the rainy season lasts from May to October. From October to February the weather is cool and dry. This is followed by hot, dry weather, which lasts until the rains begin again.

Irrigating rice fields. Rice is grown on more than 60 percent of the farmland in Thailand. It is the country's main export product.



Natural resources. About 60 percent of the land in Thailand is covered with forests. Teak trees grow on the rainy hillsides and mountain slopes of northern and western Thailand. Teak is the country's main forest export. Another important export is tin, which is mined in the Kra Region of Thailand. Tungsten is also mined in the Kra Region. Precious stones and some coal are obtained from the mountains.

People. About 80 percent of the people in Thailand are Thai. Most of them are lowland farmers. The Chinese are the largest group of non-Thai people in the country. The next largest group is made up of Malays, who live mainly in the Kra Region. There are also Cambodians and Indians in Thailand. In addition, there are

Region	Farmlands	Products
Central Lowland	The best farmland in this region is in the Delta. Rivers here overflow in the rainy season and flood the fields.	The Delta is Thailand's main rice-exporting area.
Northern and Western Mountains	Permanent farms in the valleys. Temporary forest clearings in the mountains.	The main export is teak. Rice and other crops are raised for food. Some coal is mined.
Korat Plateau	Farms are located in the valleys. This region has poor soil. In the dry season there is too little water for farming.	Pigs, cattle, and water buffalo are raised here and sold in the Delta. Rice is the main food crop.
Kra Region	There are farms on the small coastal plains.	Rubber, coconuts, tin, tungsten, and dried fish are produced for export. Rice is raised for food.



Farmers in Thailand usually own their own land. More than 80 percent of the workers in Thailand earn their living by farming. Although they often use primitive farming methods, farmers here make a better living than most other Southeast Asian farmers.

several small tribes of non-Thai people in the mountain regions.

More than 90 percent of Thailand's people follow the Buddhist religion. The Malays of the Kra Region are Moslems.

Earning a living. More than 80 percent of the workers in Thailand earn their living by farming. Most of these people own the farms on which they work. They make a better living than most farmers in the rest of Southeast Asia. However, in parts of the Central Lowland there are many poorer farmers who rent land from wealthy landowners.

Thailand has less industry than some of the other countries in Southeast Asia. Only about 2 percent of the workers in

Thailand earn their living in manufacturing. Most of the factories are in Bangkok. Fishing, lumbering, and mining provide jobs for other people in Thailand.

Transportation and communication. Rivers and canals are the most important means of transportation in the lowlands of Thailand. There are more than 6,000 miles of roads in the country, but many of these are unsuitable for all-weather use.

Thailand has about 2,200 miles of railroads. Trains travel between Bangkok and other parts of the country. Bangkok is also connected by rail to Phnom Penh, Kuala Lumpur, and Singapore.

The Thai Airways Company schedules flights to important towns in Thailand,

while Thai International Airways provides plane service between Bangkok and several other large cities in Asia. Many foreign airlines schedule international flights to and from Bangkok also. This city is the most important airways center in Southeast Asia.

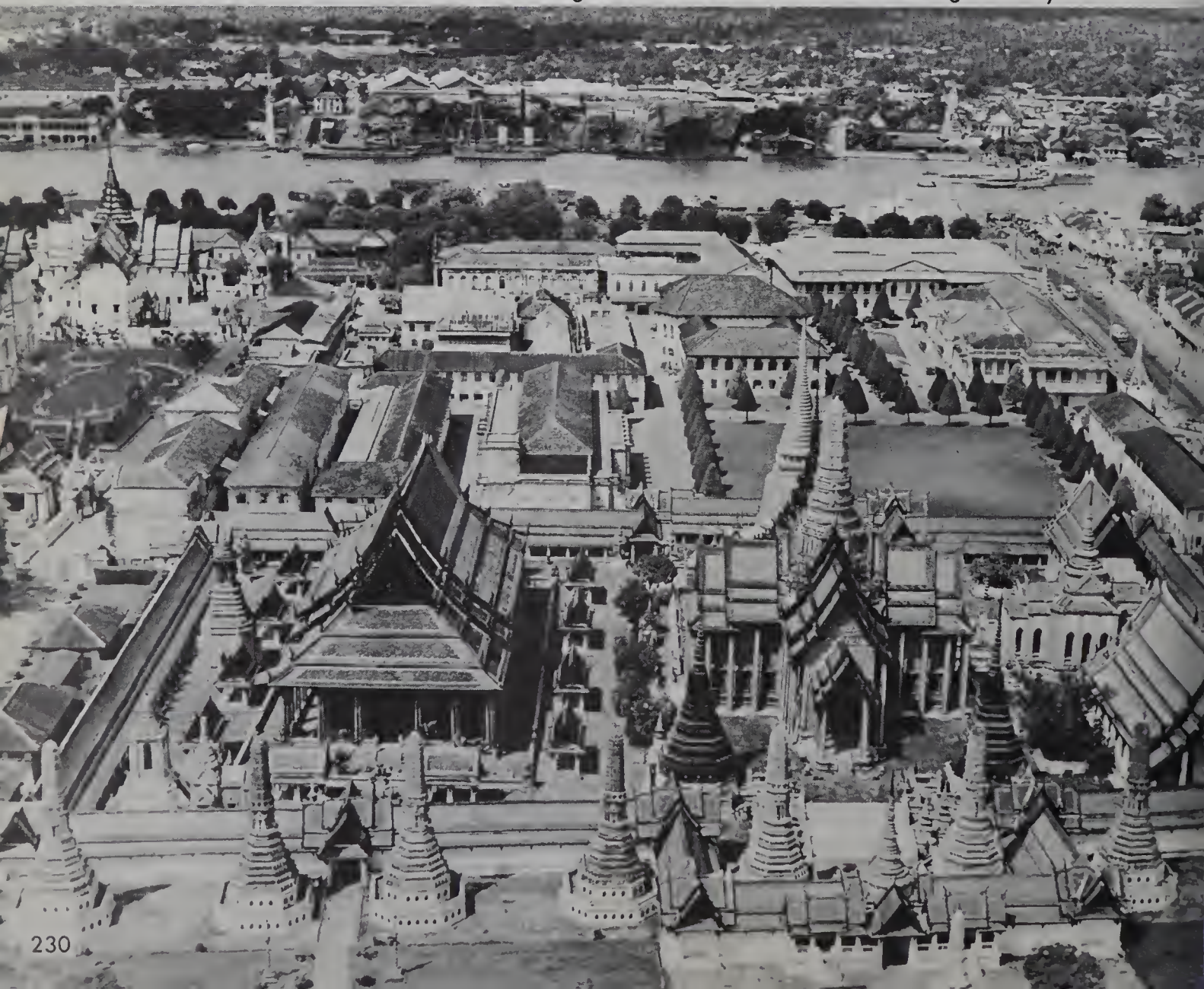
Thailand has a network of government-owned radio stations. There are two television stations in Bangkok. Most of the telephones in Thailand are also in or near Bangkok. The different parts of the country are connected by mail service and telegraph.

Cities. Bangkok and its suburbs form Thailand's largest metropolitan area.

Bangkok (population including suburbs about 1,800,000) is the capital and the main port and manufacturing city of Thailand. It is located on the Delta, along the banks of the Chao Phraya. Hundreds of canals called klongs branch off the river and cut through the city. On some of the waterways are floating markets where housewives may buy fish, vegetables, and other goods.

There are hundreds of beautiful religious buildings in Bangkok. One of the most interesting is the Temple of the Emerald Buddha, which is located inside the walls that surround the Royal Palace. This temple contains a statue of Buddha

The Temple of the Emerald Buddha is located in Bangkok, Thailand's capital and largest city. Bangkok is built along the banks of the Chao Phraya, the chief river in Thailand. Hundreds of canals called klongs branch off the river and cut through the city.





Ruins at Ayuthia. This city, founded in the fourteenth century, became the capital of a nation known as Siam. After Ayuthia was destroyed by Burmese forces during the eighteenth century, a new capital was established at Bangkok. Siam is now called Thailand.

about two feet high, carved from a single green stone.

Bangkok has wide, tree-lined boulevards and narrow alleys. The busiest thoroughfare is called New Road. There are large government buildings, hotels, and banks, as well as little stores where goods such as incense and jade are sold. Bangkok also has several big parks where crowds of people come to enjoy themselves.

Chiang Mai (population 65,000) is the second most important city in Thailand. It is the capital of Chiang Mai Province and is located at the end of the railroad that connects Bangkok to the northern mountains. Chiang Mai is built on both sides of the Ping River. On one side is the

old walled city, which was built in the eighteenth century. On the other side is the modern part of Chiang Mai, which grew up around the railroad station. Chiang Mai is an important trading city for teak and other forest products. Craftsmen in the city weave silk and make pottery, lacquer ware, and silverware.

HISTORY

Early history. In the thirteenth century, groups of people called the Thai moved from southern China into the valley of the Chao Phraya. They established several different kingdoms. In 1350, one Thai king founded the city of Ayuthia. The powerful nation that grew up around this capital city came to be known as Siam.

During the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, Siam gained control of most of the river lowlands.

Siam had frequent wars with its neighbors. In 1767 it was conquered by Burma, and the city of Ayuthia was destroyed. The Siamese regained their independence a short time later, and a new capital was established at Bangkok.

Siam keeps its independence. Western traders began coming to Siam in the early part of the sixteenth century. The Portuguese came first, followed by the British, French, Dutch, and Americans. The British and French succeeded in gaining control of most of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Neither wanted the other to gain control of Siam, however, so in 1896 they signed an agreement guaranteeing its independence.

The wisdom of two great Siamese rulers also helped the country remain independent. King Mongkut, who came to the throne in 1851, made trading treaties with many foreign countries and invited European experts to help modernize his government. King Chulalongkorn, his son, abolished slavery, started a public education system, and brought other modern ways to the country.

Siam becomes a constitutional monarchy. Until 1932, the kings of Siam ruled exactly as they pleased. On June 24, 1932, several Siamese leaders who had been educated in Europe led a revolt against the government. Three days later, the King agreed to rule according to a constitution. Siam's name was later changed to Thailand.

World War II. In 1941 the Japanese invaded Thailand. The Thai government leaders realized that their country was helpless, so they cooperated with the Japanese. Although Thailand officially declared war on the Allies, several Thai leaders secretly assisted them. After the

Japanese were defeated, Thailand worked hard to regain the trust and respect of the Allies.

Thailand is anti-Communist. Thailand is a member of SEATO, an alliance that was formed to stop the spread of communism in Southeast Asia and the Southwest Pacific. In 1962, when Communist rebels threatened to overrun the neighboring country of Laos, the Thai government asked the United States to send troops to safeguard Thailand's freedom. Later, when Thailand no longer seemed in such great danger, most of these troops were withdrawn.

GOVERNMENT

In 1932, Thailand's King agreed to rule according to a constitution that would provide the people with greater opportunities for self-government. Since that time, Thailand has had several constitutions, and for many years the army

King Bhumibol (left) is the constitutional head of Thailand's government. However, the premier holds most of the power.





A school for boys. About half of the primary schools in Thailand are conducted in Buddhist wats. There are not enough secondary schools for all the children who wish to attend, but more are being built. About 70 percent of the people in Thailand can read and write.

has used its power to put the leaders it wants into office. However, none of these changes has affected the daily lives of the people very much.

The head of Thailand's government is the king, who is greatly respected by the people. However, the leader who holds most of the power is the premier. He is usually an army officer. Until recently, the main lawmaking body was the People's Assembly. Half the members of this group were elected and half were appointed. The army officer who became premier in 1958 dismissed the Assembly. A new assembly has been appointed that is made up mainly of military men. It is writing a new constitution.

Thailand is divided into seventy-one provinces that have governors responsible

to the central government. Villages in the provinces elect their own headmen.

EDUCATION

About 70 percent of the people in Thailand can read and write. Children are required by law to go to school through the fourth grade. About half of the primary schools are conducted in Buddhist wats, or temple compounds. There are not enough secondary schools for all the children who wish to attend, but more are being built. Thailand has a large number of vocational and technical schools, and about forty teacher-training colleges. There are also five universities in Bangkok.

Address: Embassy of Thailand
2300 Kalorama Road N.W.
Washington, D. C. 20008



23 Cambodia

Facts About Cambodia

Area: 69,898 square miles.

Population: About 5,900,000.

Capital and Largest City: Phnom Penh (population 403,500).

Literacy: According to the Cambodian government, about three fourths of the people can read and write.

Main Religion: Buddhism.

Main Occupation: Eighty percent of the workers earn their living in farming.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$100. Although most Cambodians have little money to spend, they usually grow enough food for their needs. At village markets, the people trade or sell extra food and handmade articles in order to obtain other things they want.

Important Farm Products: More than four fifths of the cropland is planted in rice. Other important farm products are rubber, corn, palm sugar, tobacco, soybeans, peanuts, pepper, vegetables, and livestock.

Natural Resources: Fisheries, forests, clay, salt, phosphates, gold, limestone, coal, iron, and gemstones such as sapphires and rubies.

Manufacturing: About 2 percent of Cambodia's workers are employed in industry. The main kinds of manufacturing are handicrafts and rice milling.

Currency: Cambodia's unit of money is the *riel*. About thirty-five *riel* are officially worth \$1.00.

GEOGRAPHY

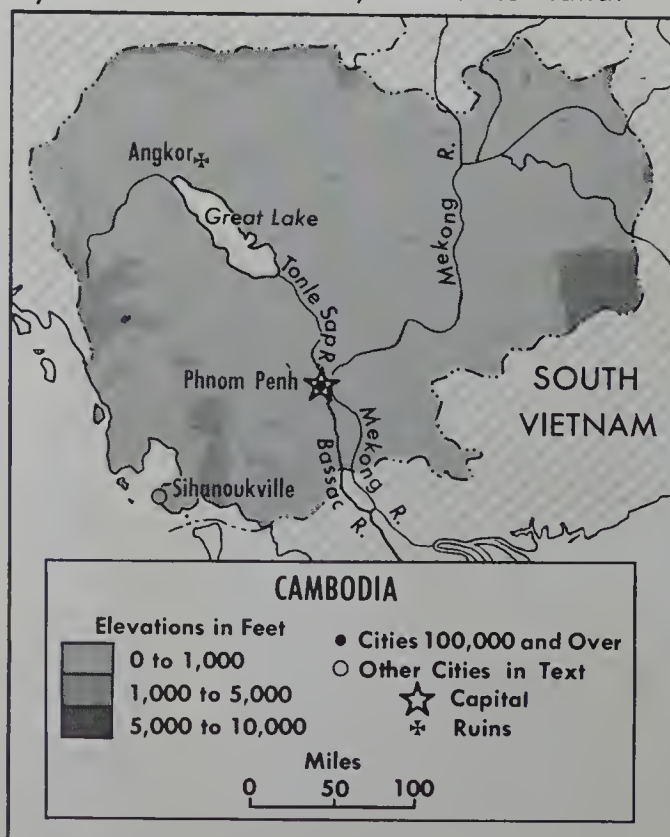
Land. Cambodia, which is about the size of Missouri, is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Its neighbors to the north and west are Laos and Thailand. To the southeast is South Vietnam, and to the southwest is the Gulf of Siam.

About three fourths of Cambodia consists of a broad, central lowland. In this

lowland is the Great Lake. (See map below.) During the dry season this lake covers about one thousand square miles and is very shallow, but during the rainy season it is about four times as large and much deeper. The central plain of Cambodia is bordered on the east, north, and southwest by forested highlands.

The Mekong River and several of its branches flow through the eastern part of Cambodia. This river system and the Great Lake flood much of the central lowland during the rainy season. Each year, their floodwaters deposit a layer of silt over the countryside, which enriches the land.

Cambodia is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. About three fourths of the country consists of a broad, central lowland.





Farming is the leading occupation in Cambodia. Most farmers have small farms of their own and raise rice as their main crop. The main farmlands in the country are in the central lowlands.

Climate. The weather in Cambodia is warm throughout the year. The rainy season lasts from June through November, and the dry season from December through May.

Region	Land Features	Rainfall
Central Lowland	Most of region consists of level plains covered with scrubby trees and grass. Around the Great Lake are swamp forests.	Receives less than 60 inches of rain a year.
Highlands	Low mountains along northern border and in southwest. Hilly plateau in the east.	Although much of region receives 60 to 80 inches of rain a year, parts receive more than 80.

Natural resources. Cambodia has the largest fresh-water fisheries of any country in Southeast Asia. About half of Cambodia's yearly catch of fish comes from the Great Lake. Forests cover about one half the land in Cambodia. More than one third of this forested land consists of rain-forests. Cambodia has deposits of clay, salt, phosphates, and several other minerals. Very little mining is carried on, however.

People. Cambodia is one of the most thinly populated countries in Southeast Asia. Nearly 90 percent of the people are Cambodians, also called Khmers. They live mainly in farm villages in the lowlands. The two next largest groups are the Vietnamese and the Chinese, who also live in the lowlands. Most of them live in cities or large villages. In addition, there are

several primitive hill tribes and about five thousand Westerners in Cambodia.

Nearly all of the people are Buddhists. Roman Catholics make up the next largest religious group. The hill tribes practice animism.

The national language of Cambodia is Khmer, but other languages are also used. When people bargain in the marketplaces they often speak Vietnamese or Chinese, instead of Khmer. Most government officials and other professional people speak French.

Earning a living. Farming is the main occupation in Cambodia. Most farmers have small farms of their own and raise rice as the main crop. They usually spend part of their time as fishermen. Many of the full-time fishermen in Cambodia are

Region	Farmlands	Products
Central Lowland	Best farming region in Cambodia. Much of the land has been cleared in recent years.	Rice, rubber, cotton, tobacco, kapok, corn, palm sugar, peanuts, soybeans, livestock, fish.
Highlands	Some farming in temporary forest clearings. Small pepper and tea plantations on slopes facing Gulf of Siam.	Dry rice, corn, cassava, cotton, sesamum, beans, pepper, tea, forest products, minerals.

Vietnamese who live around the margins of the Great Lake. About three fifths of the workers on rubber plantations are also Vietnamese. Rubber plantations are usually owned by French companies.

Cambodian villagers usually live in houses built on posts. This offers protection against flooding during the rainy season and helps to keep out insects and small creeping animals that are common in tropical areas. During the dry season, the space under the house is used for storage.





Phnom Penh is Cambodia's capital and main industrial city. Located at the junction of the Mekong and two other rivers, Phnom Penh is an important river port. Nearly half of the people who live here are either Chinese or Vietnamese.

More than ten thousand workers in Cambodia have jobs in modern factories. Others earn their living as craftsmen, soldiers, government workers, teachers, or businessmen. Most of the businesses are owned by Chinese.

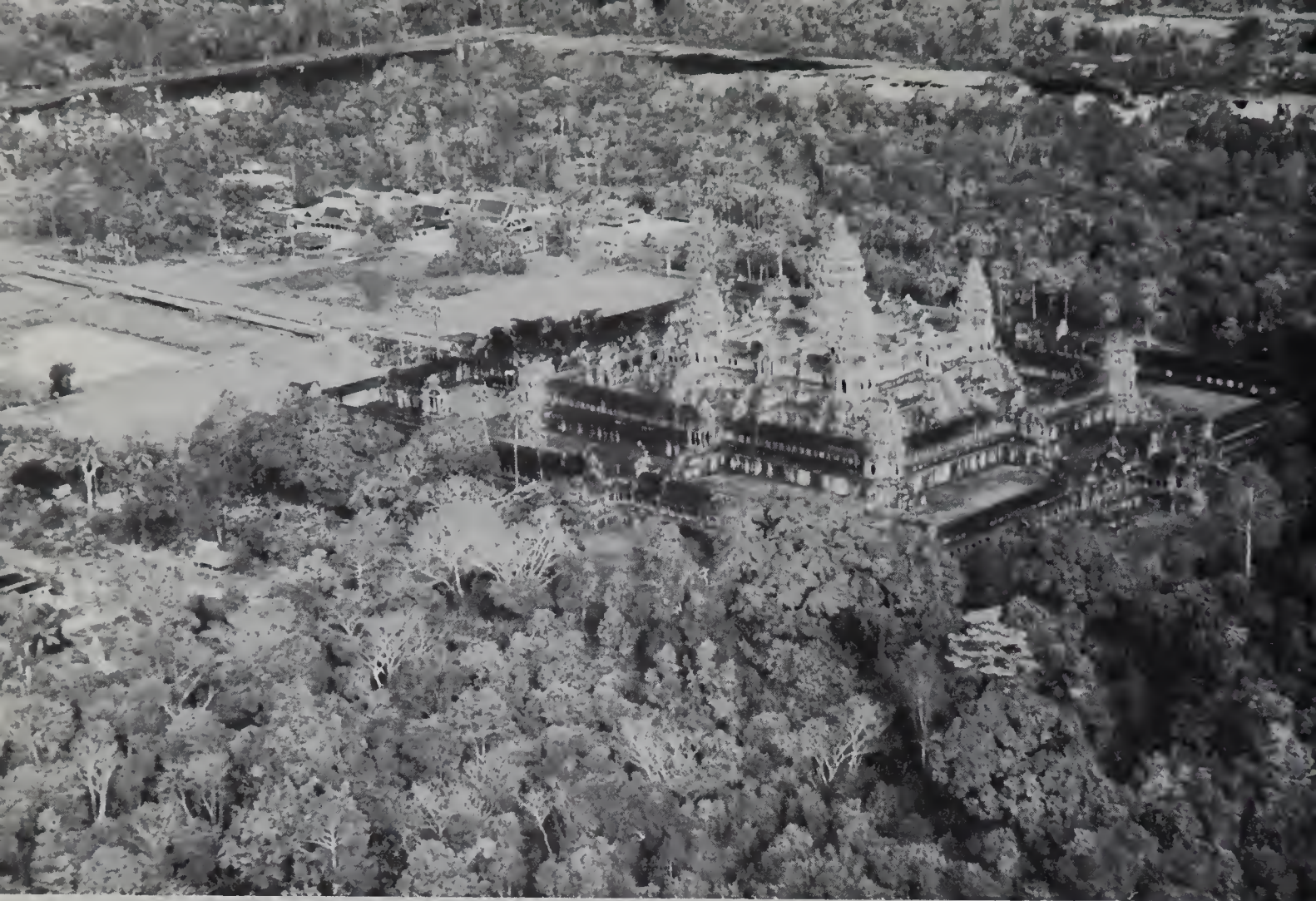
Transportation and communication. Water travel is the most important kind of transportation in Cambodia. The Mekong River is the main water highway, and Phnom Penh is the chief river port. South Vietnam permits Cambodian ships to use the part of the Mekong that flows between the border and the sea. (See map on page 90.) Cambodia also has a new seaport, Sihanoukville, on the Gulf of Siam. This

port, built with French aid, was opened in 1960.

Sihanoukville is connected to Phnom Penh by the Khmer-American Friendship Highway, which was built with American aid. Altogether, Cambodia has about 2,200 miles of all-weather roads.

The only railroad in Cambodia is the 240-mile line that connects Phnom Penh with Thailand. However, another railroad is being built to connect the capital, Phnom Penh, with the port city of Sihanoukville.

Cambodia's main international airport is at Phnom Penh. An airport located near the ruins of Angkor may also be used by planes on international flights. Several



Angkor Wat is a magnificent stone temple that was built by the Khmers in the twelfth century. It is located in northwestern Cambodia, near the Great Lake. Neglected for many years, the Angkor Wat ruins are now being restored.

smaller airfields are used only by planes making flights within the country.

Cambodia's radio stations, as well as most of the country's telephones, are in Phnom Penh. There is one television station in Cambodia. The larger urban areas are connected by radiotelephone and telegraph.

Cities. Cambodia has only one real city. This is Phnom Penh, the capital. Most of the large towns are located in the lowlands.

Phnom Penh (population about 403,500) is located in southern Cambodia at the junction of the Mekong and two other rivers. (See map on page 234.) It is Cambodia's main port and manufacturing city. In Phnom Penh there are rice mills, sawmills, and factories that make goods such as matches, textiles, and soft drinks.

There is also an automobile assembly plant. Nearly half the people who live in Phnom Penh are either Chinese or Vietnamese.

In the northern part of Phnom Penh is a hill crowned with a large Buddhist temple. The modern section of the city, with European-style buildings, is located near this hill. The Chinese and Vietnamese business section is in the center of the city. To the south is the large Royal Palace with its golden roofs. Phnom Penh has pleasant, tree-shaded streets. Many new buildings are being constructed in the city.

HISTORY

Early history. In the second century, a kingdom known as Funan was located in the area that is now Cambodia. Funan's rulers were powerful enough to control

several neighboring kingdoms. One of these, located north of Funan, was inhabited by people called the Khmers. In the sixth century, the Khmers rebelled and gained control of Funan. Then they extended their rule to other parts of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. Chapter 10 tells about the great empire that the Khmers established.

The Khmers lost their power in the fifteenth century. Soon all that remained of their vast empire was Cambodia. For many years two neighboring countries, Siam and Vietnam, struggled with each other for control of Cambodia.

The French gain control. In the nineteenth century, the French became interested in obtaining colonies in Southeast Asia. The first country they attacked was Vietnam. Cambodia, tired of being controlled by its neighbors, decided to become an ally of France. In 1863, Cambodia became a French protectorate. The King was allowed to keep his throne but he had no real power. Later, Cambodia became a part of French Indochina, which also included Laos and Vietnam. (See top map on page 124.)

Cambodia regains its independence. World War II brought changes to Cambodia. During the war, French Indochina was occupied by the Japanese. When the Japanese were close to defeat, they permitted Cambodia and the other states of Indochina to declare independence. However, the Japanese remained in control.

After Japan was defeated in 1945, the French returned to Indochina. The Cambodians persuaded France to grant them self-government within the French Union*, but did not succeed in obtaining full independence. Later, however, when France was trying to put down a violent

rebellion in North Vietnam, the Cambodians were more successful. Treaties that were signed in 1953 and 1954 finally made Cambodia an independent nation.

Cambodia's King gives up his throne and founds a political party. The Cambodians had no experience in governing themselves. There was much disagreement between rival political parties after the country won its independence. In 1955, King Sihanouk of Cambodia gave up his throne and helped to establish a new political party. His party has filled all seats in the National Assembly since the elections in 1955.

Cambodia is neutral. Prince Sihanouk maintains a position of neutrality in the Cold War. However, he leans much closer toward the Communists than toward the West. This is partly because, for historic reasons, he distrusts the intentions of Thailand and South Vietnam. Both of these nations are allied with the West. Also, South Vietnamese patrols, in some cases accompanied by American advisors, have pursued Communist guerrillas into Cambodian territory on several occasions. For these and other reasons, the government of Cambodia announced in 1963 that it would no longer accept American aid. Cambodian embassies in Washington, London, and a number of other Western capitals were closed down.

GOVERNMENT

Cambodia is a constitutional monarchy, but it has no king. In 1955, King Sihanouk, who had been crowned in 1941, gave back the crown to his father and became the leader of a new political party. When his father died, in 1960, Prince Sihanouk chose not to become king again. Instead, he was elected chief of state. Sihanouk has been so popular and so powerful that he has been able to run the

* See glossary



The office of a village mayor. The chief official in every Cambodian city and village is the mayor. Each mayor is elected from two or three candidates nominated by the community's council.

country as he wished. Criticism of his policies has increased in recent years, but he is still in complete control of the nation.

Cambodia's main lawmaking body, which is called Parliament, does as Prince Sihanouk wishes. Parliament consists of the Council of the Kingdom, which is partly appointed and partly elected, and the National Assembly, which is elected. As explained earlier, the National Assembly has been dominated by the political party formed by Sihanouk. The premier and the cabinet are also hand-picked by the Prince.

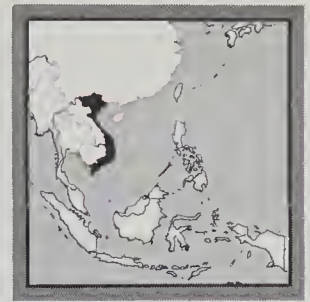
Cambodia is divided into seventeen provinces whose main government officials are responsible to the central gov-

ernment. The chief official in each city and village is the mayor. Each mayor is elected from two or three candidates nominated by the community's council.

EDUCATION

The Cambodian government estimates that about three fourths of the people in Cambodia can read and write. Children may receive their primary education in schools conducted in Buddhist temples, which are directed by the state, or in regular public schools. Cambodia has 3,533 primary schools and 164 secondary schools. There are also a number of colleges, technical institutes, and teacher-training schools. The Royal Khmer University was established in 1959.

24 Vietnam



A DIVIDED COUNTRY

Since 1954, Vietnam has been divided into two parts, North Vietnam and South Vietnam. (See map on this page.) The history of Vietnam explains why this division took place.

Early history. About 2,200 years ago, a kingdom called Nam Viet was established in the northern part of present-day Vietnam. In 111 B.C., this kingdom was taken over by China. For more than a thousand years it was governed as a Chinese province. During this period, the Vietnamese people adopted many Chinese customs.

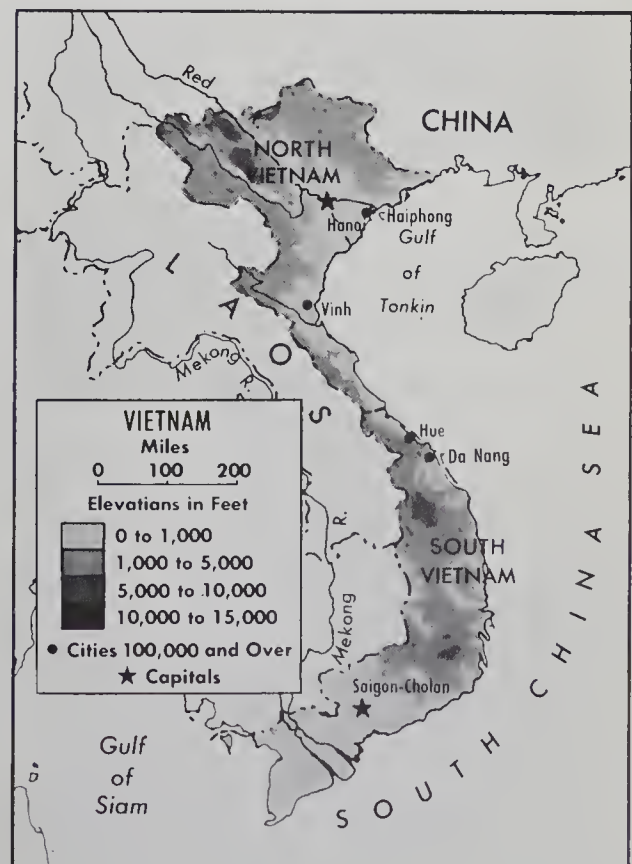
In A.D. 939, Vietnam gained its independence and soon began to conquer neighboring territories to the south. By the eighteenth century, Vietnamese control extended southward into the delta of the Mekong River. Vietnam, or Annam as it was then called, was ruled by an emperor. However, the real power in the country was held by two rival families. One controlled northern Vietnam, and the other was powerful in the south. During the time these two families were in power, traders and missionaries from several European countries came to Vietnam.

The French gain control. At the beginning of the nineteenth century, a young prince from one of Vietnam's rival ruling families succeeded, with French aid, in uniting the country under his rule. During his lifetime, Vietnam maintained friendly relations with France. After his death, however, this policy changed. In the years that followed, foreign missionaries and

native Christians in Vietnam suffered persecution. This course of action was unwise on the part of the Vietnamese, for the French were looking for an excuse to take over territory in this part of Southeast Asia. By 1883, all of Vietnam was under French control. Later, it became a part of French Indochina, which also included Laos and Cambodia.

The Vietnamese work for independence. During the early part of the twentieth century, many people in Vietnam began to work for independence. One of the independence leaders, Ho Chi Minh, spent

Vietnam has been divided into two parts since 1954. This country borders the eastern coast of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula.



several years in France. While there, he became one of the first members of the French Communist Party. He also studied communism in Moscow. In 1925, Ho Chi Minh formed a revolutionary organization in Indochina.

During World War II, the Japanese occupied Vietnam and the rest of French Indochina, but this did not stop Vietnam's struggle for independence. In 1941, Ho Chi Minh united several different groups that had been working for independence, to form the Vietnamese Independence League, or Vietminh. The main leaders of this organization were Communists. By 1945, the Vietminh, with about ten thousand armed soldiers at its command, exercised considerable power in part of northern Vietnam. Other independence organizations challenged the Vietminh, but never became as powerful.

Near the end of the war, Japan granted independence to the countries in Indochina. The Japanese, however, remained in actual control of this area. When the Japanese surrendered, the Vietminh quickly took over the government of Vietnam and declared the country to be fully independent.

Vietminh prisoners and French soldiers. After several years of warfare, the Communist Vietminh gained control of northern Vietnam.



The French fight to keep their colony.

France did not want to recognize the independence of Vietnam or any other part of Indochina. Soon after the Vietminh took over, fighting broke out between the French and the Vietnamese in southern Vietnam. In 1946, France and Vietnam tried to reach an agreement that would satisfy both sides. However, this was not possible. The Vietnamese would not be satisfied unless they received complete independence, and the French would not give up their colony. Soon, war broke out again.

The Communist Vietminh led the fight for independence. In 1950, it began to receive help from Communist China. The United States agreed to help the French. As the struggle continued, people were afraid that another world war would result.

Vietnam is divided. In 1954, a conference was held in Geneva, Switzerland, to find a way to end the fighting in Vietnam and other parts of Indochina. (See Chapter 25.) In the agreements reached during this conference, Vietnam was divided near the 17th parallel. The northern part of the country was to be controlled by the Vietminh, and the southern part by France. Elections were supposed to be held within two years after the agreements were signed, giving the people an opportunity to choose a government for all of Vietnam. However, these elections were never held. The country remained divided, with two governments.

South Vietnam. After the Geneva Agreements were signed, the United States persuaded the French to grant South Vietnam more self-government. An anti-Communist named Ngo Dinh Diem became the first premier of South Vietnam's new government.

Facts About South Vietnam

Area: 66,280 square miles.

Population: About 15,500,000.

Capital: Saigon (population, with Cholon, about 1,500,000).

Literacy: The South Vietnamese government reports that about 90 percent of the people can read and write.

Main Religions: Buddhism, Taoism, Confucianism, Christianity, Caodaism, and Hoa Hao. Animism and ancestor worship are also practiced.

Main Occupation: About three fourths of the working people earn their living in agriculture.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$153. Although South Vietnam's people have little money to spend, they raise most of the food they need. They exchange extra food and handmade articles at village markets.

Important Farm Products: In normal times, rice and rubber are the main exports. Rice is also the main food crop. Other important farm products are corn, copra, sugarcane, tobacco, cassava, peanuts, pepper, and sweet potatoes.

Natural Resources: Forests, fisheries, water-power, gold, molybdenum, phosphates, and some low-grade coal.

Manufacturing: South Vietnam has little modern industry. However, there is an increasing number of factories that produce cloth, matches, soap, or other goods. Handicrafts and the processing of farm and forest products are important.

Currency: South Vietnam's unit of money is the *piastre*. About 73 *piastre* are officially worth \$1.00.

Diem faced many problems during his first year in office. He had to gain the support of the South Vietnamese army when the general in command wanted to overthrow the government. Diem also had to put down the armies of two powerful religious sects, the Cao Dai and the Hoa Hao, which had refused to obey government authority.

To make matters even more difficult, Diem's government had to help find homes and jobs for more than one million

refugees who had fled southward from Communist North Vietnam. Most of these people were Roman Catholics who feared that they would not be allowed freedom of worship under communism. The refugees had been forced to leave almost everything behind when they left their homes. Diem helped to establish villages in which many refugees found new homes.

In 1955, South Vietnam gained independence, and Diem became the first president. The Communists in North Vietnam were determined to gain control

Facts About North Vietnam

Area: 60,156 square miles.

Population: About 17,300,000.

Capital: Hanoi (population 643,576).

Literacy: The North Vietnamese government reports that nearly all the people can read and write.

Main Religions: Buddhism, Taoism, Confucianism, and Christianity. Animism and ancestor worship are also practiced.

Main Occupation: About three fourths of the working people earn their living in agriculture.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$85. North Vietnam has a lower standard of living than South Vietnam. Its farmlands are more crowded, and the government takes over much of what the farmers raise, at a low price.

Important Farm Products: Rice is the main crop. Other farm products are sugarcane, corn, cotton, tea, coffee, tobacco, castor oil, and sweet potatoes and other vegetables. Mulberry leaves are also raised as food for silkworms.

Natural Resources: Coal, phosphates, salt, tin, chromite, iron, zinc, tungsten, manganese, forests, fisheries, and waterpower.

Manufacturing: Although other Communist countries have helped the government build more factories, North Vietnam does not as yet have enough modern industry. Handicrafts are still important.

Currency: North Vietnam's unit of money is the *dong*. One *dong* is officially worth about 28 cents.

of the new country. Communist raiding bands, known as Viet Cong, killed many South Vietnamese and caused much disorder. The United States sent military advisors as well as money and equipment to South Vietnam to help the people there maintain their independence.

President Diem felt strongly that he was the leader best qualified to defend the country against communism. For this reason, he permitted no real opposition to his regime. Elections were carefully controlled, and important government positions were filled by his trusted friends and relatives.

Diem's repressive measures caused much discontent in South Vietnam. In November, 1963, Diem's government was overthrown by a group of military lead-

ers, and he was assassinated. Since then a number of different leaders have tried to bring stability to South Vietnam.

The Communists of North Vietnam did not cease trying to take over South Vietnam during this period of disorder. By 1964, regular North Vietnamese army troops were reported to be fighting along with the Viet Cong in South Vietnam. The United States has met the continued challenge of the Communists by greatly expanding both its economic and military assistance to the South Vietnamese government and people.

North Vietnam. Today North Vietnam is completely under Communist control. During the past few years, it has received military and economic aid from both Communist China and the Soviet Union.

A highland village in Vietnam. Between the Mekong and Red River deltas is a chain of high, forested plateaus, with steep slopes that face the sea. Parts of this highland area receive more than 160 inches of rainfall a year.



GEOGRAPHY

Land. The long, narrow country of Vietnam extends along the eastern coast of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. It is divided almost equally into two political sections, North Vietnam and South Vietnam. (See map on page 241.) The South China Sea borders Vietnam on the east and on the south. To the north is China, and to the west are Laos and Cambodia.

There are rugged highlands and fertile river lowlands in Vietnam. The most important lowlands are the Red River Delta in North Vietnam and the Mekong River Delta in South Vietnam. Along the coast between these two deltas are many small plains. The highlands of Vietnam are located behind these small plains and in the northern part of the country.

Climate. Vietnam is more than one thousand miles long, and its climate differs considerably from north to south. In the south, the weather is warm throughout the year. In the north, winter temperatures are about twenty degrees cooler than summer temperatures. However, except in the highlands, winters in the north are warm enough for crops to grow. Although the average yearly rainfall in Vietnam is heavy, the amount differs from year to year, especially in the north. Sometimes there is too much or too little rain, and crops fail.

Natural resources. Most of the known mineral resources in Vietnam are in the northern part of the country. These include the best coal deposits in Southeast Asia. The valuable mines that the French developed in northern Vietnam were taken over by the Communists when Vietnam was divided. The South Vietnamese are now working to increase mineral production in their part of the country.

Region	Land Features	Rainfall
Red River Delta	Large, almost flat lowland extending inland from the coast in northern Vietnam.	Most of region receives between 60 and 80 inches a year.
Mekong River Delta	Large, flat lowland occupying southern tip of Vietnam. Parts still covered with marshes or grassy plains.	Receives between 40 and 60 inches a year.
Central and Northern Highlands	Between the two deltas are high, forested plateaus with steep slopes facing the sea. In the north are rugged hills and mountains.	Parts of central highlands receive more than 160 inches a year. Northern highlands receive between 60 and 80 inches a year.
Small Coastal Plains	At foot of central highlands are little river plains that border the sea.	Rainfall decreases from more than 80 inches a year in north to less than 60 inches in the south.

About half of Vietnam is covered with forests. They provide firewood, timber, and small quantities of other forest products. Fisheries and waterpower are other important resources in Vietnam. Few hydroelectric plants have been constructed as yet, however.

People. More than 80 percent of the people in Vietnam are Vietnamese. They live mainly on the Red River and Mekong River deltas, and on the small coastal plains. Their language and customs have been strongly influenced by the Chinese.

There are also other groups of people in Vietnam. Primitive tribesmen live in the highlands. In the south are small groups of Chams, whose ancestors were conquered by the Vietnamese long ago. Among the foreigners in Vietnam are French people,



The interior of a Caodaist temple. The Cao Dai religion combines ideas from Christianity, Buddhism, and other faiths. Most Vietnamese are Buddhists, but they also believe in Confucianism and Taoism. There are also about two million Roman Catholics in South Vietnam.

Americans, Indians, Cambodians, and large numbers of Chinese.

Most Vietnamese are Buddhists who also believe in Taoism and Confucianism. These people also worship the spirits of their ancestors and national heroes. Christianity is another important religion. In South Vietnam alone, there are about two million Roman Catholics. Some Vietnamese belong to a religious sect called the Cao Dai, which combines ideas from Christianity, Buddhism, and other faiths. Others belong to the Hoa Hao sect, which follows a revised form of Buddhism. The hill tribesmen practice animism.

Earning a living. In South Vietnam, about three fourths of the workers earn their living by farming. The farming lowlands here are generally not as densely populated as in the north. Although usually only one crop a year is raised, in normal years South Vietnam produces more farm products than it can use, and sells some to other countries.

Formerly, 60 percent of the farmland in South Vietnam belonged to landlords, who rented it to tenant farmers. In 1955, however, the government started a land reform program that helped many tenant farmers obtain small farms of their own.

Region	Farmlands	Products
Red River Delta	Whole delta is covered with tiny farms. Crops are grown in winter as well as summer.	Rice, tea, corn, peanuts, mulberry, fish, coal.
Mekong River Delta	Less-crowded farmlands. Only one crop a year is grown. Main rice-exporting region.	Rice, coconuts, corn, sugarcane, cotton, pepper, fish.
Central and Northern Highlands	Except for plantations in highlands on northern border of Mekong Delta, little of the land is under permanent cultivation.	Dry rice, corn, rubber, tea, tobacco, pepper, sugarcane, sesamum, beans, opium poppies, some minerals and lumber.
Small Coastal Plains	Some of these plains are densely populated and carefully cultivated.	Rice, corn, tea, peanuts, mulberry, fish.

There was little modern industry in the southern part of Vietnam before the country was divided. Even today, only a small part of the working people in South Vietnam earn their living in factories. Most of the factories are in Saigon and Cholon. Although the government has been interested in developing more industry in South Vietnam, it has worked mainly to help the farmers.

In North Vietnam, farming is the most important occupation also. North Vietnam's farming lowlands are densely populated, and people cultivate their tiny farms carefully. Nearly all of the land is planted in rice.

After the Communists came to power in North Vietnam, farmland belonging to wealthy landowners was divided among people who had little or no farmland. Then the government announced plans that would one day establish government-controlled collective farms throughout

Farmland in the central highlands. There are few permanent farms in the highlands of Vietnam. The main farmlands are in the lowlands. In both North and South Vietnam farming is the most important occupation.



North Vietnam. The farmers rebelled against this government interference in their affairs, however, and the Communist leaders have had to implement their plans slowly.

North Vietnam has more industrial workers than South Vietnam. When the French controlled Vietnam, they established several factories in the northern part of the country. Now the government of North Vietnam, with the help of other Communist nations, is working to establish still more industry. To obtain money needed for new factories, the government is forcing farmers to deliver a large part of their harvest for export.

Transportation and communication. Water travel is very important in Vietnam. Waterways take the place of roads in

A peddler pushing a bicycle loaded with cooking pots along a road in Vietnam. Many of the roads in Vietnam were built by the French.



much of the Mekong Delta. In North Vietnam, the Red River and its several branches serve as the main transportation routes.

Land travel in much of Vietnam is difficult. When the French controlled this area, they built railroads in the Red River Delta and down the coast as far south as the Mekong Delta. They also constructed almost twenty thousand miles of roads. Both roads and railroads suffered serious damage during World War II and the fighting that followed. Later, extensive repairs were made. In South Vietnam, new roads were constructed between farming areas and markets. However, roads and railroads in both North and South Vietnam have again suffered a great deal of damage during the recent fighting between the Viet Cong and the United States-supported South Vietnamese armies.

In South Vietnam, an airline called Air Vietnam schedules flights from Saigon to other countries, as well as to several South Vietnamese cities. Foreign airlines also provide South Vietnam with international service. The main airfields in North Vietnam are located in the cities of Hanoi and Haiphong.

In South Vietnam, a government agency called the Post, Telephone, and Telegraph Directorate controls these forms of communication. The main radio station is in the city of Saigon. It broadcasts programs to many parts of South Vietnam by means of relay stations.

Cities. Vietnam has seven cities with populations of more than 100,000. The largest of these are Saigon, the capital of South Vietnam, and Hanoi, the capital of North Vietnam. (See map on page 136.)

Saigon is located on the Saigon River about fifty miles from the sea. It has a



The beautiful city of Saigon is South Vietnam's capital and largest city. Saigon and its large suburb Cholon together have a population of about 1,500,000. Most of South Vietnam's manufacturing plants are in the Saigon-Cholon area.

large suburb called Cholon, which was founded in 1778 by a group of Chinese immigrants. Together, Saigon and Cholon have a population of about 1,500,000. Most of the factories in South Vietnam are in the Saigon-Cholon area. (Compare maps on pages 136 and 173.) Although Saigon is an inland city, it is South Vietnam's most important port. Ocean-going ships travel to and from this city along the Saigon River.

Saigon is a very beautiful city. Trees shade the wide, paved avenues. Among the places of interest in the city are the gardens of Tao-Dan Park, the stately

presidential palace, and the elaborate pagodas built in honor of Vietnamese heroes.

Saigon's suburb Cholon has many canals that cut through the city. Many of the people here live in thatch-roofed houses built on stilts. Cholon is a leading rice-milling and rice-trading city.

Hanoi (population 643,576) is located about seventy-five miles from the sea, on the banks of the Red River. The city of Haiphong, which is closer to the sea, serves as Hanoi's port.

Hanoi is an important industrial city and railroad center. Like other large cities in Southeast Asia, it is a mixture of the old



Hanoi, the capital and largest city in North Vietnam, is an important industrial city. It is located on the banks of the Red River, about seventy-five miles inland, and is served by the port of Haiphong. Hanoi is connected by rail and air to Communist China.

and the new, and has both a modern section with European-style buildings, and an older section with temples, pagodas, and narrow, winding streets. Among the points of interest in Hanoi are the botanical gardens, the museums, and the pagoda of the Great Buddha.

GOVERNMENT

South Vietnam. Shortly after South Vietnam achieved independence, a constitution was adopted that provided for an elected president and an elected law-making assembly. Under President Diem, however, elections were closely controlled, and the country was not run in a democratic manner. (See page 244.) After Diem was overthrown in 1963, the constitution was suspended, and a provisional govern-

ment run by a Military Revolutionary Council was established. Since then, a number of military and civilian governments have held power for varying periods of time in South Vietnam.

North Vietnam. North Vietnam, called the Democratic Republic of Vietnam by the Communists, is governed in much the same way as the Soviet Union and Communist China. In all three, the government is controlled by the Communist Party.

The Communist Party of North Vietnam is called the Vietnamese Workers Party. Its leader, Ho Chi Minh, is president of North Vietnam. The Communist Party decides who should be elected to the lawmaking National Assembly and to all other government offices. Communist

Party workers in the villages spread government propaganda and report back to the government about the actions and attitudes of the people.

EDUCATION

When the French controlled Vietnam, only about 1 percent of the children attended school. Since 1954, the governments of both North Vietnam and South Vietnam have worked hard to provide more people with an opportunity for education.

North Vietnam has about 2,270,000 students attending primary school, which goes through the tenth grade, and about 49,600 students in middle technical schools. North Vietnam also has teacher-training schools, and a university at Hanoi. About 17,000 students attend these institutions of higher learning.

About 3,000 North Vietnamese young people are reported to be attending school in other Communist countries.

South Vietnam has about 1,600,000 students in primary and secondary schools, and about 4,300 in technical schools. Some of these young people continue their education at South Vietnam's teachers colleges. There are also three universities and three agricultural colleges.

In both North and South Vietnam, adults who never learned to read and write are now attending classes. The North Vietnamese report that in their part of the country, nearly everybody can read and write. In South Vietnam, about 90 percent of the people are literate, according to government figures.

Address: Embassy of South Vietnam
2251 R Street, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20008

An anatomy class in North Vietnam. The North and South Vietnamese governments are working to provide more people with an opportunity for education. About three thousand young people from North Vietnam are reported to be attending school in other Communist countries.





25 Laos

Facts About Laos

Area: 91,428 square miles.

Population: About 2,350,000.

Capital: Vientiane (population about 162,000) is the administrative capital.

Royal Residence: Luang Prabang (population about 45,000).

Literacy: About 20 percent of the people can read and write.

Main Religion: Buddhism. Animism is practiced along with this religion.

Main Occupation: More than 90 percent of the workers are farmers.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$50. Although most of the people in Laos have very little money, they usually grow or make the things they need. They exchange extra food and handmade articles at village markets.

Important Farm Products: More than 90 percent of the cropland is planted in rice. Corn, coffee, tea, tobacco, cotton, potatoes and other vegetables, peanuts, opium poppies, and livestock are also raised.

Natural Resources: Some forest products, salt, and tin are produced. There are also deposits of other minerals.

Manufacturing: Laos has almost no modern industry. There are some sawmills, rice mills, and tanneries, and several small factories that make matches, cement, soft drinks, or other goods. Handicrafts are important.

Currency: Laos' unit of money is the *kip*. About 222 *kip* are officially worth \$1.00.

the east are North and South Vietnam, and to the south is Cambodia. The Mekong River forms much of the border between Laos and Thailand. Laos is the only country in Southeast Asia that has no sea-coast.

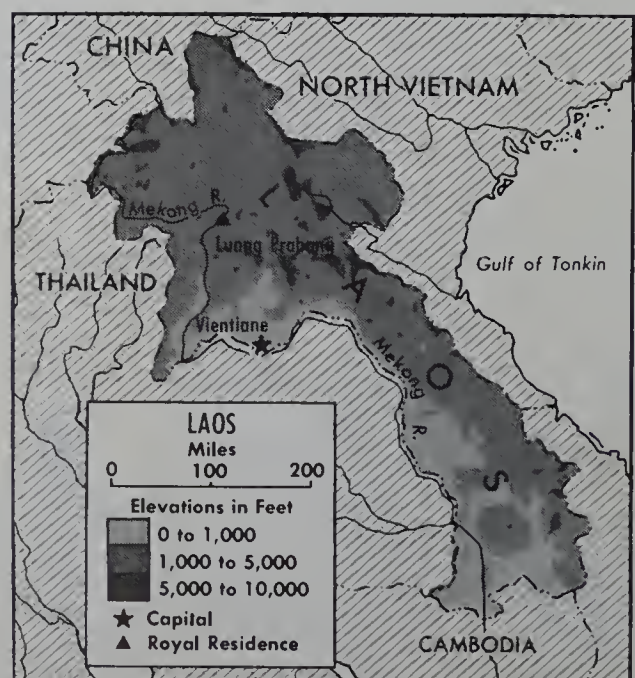
Rugged, forested mountains cover much of Laos. In the mountains are narrow river valleys in which farming villages are located. The principal lowlands in Laos are the plains that lie along the Mekong River. Most of the country's important towns are located here.

Climate. Except in the mountains, the weather is always warm in Laos. Most of the country receives between fifty and ninety inches of rain a year. It is very rainy from May to October, and very dry from November to April.

Laos is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. It is the only country in Southeast Asia that has no seacoast.

GEOGRAPHY

Land. Laos is located on the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. It is about the size of Pennsylvania and New York combined. On the west and northwest, Laos is bordered by Thailand, Burma, and China. To





The Mekong River forms much of the western border of Laos. Although there are many rapids in this river, it is an important water highway.

The people and their work. Laos is one of the most thinly populated countries in Southeast Asia. More than half of the people are Lao, who live in the lowlands along the Mekong River and its branches. Nearly all the Lao have small farms on which rice is the main crop. They follow the Buddhist religion and practice animism at the same time.

Several different tribal groups live in the highlands. Most of the tribesmen farm on patches of land cleared in the forests. These tribesmen practice animism.

Among the outsiders in Laos are Chinese, Vietnamese, and Westerners. Most of these outsiders live in the city of Vientiane or in the larger towns. They run many of the shops and industries in Laos.

Transportation and communication. Laos has no railroads, and in the northern part of the country there are many areas with no roads. Altogether, Laos has only about 625 miles of all-weather roads. The Mekong River is the main water highway. However, there are many rapids in the Mekong, and it is used only by small boats. Laos has two airlines that offer

plane service within the country. International flights between Vientiane and cities in neighboring countries are scheduled by Air Laos and several foreign airlines. There are about 22,000 radio sets and about five thousand telephones in Laos. They are located mainly in Vientiane and the larger towns.

Cities. Vientiane, which is the only real city in Laos, is the administrative capital. Luang Prabang, however, is the royal residence.

Vientiane (population about 162,000) is located in the western part of the country, on the Mekong River. Vientiane is an important trading city for goods such as hides, silk brocade, and forest products. Most of the country's factories are located here.

Vientiane is an interesting mixture of the old and the new. At one time, a living wall of sandalwood trees partly surrounded the city. Today, parts of Vientiane have paved streets and modern buildings. In other sections of the city are thatch-roofed houses. There are also many pagodas in the city.

*See glossary

Surveying for the Lower Mekong River Basin Project.* Other countries are helping Laos to make better use of its natural resources.





A market town. Most of the large towns in Laos are in the lowlands that border the Mekong River. These lowlands are inhabited mainly by the Lao, who began moving into this area from southern China before the thirteenth century. Several tribal groups live in the highlands.

HISTORY

Early history. The Lao people, who are related to the Thai of neighboring Thailand, began moving into present-day Laos from southern China before the thirteenth century. They forced the tribesmen who were already living there to flee to the remote hills and forests. The Lao settled in the lowlands.

In the fourteenth century, a warlike Lao prince established the kingdom of Lang Xang. This kingdom included all of what we now call Laos, as well as the northern and eastern parts of present-day Thailand. About 1700, this large kingdom was split into several small states. These states were frequently at war with one another. They also fought with stronger neighbors who tried to overrun them.

The French gain control. In the nineteenth century, France became interested in obtaining colonies in Southeast Asia. The French gained control of Vietnam and Cambodia. Then they turned to the Lao

states. The neighboring country of Siam had already established control over much of the Lao territory. However, the French persuaded the King of the Lao state of Luang Prabang to accept French protection. Then, in 1893, 1904, and 1905, France and Siam signed treaties under which the Siamese gave up their rights in Luang Prabang and other Lao territories. These became part of French Indochina, which also included Cambodia and Vietnam. (See top map on page 124.)

France did not rule the Lao states harshly. Luang Prabang was permitted to remain a monarchy, but it was actually administered indirectly by the French. The other parts of Laos were run more directly by the French. Although France controlled Laos for about half a century, it did little to develop this territory.

World War II brings changes to Laos. During World War II, the Lao states and the other parts of French Indochina were occupied by the Japanese. In 1945, shortly before they were defeated, the Japanese

granted Indochina independence. However, Japan remained in actual control of this area until the war ended.

When the Japanese surrendered, a group of Lao leaders declared the states of Laos to be independent, but the French soon returned to reclaim their colony. Communist-led rebels from Vietnam, members of the Vietminh, helped the Lao leaders fight for independence. However, the French were victorious, and the Lao independence leaders fled to neighboring Thailand.

After France regained control of the Lao states, it agreed to give them more self-government than had been permitted before World War II. The different states were united to form one country, and the native ruler of the state of Luang Prabang was crowned king of Laos. In 1949, France granted Laos autonomy within the French Union.* Most of the leaders who had fled to Thailand then agreed to return home and work with the government.

A Communist fighting force called the Pathet Lao is formed. One Lao leader, Prince Souphanouvong, did not return to work with the government, however. Instead, he went to northern Laos and organized a pro-Communist fighting force called the Pathet Lao. Some of the people in this force had been fighters for independence. Others were hill tribesmen who felt they had not been treated fairly. With the help of the Vietminh, the Pathet Lao gained control of northern Laos.

Laos gains full independence as a result of the Geneva Agreements. Laos remained an autonomous state within the French Union for several years. In 1953, the Lao-tians succeeded in obtaining nearly complete independence. The only exception to their full independence was in certain matters regarding defense.

Even with its greater degree of independence, Laos was not really unified. For many centuries it had been divided into quarreling states. In the new government established in 1953, rival princes and military leaders continued to struggle for power. However, the main struggle in Laos was between the Pathet Lao, which was helped by the Vietminh, and the government, which was aided by anti-Communist countries.

In 1954, a conference was held in Geneva, Switzerland, to find a way to end the fighting in Laos and other parts of Indochina. Following this conference, Laos gained full independence from the French. Some fighting continued in Laos after the Geneva Agreements were signed, but in November, 1957, the Pathet Lao agreed to cooperate with the government of Laos. For a while it seemed as though the country would have peace. Soon, however, civil war broke out again in Laos.

A treaty is signed to make Laos a neutral nation. During 1961 and 1962, another conference was held at Geneva. At this conference, the Pathet Lao and the rival princes who had been struggling for power agreed to cooperate. They chose as their leader Prince Souvanna Phouma, who believes Laos should be neutral. Other nations, such as the United States and the Soviet Union, agreed to respect Prince Souvanna Phouma's neutral government. Since then, the Pathet Lao has resumed efforts to gain control of the country. The government, however, has remained in power and seems to have gained strength.

GOVERNMENT

The highest official in Laos is the king, who serves as constitutional head of state. The king appoints the premier. Since independence, civil war has



The funeral of King Sisavang Vong, former king of Laos. Laos has depended heavily on United States aid in maintaining its independence. This troubled country has received more American aid on a per capita basis than any other country in the world.

broken out at times over who should be appointed to this important position. The premier chooses ministers to help him run the government.

The lawmaking body of Laos is the elected National Assembly. It is aided by a group of advisors called the King's Council. Although the National Assembly makes the laws, it usually follows the suggestions of the King's Council and the Council of Ministers.

Laos is divided into sixteen provinces whose governors are responsible to the central government. In many areas where tribesmen live, the tribal chieftains still have a great deal of power.

EDUCATION

About 80 percent of the people in Laos do not know how to read or write. All children are required by law to go to school

through the third grade. However, there are not nearly enough classrooms or teachers for this to be possible. The government of Laos, with the help of other countries, is trying to solve this problem, however. Today there are about 2,500 primary schools, as compared to 581 in 1950. Most of these are government schools, but some are religious schools conducted in wats. Laos also has about a dozen secondary schools, four teacher-training schools, and several job-training centers. The Sisavang Vong University has recently been built near Vientiane. Here young people may study medicine, law, and other fields of knowledge.

Address: Embassy of Laos
2222 S Street, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20008

26 Malaysia



The country of Malaysia is a federation of thirteen states. (See map on page 90.) Eleven of these are located on the Malay Peninsula, and formerly were known as the Federation of Malaya. The other two states, Sarawak and Sabah, are located on the large island of Borneo and were formerly under British control. Before Sabah became a part of Malaysia, it was known as North Borneo.

Originally, Malaysia consisted of fourteen states. The fourteenth state was Singapore. (See map on page 271.) It seceded from the federation in August, 1965. The reason for this secession is explained on pages 258 and 259.

How Malaysia was formed. Malaysia was formed to solve some important problems. As the top map on page 124 shows, all the states that originally joined to form this federation were once controlled by the British. After World War II, the rise of nationalism made the British realize that they would have to permit self-government in these colonial territories and ultimately grant them independence. Malaya and Singapore were much further advanced than the territories on Borneo, so the British were able to grant them greater degrees of self-government. In 1957, the eleven states of Malaya were granted independence and became the Federation of Malaya.

Two years later, the British granted self-government to Singapore, but remained in control of this small state's defense and foreign affairs. It was difficult to grant full independence to either Singa-

pore or British Borneo. The territories in British Borneo were not ready for self-government, and it was felt that Singapore was too small to defend itself if it became an independent nation.

The small state of Singapore hoped to achieve independence by joining the new country of Malaya. However, many Malays did not want this. Since about one third of the people in Malaya and most of the people in Singapore are Chinese, the Malays feared that if the Chinese of Singapore were added to those in Malaya, they would control the country. The fact

"Malaysia Week" celebration. Malaysia came into being in 1963. Singapore seceded from this federation in 1965, and is now independent.





Tunku Abdul Rahman, Prime Minister of Malaysia. In 1961, he proposed a plan for the formation of Malaysia.

that many of Singapore's Chinese sympathized with Communist China increased the Malays' objections to admitting Singapore to the Federation of Malaya.

In 1961, the Prime Minister of Malaya, Tunku Abdul Rahman, suggested a solution to the problems that prevented Singapore and British Borneo from becoming independent. He proposed that these territories and Malaya be brought together in a federation. This new federation, to be called Malaysia, would strengthen Singapore and British Borneo politically and economically. It would also help to correct the racial imbalance between Malays and Chinese, for there were fewer Chinese in British Borneo than in Singapore and Malaya.

There was considerable opposition to Tunku Abdul Rahman's proposal. The Communists in Singapore realized that

this union would weaken their position, and they worked vigorously against it. In the little British territory of Brunei, on Borneo, there were violent objections. Brunei had once controlled all the territories in British Borneo. A group of people in Brunei felt that these territories should be reunited under Brunei's rule before any plans were made to establish Malaysia. In December of 1962, this group staged a revolt. The Sultan of Brunei quickly called for British help in putting down the revolt. During the following months, the government of Brunei reconsidered the idea of becoming a part of Malaysia, but decided to remain outside the union.

Opposition to the founding of Malaysia also came from other countries. The Philippines claimed part of North Borneo (Sabah), and felt that this territory had no right to become a part of Malaysia. The leaders of Indonesia also objected to the founding of Malaysia, saying that this was just another trick to extend British power in Southeast Asia.

In spite of the opposition, support for Malaysia was very strong among the people of Malaya, Singapore, and most of British Borneo. In Singapore, the people showed their approval in a referendum. In Malaya, the proposed federation was discussed and approved by the lawmaking assembly. Interviews held with many groups and individuals in British Borneo showed that a majority of the people in Sarawak and Sabah also were in favor of the plan. In view of this public support, careful plans were made, and on September 16, 1963, Malaysia came into being.

Singapore secedes from Malaysia. Malaysia's planners had hoped that by joining Singapore, British Borneo, and Malaya they would create a country in which people of different races could live

and work together. However, it soon became apparent that they had not succeeded. Conflicts developed between the Chinese, who controlled most of the business, and the Malays, who controlled political affairs. The Chinese of Singapore, who made up 75 percent of that state's population, tried to obtain greater political power, but their efforts were blocked by the Malay-dominated national government in the capital city, Kuala Lumpur. Finally, in August, 1965, Singapore withdrew from the federation. Singapore's new government continues to cooperate with Malaysia in economic and defense matters. However, Singapore is now an independent country.

Malaysia and the rest of the world. Malaysia is completely independent, but it has close ties with Britain. It is a member of the Commonwealth of Nations and has an Agreement on External Defense and Mutual Assistance with the British. Malaysia has needed military support urgently, for it has faced a grave threat from the neighboring country of Indonesia. The Indonesian government opposed the formation of this new nation and has consistently tried to destroy it. Bands of Indonesian guerrillas have caused much bloodshed and property damage in Malaysia.

Although Singapore is no longer a part of Malaysia, it also has continued to want and to need the support of Britain. The

The Malaysian capital, Kuala Lumpur. Although Malaysia is now completely independent, it maintains close ties with Britain. The British and Malaysians have an Agreement on External Defense and Mutual Assistance. Malaysia also belongs to the Commonwealth of Nations.



British have important military bases in Singapore. These serve to protect both Malaysia and Singapore.

How Malaysia is governed. Malaysia's government has been planned to safeguard the rights of each state and to permit a democratic form of government to evolve in each area. At present, the people of Sarawak and Sabah elect fewer of their officials directly than the people of the other states do. In time, however, a larger number of direct elections will be held in these two states.

Each of the thirteen states in Malaysia has its own head of state. In nine of the states, these rulers are similar to kings, and inherit their positions for life. Most of them are called sultans. Four states, Sarawak, Sabah, Malacca, and Penang, have appointed heads of state.

The thirteen heads of state in Malaysia form a council called the Conference of Rulers. The members of this council who inherit their positions for life elect one of their number to be the supreme head of Malaysia. He is called the Yang di-Pertuan Agong, and holds this position for five years.

In addition to the Yang di-Pertuan Agong and the Conference of Rulers, Malaysia has a federal lawmaking assembly called the Parliament. This assembly is made up of a Senate and a House of Representatives. There are two senators from each state in the Senate. These members are chosen by their state lawmaking assemblies. There are also twenty-two senators appointed by the Yang di-Pertuan Agong. Each state also sends representatives to the House of Representatives. The people of the eleven Malayan states elect their representatives. The representatives from Sarawak and Sabah are chosen by the lawmaking assemblies of these two states.



His majesty the Yang di-Pertuan Agong is elected by the hereditary rulers of individual states and holds office for five years.

The federal government of Malaysia is actually run by the Prime Minister and his cabinet. They are appointed by the Yang di-Pertuan Agong and must be members of the Parliament. The Prime Minister must have the support of a majority of the members of the House of Representatives.

Below the federal government of Malaysia are the state governments. As you have learned, each state has its own head, who rules according to the state constitution. Each state also has a lawmaking assembly. In the eleven Malayan states, most of the members of the state lawmaking assemblies are elected directly by the people. The members of the Sarawak and Sabah state legislatures, however, are indirectly elected. All the state

legislatures of Malaysia also have some appointed members. The state governments take care of all matters that the federal constitution has not handed over to the central government.

Malaysia also has a court system to explain and uphold the country's laws. The highest court is the Supreme Court of Malaysia. In addition to its regular federal and state courts, Malaysia has courts in each of the different states that enforce the law in accordance with local customs.

To learn more about Malaysia, let us examine the different parts of this country. First, we will study the eleven states that formerly made up the independent country of Malaya. Then we will study Sarawak and Sabah. We will also look briefly at Brunei, which does not belong to Malaysia, but is closely related to Sarawak and Sabah in geography and history.

Address: Embassy of Malaysia
2401 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20008

Voting in Penang. The government of Malaysia has been planned to safeguard the rights of each state and to permit a democratic form of government to evolve in each area.



The Eleven Malaysian States

Facts About the Eleven Malaysian States

The common name for the eleven states in the southern part of the Malay Peninsula is Malaya. These states formerly made up an independent country called the Federation of Malaya. They are now a part of Malaysia.

Area: About 50,700 square miles.

Population: 7,536,000.

Largest City: Kuala Lumpur (population over 400,000).

Literacy: About 60 percent of the people can read and write.

Main Religions: Islam is the official religion, but there are also many Buddhists, Confucianists, Taoists, Hindus, and Christians.

Main Occupation: About half of the workers earn their living by farming. Many of these people have jobs on plantations.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is \$268.

Important Farm Products: Two thirds of the cropland is planted in rubber trees. Coconuts, palm oil, pineapples, and tea are also produced for export. Rice is the main food crop.

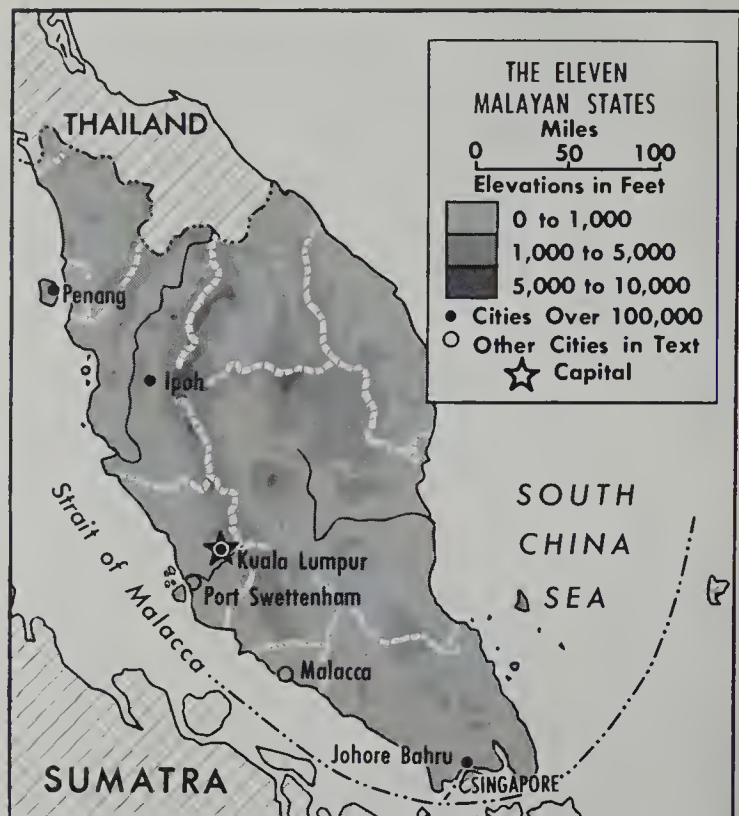
Natural Resources: Malaya is the world's largest producer of tin. Other important natural resources are iron, gold, bauxite, forests, and fisheries.

Manufacturing: Processing raw materials, such as rubber and tin, is the main branch of industry. There are some factories that make petroleum products, soap, cement, rubber goods, or other products. Handicrafts are important, also.

Currency: Malaya's unit of money is the Malaysian dollar. It is officially worth about 33 cents.

GEOGRAPHY

Land. Malaya is a little larger than the state of New York. It occupies the southern part of the Malay Peninsula and several small offshore islands. To the north is Thailand. On the west, Malaya is separated from the Indonesian island of Suma-



The eleven Malaysian states, or Malaya, are part of Malaysia. The city of Kuala Lumpur is the capital of Malaysia.

tra by the Strait of Malacca. Off the southern coast of Malaya is Singapore.

Forested mountain ranges stretch from north to south through Malaya. Along the eastern and western coasts are lowlands. Only a small part of the eastern coastal lowlands has been cleared. Most of the farms, mines, and cities are on the western coastal lowlands. Much of Malaya is still covered with forests and swamps.

Climate. Except in the highlands, the weather in Malaya is hot and humid throughout the year. Almost everywhere the annual rainfall is more than seventy inches. Rain falls during every month, but some seasons are rainier than others. These periods of heaviest rainfall come at different times in different places.

Natural resources. Malaya produces about one third of the world's tin. Most of the tin mines are in the western part of the peninsula. Malaya also has deposits of iron. About six million tons of iron ore are mined and exported each year. In addition, Malaya produces some bauxite, gold, tungsten, and manganese.

Dense rainforests cover three fifths of the land in Malaya. The forests provide fuel and building material for the people. Some lumber is exported.

People. About half of the people in Malaya are brown-skinned Malays. Most of them live in small villages and follow the religion of Islam. The Chinese, who make

A Malayan village. About half the people in the Malayan states are Malays. Most of these people live in small villages.



Region	Land Features	Rainfall
Western Lowlands	Mangrove swamps along much of coast. Wide plains and low hills farther inland.	Receives more than 75 inches of rain a year.
Eastern Lowlands	Long stretches of beautiful sandy beach. Narrow coastal plains broken by mountains that reach to the sea.	Much of this region receives more than 125 inches of rain a year.
Mountains	Forested mountains separated by narrow valleys. Higher in north than in south. Highest peak is 7,186 feet.	Some slopes receive more than 175 inches of rain a year. Some sheltered places receive less than 75 inches.

up about a third of the population, are the next largest group. Most of these people are Buddhists, Confucianists, and Taoists. About half the Chinese in Malaya live in towns. Indians and Pakistanis make up a little more than one tenth of the population. Some of them are Hindus and some are Moslems. In remote regions are scattered groups of tribesmen. Some Westerners also live in Malaya. The two official languages in Malaya and the other parts of Malaysia are Malay and English. By 1973, however, Malay will be the only official language throughout Malaysia.

Earning a living. About half of the workers in Malaya earn their living in agriculture. Two thirds of the cropland is used for producing rubber, Malaya's most important export. Much of the rubber comes from trees grown on large plantations. Many of the workers on these plantations are Indians. Most Malays, as well as many Chinese and Indians, have small farms of their own.



Rolling up sheets of rubber in a Malayan factory. Two thirds of the cropland in Malaya is used for producing rubber. Much of Malaya's rubber comes from trees grown on plantations in the western coastal lowlands.

Region	Farmlands	Products
Western Lowlands	Main farming region. Most of the plantations are located here.	Rubber, coconuts, palm oil, pineapples, rice, tin, bauxite, fish, lumber.
Eastern Lowlands	Farms are located mainly in the north. Most are owned by Malays.	Rice, coconuts, tin, iron, fish, forest products.
Mountains	Permanent farms in a few valleys. Temporary clearings in mountain forests.	Dry rice, tea, vegetables, fruit, gold.

About 8 percent of the workers in Malaya are shopkeepers, merchants, or businessmen. Many of these people are Chinese. Other people in Malaya have jobs in mining, manufacturing, and fishing. Still

others are servants, mail clerks, railroad workers, teachers, or doctors.

Transportation and communication. Malaya has 7,315 miles of all-weather roads and 1,304 miles of railroads. There are two main rail lines, which run north and south. In the western lowlands several branch lines lead from one of these main railroads to port cities on the coast. There are also more roads in the western lowlands than in other parts of Malaya. The rivers in Malaya are suitable only for small, flat-bottomed boats. Penang and Port Swettenham are the leading seaports of the eleven Malayan states. However, much of Malaya's shipping passes through the port of Singapore. You can read more about the port of Singapore on page 271.

Malaysian Airways provides plane service to different parts of Malaya, as well as to Singapore, Sarawak, Sabah, and

Brunei. Flights to Hong Kong, Indonesia, and Thailand are also scheduled by Malaysian Airways. Several foreign airlines serve Kuala Lumpur.

Radio Malaysia, which is operated by the government, broadcasts programs in several different languages. Many villages have community radios. Television has recently been established. Malaya's postal and telephone services are among the best in Southeast Asia.

Cities. More than one fourth of the people in Malaya live in towns and cities. Most of the cities and larger towns are in the western part of the peninsula.

Kuala Lumpur (population over 400,000) is the largest city in Malaya, and the capital of Malaysia. It is located in the western part of the peninsula, in the foothills of the mountains. Near the city are many rubber plantations and tin mines.

Kuala Lumpur's population has approximately doubled in the past dozen years, and many new buildings have been constructed during this period. Among these are a number of skyscrapers and a group of attractive government buildings set in a beautiful park. Among the places of interest in Kuala Lumpur are the Lake Gardens, the Art Gallery, and the Museum. Six miles north of the city are the Batu Caves, which contain a Hindu temple.

Penang (population about 235,000), also called George Town, is the leading seaport and second largest city of the eleven Malayan states. (See map on page 136.) It is the capital of the state of Penang. Penang has tree-lined avenues and fine public buildings. There are tin smelters, rice and coconut-oil mills, and several other kinds of industrial plants in the city.

Ipoh (population about 125,000) is the capital of the state of Perak, in the northwestern part of Malaya. It is a modern

city with fine gardens, parks, and public buildings. Just outside the city, to the north and south, are limestone caves that contain Buddhist temples.

HISTORY

Malaya's location has influenced its history. For hundreds of years, traders traveling between India and China have crossed the Malay Peninsula by land, or sailed around it. (See map on pages 12 and 13.) For this reason, small trading towns were established long ago on the coasts of Malaya. Before the fifteenth century, none of these was very important.

The port of Malacca becomes a great trading city. Early in the fifteenth century, a prince from the island of Sumatra settled at a little fishing village called Malacca, on the Malay Peninsula. (See map on page 262.) This village grew to be the most powerful trading city in Southeast Asia. Several different European nations wanted to gain control of Malacca. In 1511, it

Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia's capital, is the largest city in the Malayan states. More than 60 percent of its population is Chinese.





A street in Malacca. This port city, located on the Strait of Malacca, was once the most powerful trading city in Southeast Asia.

was captured by the Portuguese. They lost it to the Dutch in 1641.

The British gain control. In 1824, the Dutch agreed to give up their rights in Malacca and other parts of the Malay Peninsula to the British. In return, the Dutch took over Britain's trading rights on Sumatra and other islands.

At first the British controlled only a small part of Malaya. There were several independent states on the Malay Peninsula, which were frequently at war with each other. As time went on, the British signed treaties with one after another of these states. Four states were joined together to form a federation governed under British protection. The rulers of five other states agreed to govern with British advice and protection.

Many changes were made after the British came to Malaya. Peace and order were established. More tin mines and rubber plantations were developed, and large numbers of Indians and Chinese came to

Malaya to find jobs. Many of the foreigners who settled here continued to use the language and follow the customs of their homelands. They felt that the government in Malaya did not always treat them fairly.

Changes come to Malaya after World War II. Malaya was occupied by the Japanese during World War II, but when the war ended, the British returned. Hostility between the Chinese and Malays had grown worse during the war. A desire for independence had also developed. However, the different groups in the country needed to learn how to cooperate before they could govern themselves successfully.

The British worked hard to establish a form of government that would satisfy the native rulers of the different states, as well as the different nationality groups in Malaya. Finally, in 1948, the Federation of Malaya was established. It became an independent nation within the Commonwealth of Nations on August 31, 1957.

Independence ceremonies. In August, 1957, the eleven Malayan states became an independent nation called Malaya.





University buildings in Kuala Lumpur. In addition to a university, Malaya has sixty technical schools and twenty-one teacher-training institutions. Schools in Malaya are trying to develop a feeling of unity among the different groups of people in this area.

Communists try to gain control of Malaya.

Both before and after independence, Communist guerrilla forces tried to gain control of Malaya. Most of the Communists were Chinese who had fought against the Japanese in World War II. They raided rubber plantations and tin mines, and intimidated villagers into providing them with supplies. To combat these problems, the government moved people from isolated communities to larger villages where they could be protected. Then the Communists were hunted down in the jungles where they had been hiding. By 1960, the Communist threat in Malaya was under control.

Malaya becomes a part of Malaysia. As page 258 explains, Malaya played a leading part in planning the establishment of Malaysia. Today, the eleven states of Malaya together with Sarawak and Sabah form Malaysia.

EDUCATION

About 60 percent of the people in Malaya can read and write. All children are required by law to attend school for six years. About 85 percent of the children from six through twelve years of age are in school. Primary education is free, and children may study their lessons in Malay, Chinese, English, or Tamil, depending on what language they speak at home. All children must study the Malay and English languages. Schools in the eleven Malayan states are trying to develop a feeling of unity among the different groups of people who live in this area.

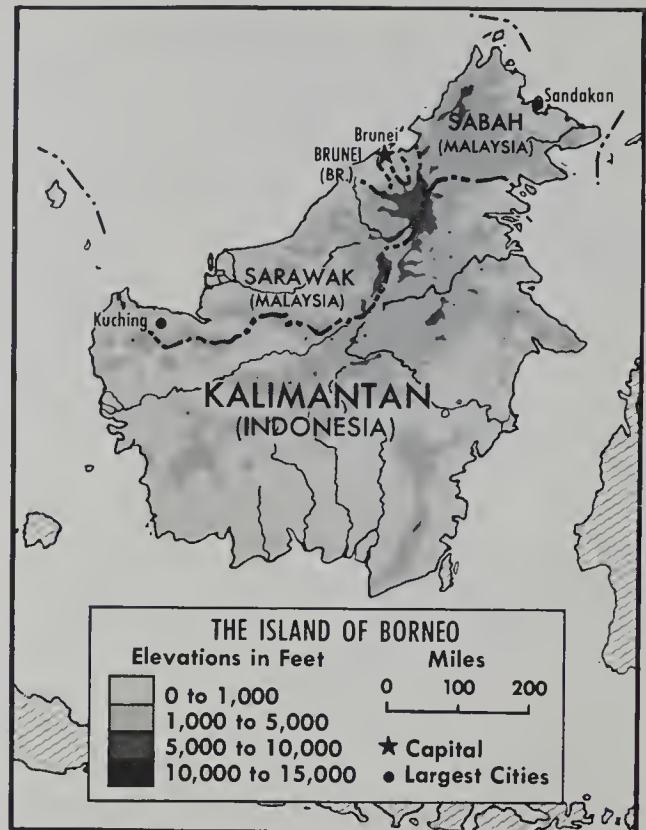
About 20 percent of the children of secondary-school age in Malaya are attending school. The first university in this area was established in 1949. In addition, Malaya has sixty technical schools and twenty-one teacher-training schools.

Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei

Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei are three territories on the island of Borneo. Sabah was formerly known as North Borneo. Until recently all three of these territories were under British control. In 1963, however, Sarawak and Sabah became a part of Malaysia. (See pages 257 through 261.) Brunei chose not to join Malaysia and is still a British protectorate.

Although Brunei is much smaller than Sarawak and Sabah, it is very important. More oil is produced in this small territory than in any other part of Southeast Asia except Indonesia. Most of it is refined in Sarawak.

Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei are not as developed as Malaya and Singapore. Most of the land along the coasts of these three territories is low and swampy. Farther inland are many mountains. Rainforests cover about three fourths of the land. The weather is hot and rainy throughout the year.



Borneo. This huge island is divided into four parts. The largest part is Kalimantan, which is a part of Indonesia.

	Sarawak	Sabah	Brunei
Area	48,250 square miles.	29,388 square miles.	2,226 square miles.
Population	About 845,000.	About 515,000.	About 93,000.
Largest City	Kuching (population 50,579).	Sandakan (population 28,806).	Brunei, capital (population 22,939).
Main Religions	Islam, Buddhism, Christianity, animism.	Islam, Buddhism, Christianity, animism.	Islam, Buddhism, animism.
Important Farm Products	Rice, rubber, sago, pepper, coconuts.	Rubber, rice, sago, coconuts, manioc, abaca, tobacco.	Rubber, rice, sago, coconuts.
Natural Resources	Petroleum, bauxite, gold, phosphate, coal, forests.	Forests, fisheries.	Petroleum, forests.
Industry	Oil refining, lumbering, processing rubber and other raw materials for export, handicrafts.	Lumbering, processing rubber and other raw materials for export, handicrafts.	Oil drilling, processing rubber and other raw materials for export, handicrafts.
Currency	Malaysian dollar.	Malaysian dollar.	Malaysian dollar.

HISTORY

In the latter part of the sixteenth century, the territory now included in Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei was controlled by Brunei. European nations traded with this powerful kingdom, but were not able to overrun it.

In the early part of the nineteenth century, Brunei and other parts of Borneo were the headquarters of fierce pirate bands. These bands frequently attacked trading ships. An Englishman named James Brooke, who wanted to help put an end to this piracy, sailed to Borneo in 1839 with a crew of carefully chosen men. When Brooke arrived, however, he learned that the Sultan of Brunei was having difficulty with rebels in the territory of Sarawak. Brooke put down this rebellion. In 1841, the Sultan granted him Sarawak as a re-

ward. Members of the Brooke family governed this territory for more than one hundred years.

In 1877, the Sultan of Brunei gave up his rights in part of the territory that is now Sabah to an association of British traders. The next year, these traders enlarged their territory by making an agreement with the Sultan of Sulu, who lived in a part of what is now the Philippines. In 1888, North Borneo (now Sabah), Sarawak, and the once-powerful country of Brunei became British protectorates.

During World War II, the island of Borneo was occupied by the Japanese. In 1946, after the war, Sarawak and North Borneo became British crown colonies. The sultanate of Brunei remained a British protectorate. Seventeen years later, Sarawak and Sabah (North Borneo) became a part of Malaysia.

A Malay woman pounding rice. Many Malay people live in the coastal areas of Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei. These people follow the religion of Islam.



GEOGRAPHY

The people and their work. Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei are thinly populated. Many of the people in the interior are Dyaks, who are divided into several different groups. Most of them are animists, but some have become Christians. Dyak tribesmen usually make their living by farming in temporary forest clearings, or by fishing, hunting, and gathering food. In most Dyak villages, the families live together in "longhouses." Each family has a room of its own. These rooms are attached in a row and open onto a long, covered porch.

Many of the people who live in the coastal areas of Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei are Malays. Raising rice and fishing are their main occupations. Their religion is Islam. There are also many Chinese in these three territories. Most of them have small farms, but many live in towns where they work as businessmen, government clerks, or craftsmen. There are only a few thousand Westerners in these territories. They manage plantations and mines, or work as government officials and traders.

Transportation and communication. Water travel is very important in Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei. There are only about 140 miles of railroads and about 600 miles of paved roads in this part of Borneo. In Sarawak, long stretches of the beach are used as roads during low tide. Malaysian Airways and other airlines schedule flights to and from these three territories. Borneo Airways provides service within the area. Each of these three territories has a government-owned radio station.

EDUCATION

It is estimated that about 20 percent of the people in Brunei, Sarawak, and Sabah

can read and write. Most of these are people who live in towns and cities.

There are about 1,650 schools in these three territories. Most of them are primary schools, but the number of secondary schools is increasing. There are some teacher-training and job-training schools, but students must go overseas if they wish to attend a college or university.

GOVERNMENT

Sarawak and Sabah. Sarawak and Sabah are states in the country of Malaysia. The government of this country is discussed on pages 260 and 261.

Brunei. The highest official in Brunei is the sultan. He appoints a chief minister who runs the country with the help of the Executive Council. Brunei's laws are made by the Legislative Council. Most of its members are appointed, but more will be elected as time goes by. The British are responsible for Brunei's defense and foreign affairs.

For more information about Brunei, write to:

British Information Services
845 Third Avenue
New York, New York 10022

A primary school. Together, Sarawak, Sabah, and Brunei have about 1,650 schools, located mainly in the towns and cities.



27 Singapore



Facts About Singapore

Area: Singapore Island and its small neighboring islands together form a land area of 224 square miles.

Population: 1,775,200.

Capital: Singapore (population 912,343).

Main Groups of People: Three fourths of the people are Chinese. There are also many Malays and Indians. Fewer than 2 percent are Eurasians or Westerners.

Literacy: About half of the people can read and write.

Main Religions: Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism, Islam, Hinduism, and Christianity.

Occupations: More than one third of Singapore's workers have jobs in manufacturing. Others work at wharves, warehouses, and businesses that import and re-export goods. Still others are construction workers or have jobs that offer services to other people. Many people who live outside the city are truck farmers or fishermen.

Income: Average yearly per capita income is about \$433.

Manufacturing: Building and repairing ships, and processing raw materials such as tin, rubber, and petroleum are the main kinds of manufacturing. There are a few large factories, and many smaller ones that produce soap, soft drinks, cigarettes, vegetable oils, rubber shoes, or other goods.

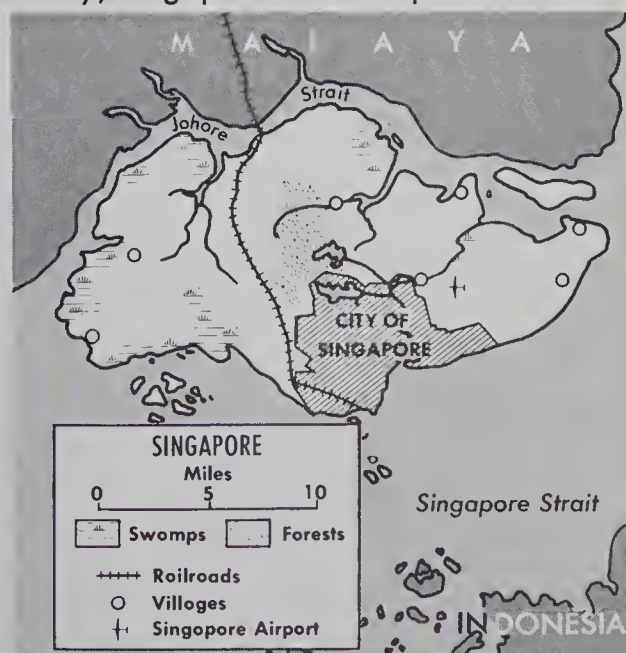
Currency: Singapore's unit of money is the Malaysian dollar. It is officially worth about 33 cents.

mainland. Low hills cover much of the island. The highest hill rises 581 feet above sea level. Singapore's climate is hot and rainy all year round.

Transportation and communication. The harbor of Singapore is deeper than any other harbor within a distance of a thousand miles. Over 50,000 ships stop here every year on their way to other parts of the world. Goods can be brought into Singapore, stored, and shipped out without payment of duty.

A road and a railroad cross the causeway that connects Singapore Island with Malaya. There is also a pipeline that brings water from the mainland. The island has five hundred miles of surfaced roads. The planes of twelve overseas airlines use Singapore's large airport. Singapore has

The island of Singapore is separated from the Malay Peninsula by a narrow strait. Today, Singapore is an independent nation.



GEOGRAPHY

Land and climate. Singapore is made up of one main island and about forty tiny, neighboring islands. It is located close to the southern coast of Malaya. A causeway connects Singapore Island to the

good postal service, and also keeps in touch with other areas by radiotelephone and underwater cable service. Radio and television programs are broadcast in several languages.

The city of Singapore. Singapore is the most important port city in Southeast Asia. It is located on the southern shore of Singapore Island. Much of the land on which the city stands was once a swamp. Hills were cut down, and the dirt was used to fill in the swampy areas. Along the harbor are more than two and one-half miles of wharves. In and near the city are pineapple canneries, sawmills, tin smelters, oil refineries, and factories that produce rubber goods or other products.

Singapore is very crowded. Many people live in little huts, but there are also beautiful new apartment buildings and blocks of comfortable new houses. In the

business section are large office buildings and banks.

Several places in Singapore are named after Sir Stamford Raffles, who founded the city. Among these are Raffles Place and Raffles Institution. Some of the interesting places to visit in the city are the Botanical Gardens and the three big Chinese amusement parks called the Great World, the New World, and the Happy World.

HISTORY

Singapore is founded as a British trading station. In 1819, an Englishman named Sir Stamford Raffles sailed through the Strait of Malacca in search of a good place to establish a British trading station. After a discouraging trip, he stopped at the little jungle-covered island of Singapore. According to legend, a trading city had been located on this island in the thirteenth

The port city of Singapore is located on the southern shore of Singapore Island. It was founded in 1819 by an Englishman named Sir Stamford Raffles. About three fourths of the people who live in Singapore are Chinese. Many Malays and Indians also live here.





Inspecting rubber. Processing raw materials such as rubber, tin, and petroleum is a leading branch of industry in Singapore. Another leading branch of industry is the building and repairing of ships. Singapore also has many factories that produce goods such as soft drinks and soap.

century. When Raffles arrived, however, only a few fishermen lived there.

Raffles realized that Singapore's location made it an excellent place for a trading city. He founded a town that grew to be the greatest port in Southeast Asia. For over a hundred years, Singapore was governed by the British as a part of a larger colony called the Straits Settlements.

Changes come to Singapore after World War II. Singapore was occupied by the Japanese during World War II. When the war ended, the British returned. Soon after the war, Singapore was separated from the rest of the Straits Settlements, but remained a British colony. In 1955, it was granted a constitution that permitted the people to elect a majority of the members of their lawmaking assembly. On June 3, 1959, Singapore became an internally self-governing state within the

Commonwealth of Nations. Four years later it became a part of Malaysia, but in 1965 it seceded from this federation and became independent. Singapore has since become a member of the Commonwealth of Nations and of the United Nations.

EDUCATION

There are nearly eight hundred schools in Singapore. Most of them are primary schools. Some children attend schools where English is used, while others learn their lessons in Chinese, Malay, or Tamil. English and Malay are generally used in secondary schools. There are five technical schools and five other institutions of higher learning. One of these is the University of Singapore, formerly a part of the University of Malaya. Singapore also has a private Chinese-language university.

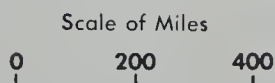
Learning Map Skills

The earth in space and time. The planet earth is a large, almost perfect sphere, which is slightly flattened at the North and South poles. Its diameter, measured from pole to pole, is about 7,900 miles. This is 27 miles less than its diameter measured at the equator. The earth's circumference at the equator is 24,902 miles.

The earth is in constant motion. Approximately every 24 hours, it completes one rotation about its axis. As it rotates, the earth is also revolving around the sun. On this journey, which takes one year, the axis of the earth is always tilted at the same angle to the path along which the earth is traveling.

A globe represents the earth. A classroom globe is a sphere that represents the earth. The map on the surface of the globe shows the shape and location of the land masses and bodies of water on the earth. Globes are made with the North Pole at the top, but they are usually tilted to represent the angle at which the earth is tilted.

When you use a globe or a map, you need to know what distance on the earth is represented by a given distance on the globe or map. This relationship, which is called the scale, may be given in several different ways. It may be expressed in numbers: 1 inch = 400 miles. The scale may also be shown graphically:



Another way of expressing the scale is by a proportion, called a representative fraction, which is given like this: 1:10,000,000. This means that any given distance on the globe or

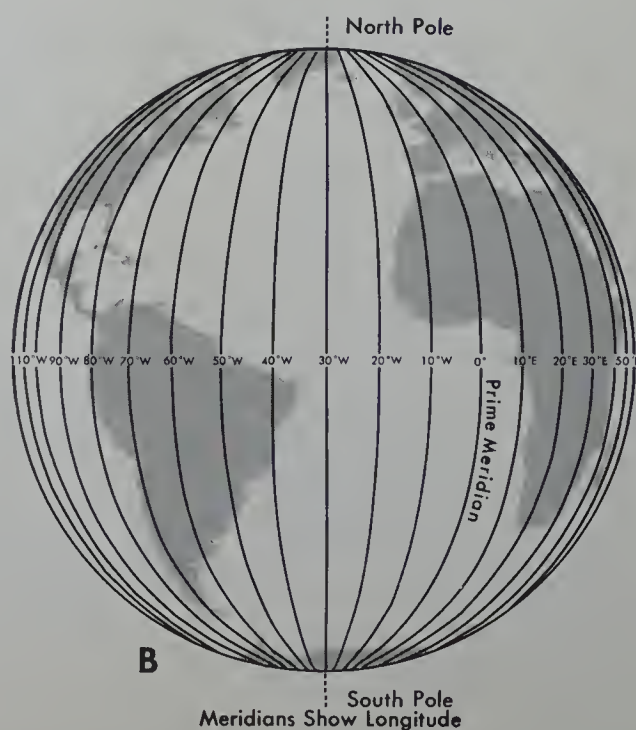
map represents a distance on the earth that is ten million times as large. In other words, one inch on the globe or map is equal to ten million inches on the earth, or one centimeter on the globe or map is equal to ten million centimeters on the earth. The advantage of this kind of scale is that you may use any unit you wish.

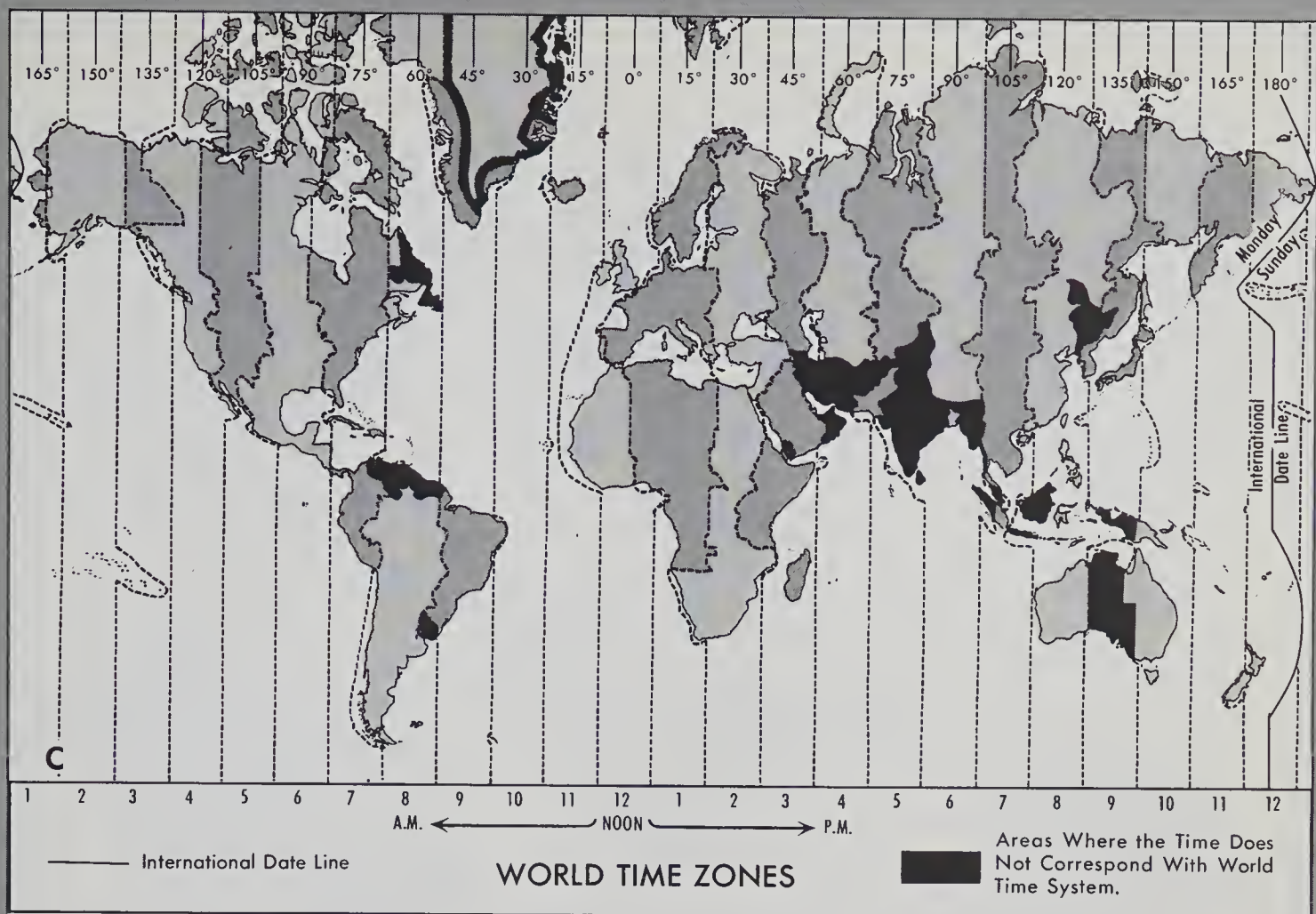
Locating places on the earth. Travelers, geographers, and other inquisitive people have always wanted to know exactly where certain places are located. Through the centuries, a very accurate system has been worked out for determining locations on the earth, and for indicating them on globes and maps.

A location system needs reference points and a unit of measurement. The North and South poles provide two basic reference points for the system we use to locate places on the earth. Exactly halfway between the poles, an imaginary circle is drawn around the earth. This is the equator, which provides a third basic reference point. The equator and all other circles drawn so as to divide the earth exactly in half are called great circles.

The unit of measurement for our location system is the same unit that is used to measure circles: the degree. Any circle may be divided into 360 degrees. For greater precision, a degree may be divided into 60 parts called minutes. Each minute may be further divided into 60 seconds.

Parallels show latitude. The first step in locating a place on the earth is to find out how far it is north or south of the equator. This distance, measured in degrees, is called north or south latitude. The equator is the line of zero latitude.





Since the North Pole is one fourth of the way around the earth from the equator, its location is 90° north latitude. Similarly, the South Pole is located at 90° south latitude.

A line that connects all points on the earth that have exactly the same latitude is called a parallel because it is parallel to the equator. (See illustration A.) The equator is the only line of latitude that is a great circle. All parallels are shorter than the equator.

Meridians show longitude. After the latitude of a place has been determined, the next step is to find its longitude. This is its location in an east-west direction. The lines that show longitude, called meridians, are drawn so as to connect the North and South poles. (See illustration B.) All meridians are halves of great circles that pass through the poles.

Longitude is measured from the meridian that passes through Greenwich, England. This line of zero longitude, called the prime meridian, has been accepted by almost all the countries of the world. Distance east or west of the prime meridian is called east or west longitude. The meridian of 180° west longitude is the same as the one of 180° east longitude. This is because 180° is exactly halfway around the world from the prime meridian.

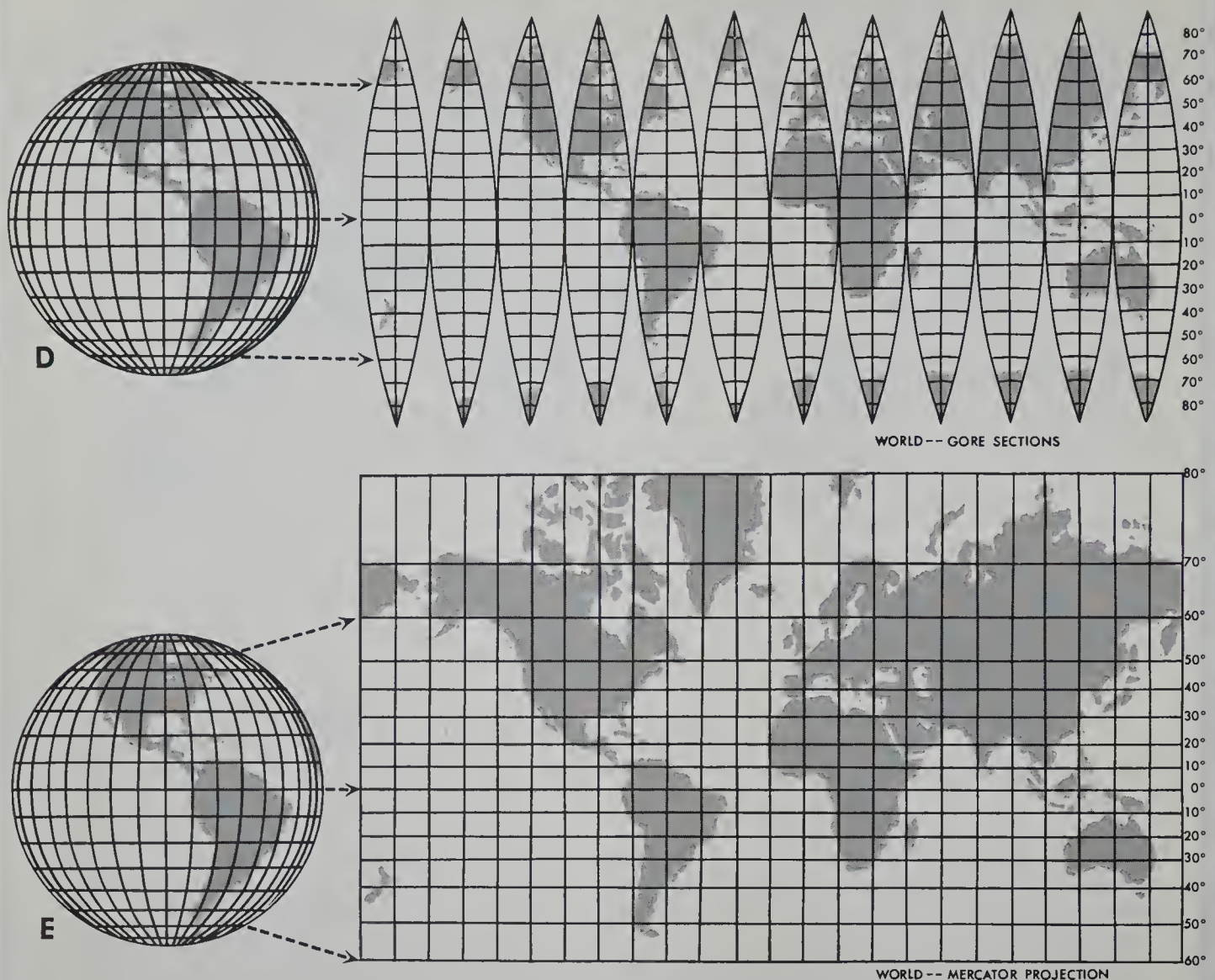
The prime meridian is also used as the basis for our system of world time zones. The time in

Greenwich is accepted as a standard in almost all parts of the world. Twenty-four different time zones have been established. In each zone, the standard time is one hour later than it is in the zone next to it on the west. (See illustration C, above.) Since the earth completes one rotation in about 24 hours, it turns through about $1/24$ of 360 degrees of longitude in one hour. Therefore, the boundaries of each standard time zone have been located approximately 15 degrees apart.

At any one place on the earth, each new day begins at midnight. When the turning earth is considered as a whole, however, or when a person travels around the world, a marker is needed to separate each day from the next one. The International Date Line, which follows the 180° meridian fairly closely, has been established as such a marker. When a traveler going eastward crosses this line, he finds that it is a day earlier on the east side. He has therefore "gained" a day. When he crosses the Date Line going from east to west, the traveler finds that it is a day later on the west side. He has "lost" a day.

The round earth on a flat map. An important fact about a sphere is that its surface cannot be flattened out completely. To prove this, cut an orange in half and scrape away the fruit. You will find that you cannot press the orange peel flat without crushing it. Next, cut the peel into

A Round Globe on a Flat Surface



sections, or gores, shaped like those shown in illustration D, above. You will find that you can press these small sections almost completely flat.

A world map can be made by cutting the surface of a globe into twelve "orange-peel" gores. (See illustration D.) Such a map is fairly accurate. However, it is not an easy map to use, because the continents and oceans are split. It would be difficult to measure distances across these splits.

A flat map can never show a large area of the earth's surface as accurately as a globe can. On a globe, shape, size, distance, and direction are all accurate. Although a single flat map of the world cannot be drawn to show all four of these things correctly, a flat map can be made that will show one or more of these things accurately. For example, if shapes of continents are shown correctly, distances will not be accurate. Over the years, many different flat maps have been made that are useful for certain purposes.

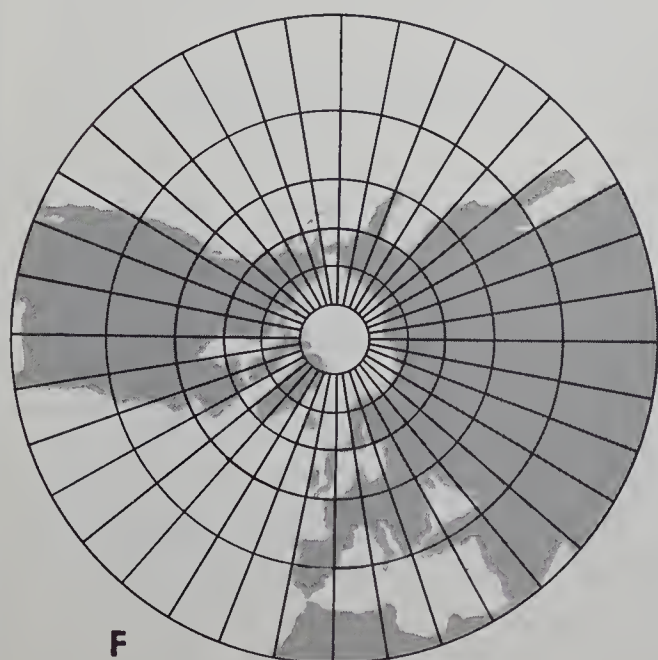
Long ago, map makers discovered an interesting way of making maps to show the world. First, they imagined a transparent globe with meridians, parallels, and boundary lines drawn on it. Then they imagined the shadow of part of this globe projected onto a flat screen by a light. By using mathematics, the map makers were able to draw the parallels, meridians, and boundary lines just as they would appear on the screen. Different maps resulted from imagining the source of light in different places. Some map makers produced still different maps by projecting the shadow of an imaginary globe onto a cylinder wrapped around the globe. Others made maps by projecting an imaginary globe's shadow onto a cone placed on the globe like a dunce cap.

Today, any orderly arrangement of meridians and parallels on which a map can be drawn is called a projection. Hundreds of different projections are now in use. Many are modifications of the old shadow projections on planes,

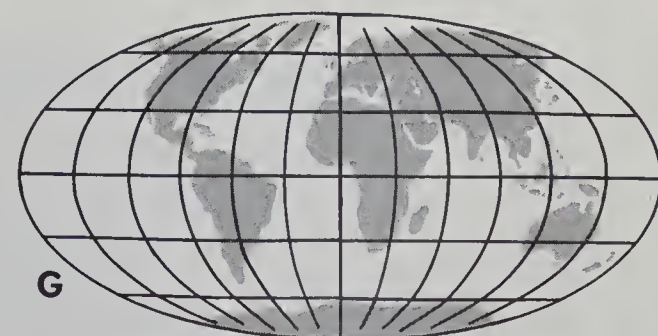
cylinders, and cones. Others are calculated mathematically without any particular relationship to actual shadow projections.

The Mercator projection. One of the most famous map projections is the Mercator. It was devised by Gerhardus Mercator, a Flemish geographer who lived from 1512 to 1594. On a Mercator map, all meridians are drawn straight up and down, the same distance apart. The parallels are all drawn straight across, but increasingly farther apart toward the poles. (See illustration E.) If you will compare the gore sections of the world map in illustration D with the corresponding parts of the world map in illustration E, you will see that on the Mercator map the meridians are straightened out, and the land is stretched crosswise to fill up the extra space. To make up for this crosswise stretching, Mercator also stretched his map in an up-and-down direction. In this way, he was able to keep the shapes of the continents correct, although not the sizes. On a Mercator map, North America seems larger than Africa, which is not true. All Mercator maps show lands far from the equator much larger than they really are. These maps are useful to navigators, however, because they show true directions.

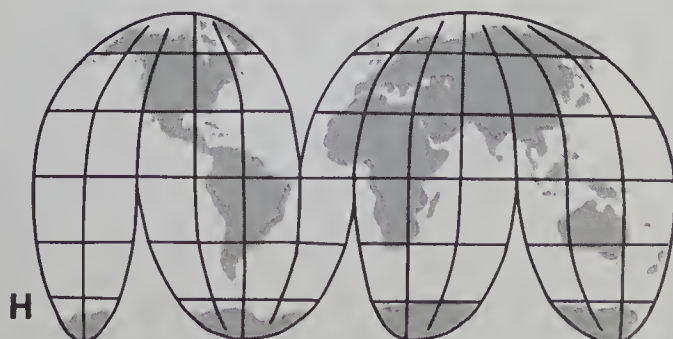
The gnomonic projection. Although navigators still use Mercator maps for determining directions, they may use a map drawn on a gnomonic* projection to find the shortest route between two places. (See illustration F.) On this map, the shortest distance between two places can be determined by drawing a straight line between them. This line always lies on the great circle that passes through the two places, because on the gnomonic projection, every straight line is part of a great circle.



F
GNOMONIC PROJECTION



G
MOLLWEIDE'S HOMOLOGRAPHIC PROJECTION

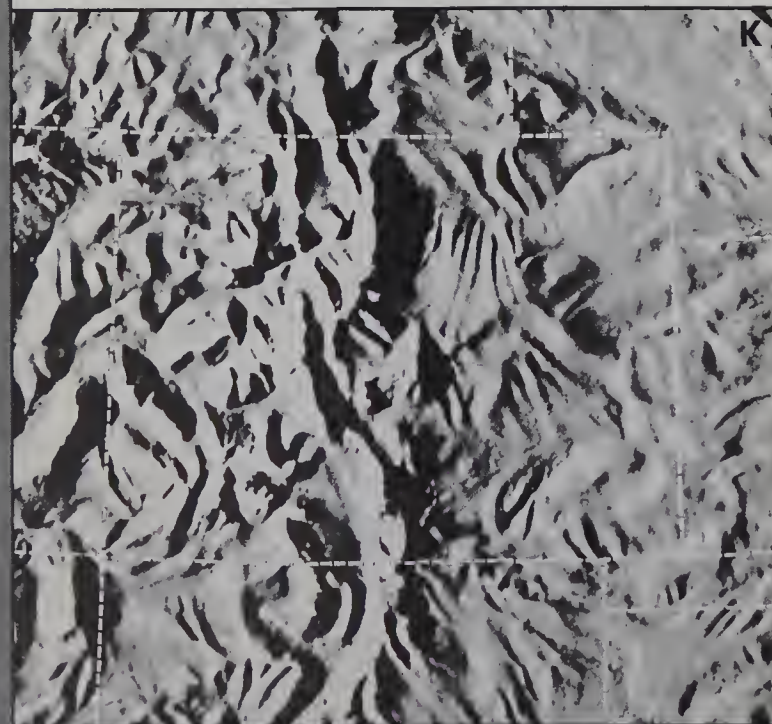
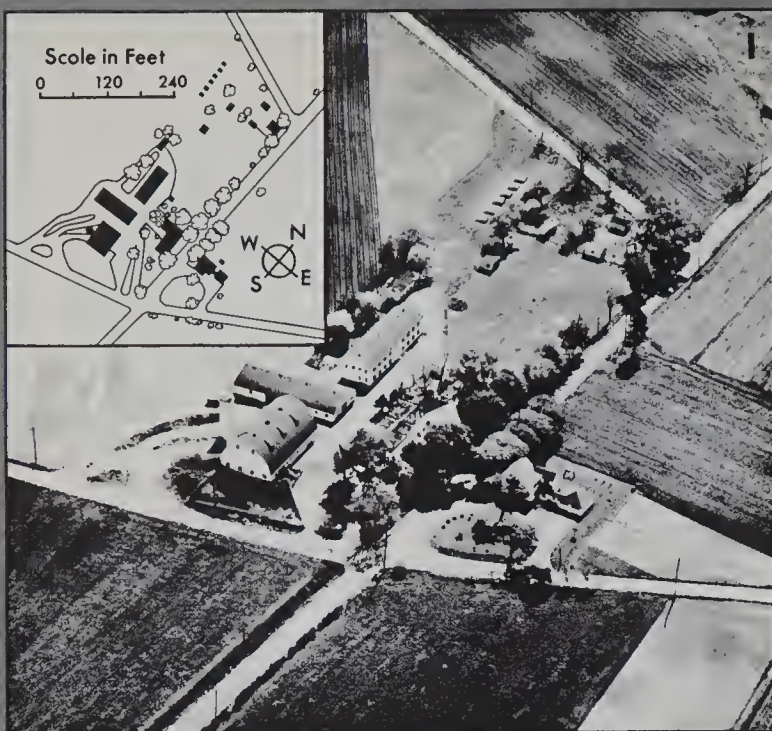


H
GOODE'S INTERRUPTED HOMOLOGRAPHIC PROJECTION

Great circle routes. In order to understand the fact that a direct east-west route, such as is shown on a Mercator map, is not the shortest distance between two points, you may want to perform the following experiment. On a classroom globe, locate Baltimore and Lisbon. These cities lie almost exactly on an east-west line just a little south of the 40th parallel. It is obvious that a ship sailing from Baltimore could reach Lisbon by setting its course due east. Take a piece of string and connect the two cities, letting the string follow the true east-west direction of the 40th parallel. You will notice that your string is loose. Now, draw the string taut. Notice that it now stretches far to the north of the 40th parallel. The path marked by the taut string, which is the shortest distance between Baltimore and Lisbon, is the great circle route between these two cities. You can find the great circle route between any two points on the globe by stretching a string tightly between them.

Equal-area projections. The Mercator and the gnomonic projections cannot be used for comparing areas in different parts of the world. Like many other projections, they do not show true areas, and are therefore useful only for certain special purposes.

Maps that show true areas are called equal-area maps. One square inch on any part of an equal-area map represents the same area on the earth as does any other square inch on the map. In order to draw an equal-area map of the whole world on a continuous flat surface, shapes must be distorted. (See illustration G.) To avoid this distortion, some equal-area maps are drawn on interrupted surfaces. The interruptions are arranged to fall at places that are unimportant for the purpose of the map. (See illustration H.)



READING MAPS

Maps that show sections of our earth. For many purposes, maps that do not show the entire surface of the earth are preferred. A map of a very small area can be drawn with greater accuracy and can include more details than a map of a large area.

Illustration I, at left, shows a photograph and a map of the same small section of the earth. The symbols on the map show the shape and location of things on the earth. The scale makes it possible to determine size and distance. Since north is not at the top of this map, a compass rose* has been included.

Maps for special purposes. Maps can show the location of many different kinds of things. For instance, they can show what minerals are found in certain places, or what crops are grown. A legend, or key, listing the symbols and their meanings is usually included on such maps. (See maps on pages 160 and 173.)

Symbols on some geography maps stand for quantities. For instance, map J, at left, gives information about the population in the western part of the United States. The legend tells what the dots on this map stand for. Of course, a symbol such as a dot may be used to represent different things on different maps. The map on pages 30 and 31 gives information about quantity in another way. Different designs, or patterns, cover areas that receive different amounts of yearly rainfall. (See also maps on pages 16, 17, and 85.)

Maps also help us to understand events that have occurred in history. The map on page 19 shows us political boundaries in Asia in 1910. (See other history maps on pages 119 and 124.)

READING ELEVATIONS

Some maps show the earth's relief. When you fly over the earth, you can see mountains, valleys, and other landforms. Such irregularities in the earth's surface are referred to as relief. For some purposes, maps and globes that show relief are required.

One way to show the earth's relief is to make a three-dimensional model of the landforms on the surface of a globe or map. There is a problem, however, since an exact model of the earth would be almost perfectly smooth. If one inch on a globe or map equals one hundred miles on the

earth, a mountain a mile high will rise only one hundredth of an inch above the surface of the map. Therefore, a different scale is used for the height of the landforms. If one inch on the vertical scale equals a height of four miles, a mile-high mountain will then be one fourth of an inch high. It will show up clearly on the globe or map.

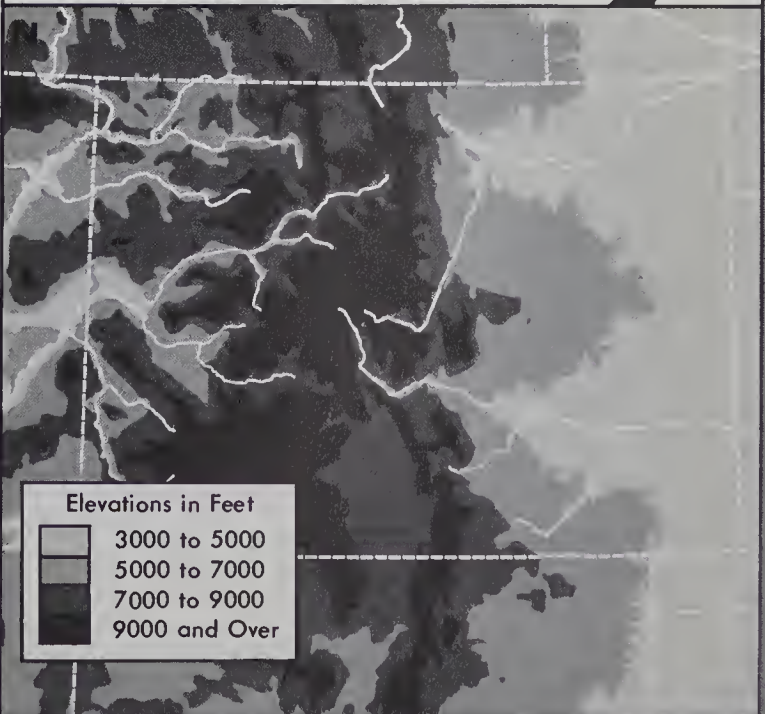
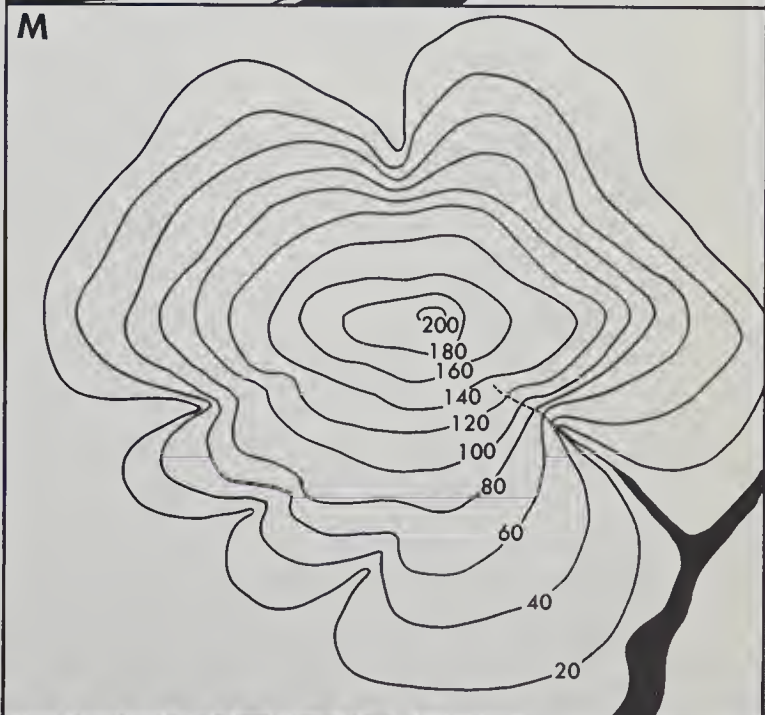
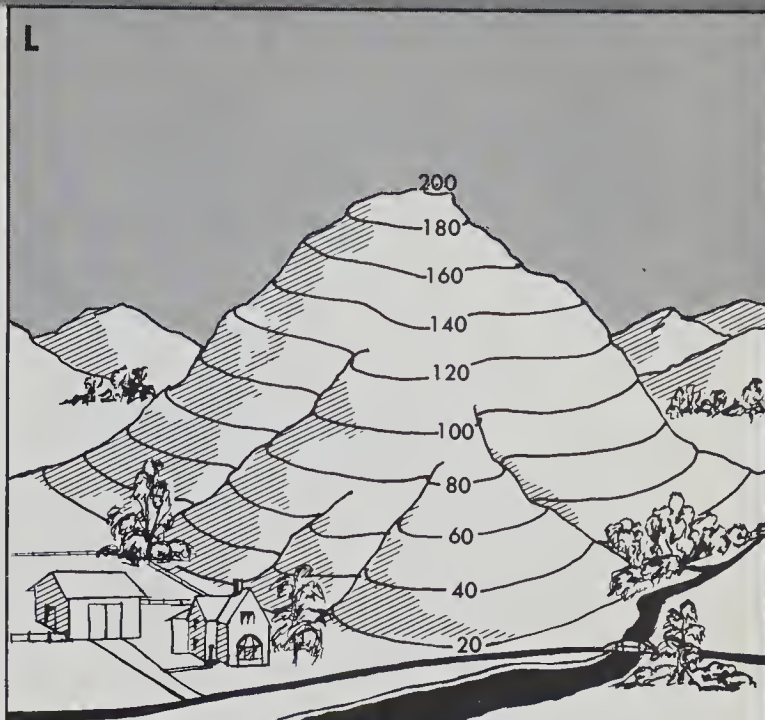
By photographing maps or globes with raised relief, flat maps that show landforms can be made. Map K, on the opposite page, is a photograph of a molded relief map. The maps on pages 10 and 11 are photographs of a globe with raised relief. Photographs such as these help show what land areas really look like.

Topographic maps. Another kind of map that shows the earth's relief is the topographic, or contour, map. On such a map, contour lines are drawn to show different elevations of the earth's surface. The illustrations on this page help to explain how a topographic map is made.

Illustration L is a drawing of a hill. Around the bottom of the hill is the first contour line. This line connects all the points at the base of the hill that are exactly 20 feet above sea level. Higher up the hill, another contour line is drawn connecting all the points that are exactly 40 feet above sea level. Other lines are drawn at intervals of 20 feet until the top of the hill is reached. Since the hill is generally cone-shaped, each contour line is shorter than the one next below it.

Illustration M shows how the contour lines in the drawing of the hill (L) can be used to make a topographic map. This map gives a great deal of information about the hill. Since each line is labeled with the elevation it represents, this map shows how high different parts of the hill are. Of course, land does not rise in layers, as it might appear from a topographic map. Wherever the contour lines are far apart, the land slopes gently. Where they are close together, the slope is steep. With practice, you can imagine the land as you look at such a map. Topographic maps are especially useful to engineers and architects.

On a topographic map, the spaces between the contour lines may be filled in with colors or with different shades of gray. Map N, at right, was made in this way. The four different shades of gray represent four different elevations of land, as indicated in the key box. This map shows about the same area as that in map K on the opposite page.



GLOSSARY

COMPLETE PRONUNCIATION KEY

The pronunciation of each word is shown just after the word, in this way: **alluvial** (ə lü'vi əl). The letters and signs used are pronounced as in the words below. The mark ' is placed after a syllable with primary or strong accent, as in the example above. The mark ' after a syllable shows a secondary or lighter accent, as in **archaeology** (är'ki ol'ə ji).

Some words, taken from foreign languages, are spoken with sounds that otherwise do not occur in English. Symbols for these sounds are given at the end of the table as "foreign sounds."

a	hat, cap	j	jam, enjoy	u	cup, butter
ā	age, face	k	kind, seek	û	full, put
ā	care, air	l	land, coal	ü	rule, move
ä	father, far	m	me, am	ū	use, music
b	bad, rob	n	no, in		
ch	child, much	ng	long, bring		
d	did, red			v	very, save
		o	hot, rock	w	will, woman
e	let, best	ō	open, go	y	young, yet
ē	equal, see	ô	order, all	z	zero, breeze
èr	term, learn	oi	oil, voice	zh	measure, seizure
		ou	house, out		
f	fat, if	p	paper, cup		
g	go, bag	r	run, try	ə	represents:
h	he, how	s	say, yes	a	in about
		sh	she, rush	e	in taken
		t	tell, it	i	in pencil
i	it, pin	th	thin, both	o	in lemon
ī	ice, five	TH	then, smooth	u	in circus

foreign sounds	Y as in French <i>du</i> . Pronounce ē with the lips rounded as for English ü in rule.	N as in French <i>bon</i> . The N is not pronounced, but shows that the vowel before it is nasal.
	œ as in French <i>peu</i> . Pronounce ā with the lips rounded as for ō.	H as in German <i>ach</i> . Pronounce k without closing the breath passage.

abaca (ä'bə kä'). A fiber obtained from the leaf stems of the abaca plant, which is related to the banana plant. Used to make rope and other products.

Aden (ä'dən). See **South Arabia**.

Allied. Refers to the Allies. See **Allies**.

Allies. The group of nations that defeated the Axis nations, chiefly Germany, Japan, and Italy, in World War II (1939-1945). The Allies included China, the United States, the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union, and many other countries. The Soviet Union, the United States, and Japan did not enter the war until 1941.

alluvial (ə lü'vi əl). Refers to soil that has been deposited by running water, usually where rivers lose speed and allow sand, silt, and other materials they are carrying to settle. River deltas are composed of alluvial deposits. See **delta**.

alluvium. Sediment, mainly sand and silt, that has been deposited by running water. See **alluvial**.

ancestor worship. A form of religion whose followers worship the spirits of their ancestors.

Angkor Wat (ang'kôr wät'). A magnificent stone temple located in Cambodia. Angkor Wat is one of the Angkor ruins now being restored. Angkor was once the capital city of the Khmer Empire. See **Khmer**.

animism (an'ə miz'əm). The belief that objects such as stones and trees possess spirits. People who believe in animism offer prayers and sacrifices to these spirits.

antimony. A brittle, silver-white element whose characteristics are chiefly metallic. It is used to harden soft metals such as tin and lead.

Arab (ar'əb). The name of a people who live chiefly in Arabia and North Africa. Arabia is a large peninsula in Southwest Asia occupied mainly by the country of Saudi Arabia.

archaeology (är'ki ol'ə ji). A science that is concerned with the study of the remains of ancient civilizations.

archipelago (är'kə pel'ə gō). A group of islands, or a body of water that is dotted with islands.

Aryan (är'i ən). A term used by historians to refer to the Indo-European speaking people who started coming to India from the plateaus of Iran sometime before 1500 B.C. See **Indo-European**.

Assyrians (ə sir'i ənz). A warlike people who lived in an area that is now the northern part of Iraq, in Southwest Asia. About 1100 B.C. the Assyrians began to push out of their territory, and by 800 B.C. they controlled most areas in the fertile valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. They borrowed most of their culture from the Babylonians. See **Babylonians**. The Assyrians built several cities with huge palaces. By about 600 B.C., after a series of weak kings, their power had declined, and they were conquered by the Medes and Babylonians.

autonomous regions. Five areas in China that are inhabited mainly by people who are not Chinese and for this reason supposedly have been granted some power of self-government. These areas are Inner Mongolia, Ningsia-Hui, Sinkiang-Uighur, Tibet, and Kwangsi-Chuang. The word "autonomous" means having the right of self-government. However, these five areas are strictly controlled by the Chinese Communist government.

Ayuthia (ä yüt tä yä). A city of about 50,000 people, located 40 miles north of Bangkok, in Thailand. Was the capital city until 1767. Contains many interesting ruins.

Babylonians (bab'i lō'ni ənz). A people who lived in southern Mesopotamia, an area that is now part of Iraq, in Southwest Asia. It is believed that the first civilization in this area was that of the Sumerians. See **Sumerians**. About 2400 B.C., the Sumerians were conquered by the Akkadians, who lived north of them. They became one people, known as the Babylonians, with a culture based on that of the Sumerians. The Babylonians built many cities, the largest of which was Babylon. They also carried on extensive trade with other areas of Southwest Asia. The rich land of the Babylonians attracted many invaders, and for many centuries control of their country passed from one conqueror to another. These wars of conquest gradually destroyed the cities and devastated the countryside. Soon after 100 B.C. the Babylonian civilization ceased to exist.

bamboo. Any one of several woody or tree-like plants of the grass family.

bauxite (bôk'sīt). The main ore from which aluminum is obtained.

Bhutan (bü tän'). A country in the Himalayas. Bhutan is governed by a maharaja, but India controls its financial system, foreign relations, and foreign trade. (See maps, pages 13 and 50.)

Brunei (brü nī'). A British-protected sultanate on the island of Borneo. (See map, page 90.)

Buddha (būd'ə), 563?-483 B.C. The title, meaning "the enlightened one," given to Siddhartha Gautama, the founder of the Buddhist religion. Buddha was born into a noble family in what is now Nepal. During his lifetime, he was troubled by human sorrows and sought truth, which he believed would bring happiness. According to tradition, what he considered to be the truth came to him in a revelation. He believed and taught that the desire for pleasure or possessions led to suffering, and that to obtain happiness one must suppress desires and lead a life of self-control and generosity. See **Buddhism**.

Buddhism (būd'iz əm). A religion founded by Gautama Buddha, who lived in India about 2,500 years ago. See **Buddha**.

Buddhist (būd'ist). Refers to the religion started by Gautama Buddha, and to its followers. See **Buddha**, **Buddhism**.

cacao (kə kă'ō). Seeds from which chocolate is made. Also, the tree that produces these seeds.

Cao Dai (kou'dī'). A religious sect that follows the religion of Caodaism, founded about forty years ago in what is now South Vietnam. Caodaism combines ideas from Buddhism, Taoism, Confucianism, and Christianity.

capital. The term used to describe any kind of wealth that is used to produce additional wealth. Includes land, money, factory buildings and machines, power plants, railroads, and steamships.

cassava (kə să'və). Also called manioc. Any one of several tropical plants with roots that look somewhat like sweet

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fār; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

potatoes. The roots of one kind of cassava, called bitter cassava, are poisonous when raw, but can be cooked and processed to make tapioca.

Chiang Kai-shek (chyäng'kī'shek'), 1887-. President of the Chinese Nationalist government. As a young man he was sent to Japan and the Soviet Union for military education. He became head of the Nationalist Party of China soon after the death of Sun Yat-sen.

Chinese Nationalist government. The government established by the Nationalist Party of China and led by Chiang Kai-shek. It controls only Taiwan and several small neighboring islands.

Colombo (kə lum'bō) **Plan.** A program to aid the economic development of countries in South and Southeast Asia. Provides advice and money, trains workers, and carries on research in agriculture and industry. Several Asian nations participate in this program, as well as Australia, New Zealand, Great Britain, and the United States.

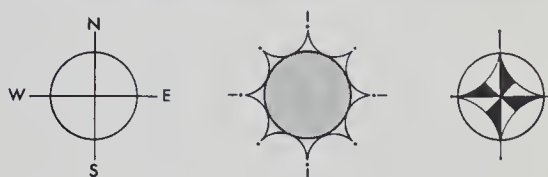
Commonwealth of Nations. A voluntary association of independent nations and their dependencies, headed by the British crown, that have joined together for mutual benefit.

communism. Commonly, the teachings and actions of the Communist parties in China, the Soviet Union, and other countries. Members of these parties are called Communists. They believe that Communist governments must be established throughout the world, by force if necessary. Under this form of government, industry, farming, trade, transportation, communication, education, and most other activities are controlled by the government.

Communist Party of China. The political party that controls the government and

people of mainland China. Was formed in 1921. Cooperated with the Nationalist Party of China from 1923 to 1927. Its leaders were driven by the Nationalists to a remote part of China. Struggled with the Nationalists for control of China. Succeeded in driving the Nationalists to Taiwan in 1949.

compass rose. A small drawing included on a map to show directions. A compass rose is often used as a decoration. Here are three examples of compass roses:



Confucianism (kən fū'shən izm). The teachings of Confucius and his followers. See **Confucius**.

Confucius (kən fū'shəs), 551?-479 B.C. A Chinese philosopher whose teachings were the main laws of conduct by which China's people lived for more than 2,000 years. Confucius believed that people should show moderation in all actions, obey their elders and rulers, and show a moral sense of responsibility toward their fellowmen.

constitutional monarchy. A country in which the government is headed by a king, queen, or emperor, whose powers are limited by a constitution.

conterminous (kon tēr'mi nəs) **United States.** The 48 states of the United States that are enclosed by an unbroken boundary. The word *conterminous* means "having the same boundary."

cooperative. A business that is owned by a group of people and is run for their benefit. For example, a group of farmers may form a marketing cooperative to take care of selling their crops.

copra (kop'ra). Dried coconut meat.

Corregidor (kə reg'ə dôr). An island located in the entrance to Manila Bay, in the Philippines. (See map, page 215.) In the early part of World War II, Americans and Filipinos fought bravely here against overwhelming numbers of Japanese invaders, but were forced to surrender on May 6, 1942.

Cyprus (sī' prəs). An island in the eastern Mediterranean Sea about 40 miles off the coast of Turkey in Southwest Asia. (See map, page 40.) The capital is Nicosia. Cyprus, a republic, gained its independence from Great Britain in 1960, and became a member of the Commonwealth of Nations in 1961. The majority of Cypriots are of Greek descent.

Dark Ages. A period in the history of western Europe, from about 500 to 1000. During this period, learning was neglected, and the arts and crafts of Greece and Rome were nearly forgotten.

December 8, 1941. The date in Manila at the time Pearl Harbor, in Hawaii, was being bombed by the Japanese (December 7, 1941). This difference in dates exists because Manila and Pearl Harbor are in different time zones. (See page 275.)

delta. A roughly triangular area of land that has been built up of alluvial deposits at the mouth of a river. The river often splits into branches as it builds up a delta. See **alluvial**.

dry farming. A way of farming in dry places where the land is not irrigated.

Farmers raise crops that need little moisture. They leave part of their land fallow, or not planted, each year to let the soil store up moisture.

dry rice. Rice that is not raised in flooded fields. It is raised much the same way as wheat.

Dutch East India Company. Dutch trading company formed in 1602. Was granted power to establish colonies, coin money, and make war or peace. Controlled all Dutch trade in territory stretching from South America westward to Africa. Was most successful in Indonesia. Had to spend so much money governing and guarding its territories that it went bankrupt. Was dissolved in 1798.

Dyaks (dī'aks). Brown-skinned people with straight black hair whom the Malays found living in Borneo when they first arrived there. Dyaks are divided into several different tribes.

dysentery (dis'an ter'i). A painful intestinal disease that causes the bowels to discharge blood and mucus. Spread chiefly by contaminated food and water.

Egypt. See **United Arab Republic**.

Eurasia. The largest land mass on the earth, composed of Europe and Asia.

Eurasian. A person who is of mixed Asian and European descent.

Fertile Crescent. A crescent-shaped area of land in Southwest Asia that extends from the Mediterranean Sea through the valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers to the Persian Gulf. (See map,

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fār; let, ēqual, térm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pût, rûle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

page 43.) This area has fertile soil and adequate water for farming. It lies mainly in the countries of Israel, Lebanon, Syria, Jordan, and Iraq.

Filipino (fil'ə pē'nō). A citizen of the Philippines.

free port. A port, or an area in a port, in which goods may be landed, handled, stored, and reshipped without payment of import taxes, called customs.

French Indochina. The part of Southeast Asia formerly controlled by the French. Cambodia, Laos, and North and South Vietnam now occupy this territory. (See maps, pages 13 and 19.)

French Union. A federation formed by the French in 1946, which included France and most of its former overseas empire. Was replaced in 1958 by the French Community.

Gama (ga'mə), **Vasco da**, 1469?-1524. A Portuguese navigator who made the first voyage from Europe to India, by sailing around the southern tip of Africa.

Gandhi (gän'di), **Mohandas Karamchand**, 1869-1948. A leader in the movement for the independence of India from Britain. Gandhi was born in India. As a young man he studied law in England and returned to India. In 1893 he went to South Africa, where he became a successful lawyer and led the Indian minority in that country in campaigns for civil rights. In this struggle he developed the idea of peaceful disobedience to the government. He returned to India in 1914, and in a few years began a movement to gain India's independence from Britain, using the method of nonviolent resistance. India gained its independence in 1947. In 1948 Gandhi was assassinated. Mahat-

ma, which means "great soul," was the name given to Gandhi by his followers.

Geneva (ji nē'və). A city in western Switzerland. Switzerland has been a neutral country for many years. Because of its neutrality, it is a popular meeting place for groups attempting to settle differences between nations. The European headquarters of the United Nations is located in Geneva. Many other international groups have their headquarters in this city.

George Town. Port city located on an island off the northwestern coast of Malaya. Usually called Penang, which is also the name of the island.

gnomonic (nō mon'ik) **projection.** A map projection made on a plane surface tangent to a globe, with the light source at the center of the globe. A map drawn on this projection cannot include an entire hemisphere, and it does not show shapes, areas, or directions accurately. Such a map is useful to navigators, however, because any straight line drawn on it lies on a great circle. The navigator draws a straight line on the map, connecting the beginning and end points of his trip. He then selects places along this line, and determines the latitude and longitude of these points. Next, he marks these points on a Mercator map, and connects them with straight lines. The straight lines on the Mercator map give him true directions. With these, he can set his compass and steer a course that lies approximately on the great circle route for his journey.

Gobi (gō'bi) **Desert.** A large desert, about 500,000 square miles in area, located in central Asia.

Himalaya (him ə lā'ə) **Mountains.** A mountain system about 1,500 miles long that stretches through southern Asia. (See map, page 13.) Includes Mount Everest, highest known peak in the world.

Hinduism (hin'dü iz əm). The main religion in India and several other parts of Asia. Its followers are called Hindus. They are divided into many groups, or sects, which have different religious customs and worship different gods. Some Hindus believe that these gods are only different views of the one true spirit of the universe.

Hoa Hao (hō'ə hou'). A religious sect in South Vietnam that follows a revised form of Buddhism.

Ho Chi Minh (hō chē min'), 1890- . President of North Vietnam. As a young man, he was active in the Communist movement in Paris, France. Later, as a Communist leader, he led the fight against France that finally brought about the partition of Vietnam in 1954. He was reelected president of North Vietnam in 1964.

Huk. Short name for the Hukbalahap, or "People's Army against the Japanese," which later changed its name to Hukbong Mapagpalaya ng Bayan, or "People's Liberation Army." An organization of guerrilla fighters, established in the Philippines during World War II to fight the Japanese. Later tried to overthrow the Philippine government. Included well-known Communists among its leaders.

hydroelectricity. Electricity produced by the force of rushing water. The water passes through turbines that operate generators from which electric current flows.

hypotheses (hī poth'i sēz). Possible answers, or "educated guesses." A hypothesis may prove to be false, but it helps us in our search for the right solution to a problem.

Indo-Chinese Peninsula. A large peninsula extending off the southeastern part of the continent of Asia. (See map, page 93.)

Indo-European. Refers to the language family to which the languages spoken by most people in Europe, India, and Iran belong. Also refers both to the modern people who speak these languages and the ancient peoples from whose languages these speech forms evolved. It is probable that the Indo-European family of languages originated in central or southwestern Asia.

industrial revolution. A term used to describe a change from an agricultural society, in which most goods are produced by hand labor for a local market, to an industrial society, in which most goods are produced by power-driven machinery for distribution on a large scale. The original Industrial Revolution began about 1760 in England. By 1790 it had brought about such great changes that later historians called it a revolution.

Islam (is'ləm). The religion founded by a prophet named Mohammed, who was born in Arabia in A.D. 570. According to

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fär; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

this religion there is only one God, and Mohammed is his prophet. Followers of Islam are called Moslems.

Judaism (jü'dā iz əm). The religion of the Jews, which is based on the teachings of the Old Testament, and on the Talmud, which is an interpretation of these teachings. The chief beliefs of Judaism are: there is one God, and the Jews were chosen by God to receive and defend this doctrine. Two other great world religions, Christianity and Islam, are derived from Judaism.

jute. A long, glossy fiber used to make burlap bags, twine, and other products. It is obtained from the stalks of two kinds of tropical plants also known as jute.

Kashmir. An area in South Asia that is claimed by both Pakistan and India. (See map, page 50.)

Khmer (kmer). Refers to a group of people from whom most present-day Cambodians are descended. Also, refers to the empire established by the Khmers, which at its height controlled the northern part of the Malay Peninsula and most of the fertile lowlands of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. The Khmer capital was at Angkor.

Lao (lä'ō). Refers to the largest group of people in Laos. Also, refers to their language.

Lower Mekong (mā'kong') River Basin Project. A plan to develop the Mekong River and its branches in order to make improvements in irrigation, flood control, navigation, and other fields. It will affect Cambodia, Laos, Thailand, and South Vietnam.

Magsaysay (mäg sī'sī), **Ramón**, 1907-1957. Son of a Filipino farm family. Worked his way through school. In World War

II, fought with United States Army and as a guerrilla. After the war, served as provincial governor, congressman, and Secretary of Defense. Worked successfully to put down Huk rebellion, and was elected president of the Philippine Republic. Died in an airplane crash. See **Huk**.

Malay (mā'lā). Refers to certain brown-skinned people who live in the Malay Peninsula and other parts of Southeast Asia. Also, the language of these people.

Malay Peninsula. The long, narrow body of land that extends southward from the Indo-Chinese Peninsula. (See map, page 93.)

manganese (mang'gə nēs). A grayish-white metal. Used mainly in the production of iron and steel.

mango. The name of a tropical fruit with juicy orange or yellow pulp, a large seed, and leathery skin. Usually about the size and shape of a pear. Also the name of the tree on which this fruit grows.

Mao Tse-tung (mä'ō dzu'dung'), 1893- . Chairman of the Communist Party of China. He helped to form this political party, in 1921, and led the Chinese Communist army against the Chinese Nationalist forces during the civil war in China.

marsupials (mär sü'pi əlz). The group of animals among which the mother usually carries her young in a pouch at the front of her body. Kangaroos belong to this group.

Mogul (mō'gul). The name of the empire in India established by Baber. Baber was a Mongol from central Asia who established himself as the Moslem ruler of the city of Kabul, in what is now Afghanistan. From Kabul he led

raids into India, finally defeating an alliance of kings and princes. He became emperor of India in 1526, and when he died in 1530 the Mogul Empire controlled most of northern India. His descendants expanded the Mogul Empire and ruled for about two hundred years.

Mohammed (mō ham'id), 570-632. An Arab who founded the Islamic religion. Mohammed was born in Mecca, a city in southwestern Arabia. He had visions in which he was commanded to preach the will of God. Mohammed, familiar with the ideas of Jews and Christians, adopted some of their teachings. He taught that there was only one God, and man must submit to him.

Moluccas (mə luk'əz). A group of islands in eastern Indonesia. Also called the Spice Islands. (See map, page 91.)

molybdenum (mə lib'də nəm). A metallic element that is silver-white in color. Used to make hard, strong steel.

Mongoloid (mong'gəl oid). A name that has been used for one of the hypothetical divisions of mankind. The Mongoloid peoples generally have yellowish skin and straight, black hair. Common among these people is the Mongolian eye fold, a fold of skin that stretches between the upper eyelid and the nose, giving a slant-eyed appearance.

Mongols (mong'gəlz). People from Mongolia, in east central Asia. In the thirteenth century, Mongol armies overran much of Asia, as well as parts of Europe.

monsoons. Winds that reverse their direction from season to season, notably in Asia. The summer monsoons are warm

and moist and usually bring heavy rainfall. Winter monsoons are cooler and drier. The name "monsoon" is derived from an Arabic word for season.

Moros (môr'ōz). Moslem Filipinos on the island of Mindanao and in the Sulu Archipelago of the Philippines.

Moslem (moz'ləm). Refers to the religion of Islam or to one of its followers. See **Islam**.

mosque (mosk). A place of worship for people who believe in Islam. See **Islam**.

Nasser (näs'ər), **Gamal Abdel**, 1918- . An Egyptian army officer who, in 1952, led a revolt in Egypt that overthrew King Faruk, and established a republic. Nasser became prime minister in 1954 and was elected president in 1956. One of his constant goals has been a union of all Arabs under the leadership of Egypt. A beginning of such a union was made in 1958, when Egypt and Syria formed the United Arab Republic, with Nasser as president. Syria, however, withdrew in 1961. Nasser has made socialistic reforms in Egypt, especially in redistribution of farmland.

nationalism. In colonial territories, the desire of subject peoples to gain independence and form politically unified countries. Nationalism has been an important force in Asia since World War II.

Nationalists. See **Chinese Nationalist government**.

Negritos (ni grē'tōz). Small Negroid people in remote parts of Southeast Asia. Usually less than five feet tall. Descended from some of Southeast Asia's earliest inhabitants.

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fār; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rûle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

nickel. A metallic element that is very hard and is silver-white in color. Is used in mixtures of metals and for plating articles made of other metals.

nomadic. Refers to nomads, people who wander from place to place, having no permanent home. They are usually herdsmen.

North Borneo. A former British colony on the island of Borneo. Now called Sabah. See **Sabah**.

oasis. A fertile area of a desert, in which there is enough water to permit the growth of vegetation.

opium (ō'pi əm). A habit-forming drug made from the juice of a certain kind of poppy. Used in making several medicines that relieve pain.

palm sugar. Sugar made from the sap of certain types of palm trees.

papaya (pə pä'yə). A melon-like tropical fruit that varies from yellow to orange in color. Grows on the papaya tree, which looks somewhat like a small palm.

Penang. Leading seaport and second largest city of the eleven Malayan states. Located on an island, also called Penang, off the northwestern coast of Malaya. (See map, page 262.)

People's Republic of China. The name that the Chinese Communists gave to China after they gained control of the country, in 1949.

Persia (pēr'zhə). Before 1935, the name of the country now called Iran. (See map, pages 12 and 13.)

Persians (pēr'zhənz). A people who lived in an area that is now the country of Iran, in Southwest Asia. Before 700 B.C., the Persians entered this area from Russia or central Asia and settled in the south. At first they were ruled by the Assyrians (see **Assyrians**), but by 550 B.C. the

Persians ruled the land. They set out on a great campaign of conquest, and soon after 500 B.C. their empire extended from Greece to India. They created a strong government and built many roads and irrigation projects. Before 400 B.C. their power started to decline under a series of weak kings, and in 330 B.C. they were conquered by the Greeks.

Philippine mahogany. Any of several kinds of trees in the Philippines, the wood of which is somewhat like mahogany.

phosphates (fos'fāts). Mineral substances found in certain rocks and in other sources. Used in making fertilizers and other products.

plateau (pla tō'). A broad area of high land.

pounded earth. A building material used for walls in China. Clay, sometimes mixed with straw, is poured into a wooden form about five feet long and eighteen inches deep, and is pounded firm. The form is then moved along, and the process is repeated until the wall is as long and high as needed. When the wall is completed, it is covered with plaster made of lime and clay. A coat of lime plaster may be applied over this to beautify the wall. Such walls are durable if they are protected by a waterproof roof and are not undermined by floods.

proteins (prō'tēnz). A group of substances found in the cells of plants and animals. Living things must have proteins in order to repair damaged cells and build new ones. Good food sources of proteins are eggs, meat, and soybeans.

pulses. A group of plants that includes peas and beans. Also, the edible seeds of these plants.

radiotelephone. An apparatus that uses radio waves instead of connecting wires for transmission of sound.

rainforests. Forests of broad-leaved evergreen trees, found in tropical areas that have heavy rainfall and no dry season.

Ramayana (rä mä'yə nə). One of the great epic poems of India. It tells of the adventures of a brave and noble prince named Rama, who was a god in human form.

rattan (ra tan'). A palm that has long, reedy stems. Provides a tough material, also called rattan, that is used in making furniture and other articles.

republic. A state that is not ruled by a king or emperor. Its government is actually or nominally run with the consent of the governed for the common good.

republics. In the Soviet Union, the fifteen major political divisions that form the nation. They are under the strict control of the central government.

revolution of rising expectations. A term used to describe the belief among people of underdeveloped countries that they are entitled to more of the goods and services that make life easier and more comfortable for people of developed or industrialized nations, especially those of the West. This belief rose very rapidly after World War II.

Romans. An ancient people who lived in and near the city of Rome, in the west central part of the Italian peninsula. The Romans began to be powerful about 300 B.C. They conquered most of western and southern Europe, all of

the lands on the shores of the Mediterranean, and much of Southwest Asia. By the fifth century A.D., most of their territory had been overrun by barbarian tribes.

Russia. Another name for the former Russian Empire. Today, a name often used when referring to the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, or Soviet Union. This also refers to the largest republic in the Soviet Union, the Russian Soviet Federated Socialist Republic. (See map, page 34.)

Sabah. One of the thirteen states of Malaysia, which became an independent nation in 1963. (See map, page 13.) Before Sabah became part of Malaysia, it was known as North Borneo. See **North Borneo.**

sago (sā'gō). A starch prepared from the spongy center of several types of tropical palm trees. The tree is cut down, and the center is removed, ground, washed, and strained. After more washings, a flour is produced that is used in making puddings and soups, and as a stiffening for textiles.

sanitation. The scientific application of sanitary methods for the prevention of disease. These methods include removal of filth, maintenance of a supply of safe drinking water, inspection of food, control of disease-carrying animals and insects, and the quarantine of persons ill with certain diseases.

satellite. Refers to a country that is controlled by a more powerful country. In astronomy, a satellite is a body that revolves about a larger object, as the moon revolves about the earth. In space

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fār; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rûle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

exploration, a satellite is a man-made object that is designed to orbit the earth, the moon, or some other large body in space.

sesamum (ses'ə məm). An herb that produces small, flattish seeds. These are used for their oil, and as a food. Also called sesame.

Shinto. Means "Way of the Gods." One of the most important religions in Japan. Shintoists worship gods of nature, such as gods of the sun, moon, and wind. They also worship the spirits of their ancestors and of Japanese heroes and rulers.

Shwe Dagon Pagoda. A huge, cone-shaped Buddhist temple in Rangoon, the capital of Burma. The temple stands on a hill that rises above the city. It is built of brick, covered with gold, and surrounded by many smaller shrines and pagodas. The Shwe Dagon Pagoda is the center of religious life in Burma.

Siam (sī am'). The former name of Thailand.

Sikkim (sik'im). A small Himalayan country that is ruled by a maharaja and is under the protection of India. India has control of Sikkim's internal affairs and of its defense and foreign relations. (See maps, pages 13 and 50.)

sisal (sī'səl). A strong, long-lasting fiber used in making different kinds of twine and rope. Obtained from the leaves of the sisal plant. These long, swordlike leaves grow directly from the short trunk of the plant.

Slavic. Refers to the Slavs and to their languages. The Slavic languages belong to the Indo-European family of languages. See **Slavs**.

Slavs. A large group of people who speak languages that are somewhat similar.

They are descendants of early people who were living near the western border of the Soviet Union when Christ was born. Russians, Poles, and Bulgarians all belong to the Slavic group of people.

South Arabia. Formerly called Aden. South Arabia consists of the Federation of South Arabia and the Protectorate of South Arabia. (See map, page 40.)

Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO).

An organization formed in 1954 for the purpose of preserving peace in Southeast Asia and the Southwest Pacific by helping the member nations of this area defend themselves against military aggression. Member nations of the organization are the United States, the United Kingdom, France, Australia, New Zealand, Pakistan, Thailand, and the Philippines. Although formed in 1954, did not go into effect until 1955.

Spice Islands. See **Moluccas**.

Stone Age. A period in the development of mankind when men used stone rather than metal tools. It is believed that the first people to emerge from the Stone Age were the Egyptians and the people of Mesopotamia, who began to use tools of bronze about 3000 B.C.

strait. A narrow passage of water connecting two large bodies of water.

Straits Settlements. A former British crown colony, which consisted mainly of Singapore, Penang, and Malacca.

Suez (sü ez') **Canal.** A ship canal across the Isthmus of Suez, in northeastern Egypt. Joins the Mediterranean with the Red Sea. It extends about 100 miles.

Sukarno (sü kär'nō), 1901-. First president of Indonesia. Son of a schoolteacher in Java. After receiving a degree

in engineering, Sukarno became active in the movement for independence. Was imprisoned and later exiled by the Dutch. During World War II, continued to work for independence. After Japan surrendered, he declared Indonesia to be independent and was chosen the first president.

Sulawesi (sü'lə wā'sē). Indonesian name for Celebes.

Sumerians (sü mēr'i ənz). A people who lived in what is now the country of Iraq, in Southwest Asia. It is believed that they came into this area before 3000 B.C. They built many cities, each of which was an independent state. Although they lived chiefly by irrigated farming, they carried on much trade with other peoples. The Sumerians invented a form of writing using picture-like symbols, used domesticated animals, made metal tools, built many large temples and palaces, and were skillful in many arts and sciences. About 2400 B.C. they were conquered by the people of Akkad, the territory north of Sumer. By 2000 B.C. the Sumerians had been absorbed by the invaders, and they became one people, known as the Babylonians. See **Babylonians**.

Sun Yat-sen (sün'yät'sen'), 1866-1925. A Chinese revolutionary leader, who is sometimes regarded as the "George Washington of China." Went to school in Hawaii, and studied medicine in Hong Kong. Organized a revolutionary group, later known as the Nationalist

Party, which helped to overthrow the Emperor of China.

Tagalog (tä gä'log). The language of a large group of people in the Philippines. It is one of three official languages of the country.

Taiwan (tī'wän'). An island off the southeastern coast of China. Also called Formosa.

Tamil (tam'əl). The language of a group of people in southern India. Also the name of these people. Many Tamils now live in Southeast Asia.

Taoism (tou'iz əm). A philosophy and religion, traditionally founded by a Chinese thinker named Lao-tzu, born about 604 B.C. He taught that there was only one true principle for people to follow. This was the Tao, which might be called "the Way." According to Lao-tzu, nature had its beginning in the Tao and followed its law. To find happiness, men had to give up pride and ambition, and live simply, as creatures in the world of nature did. Today, spirit worship and magic ceremonies have become an important part of Taoism.

technological. Refers to technology, which is the application of scientific knowledge and invention to the production of goods and the performance of work.

Tenasserim (tə nas'ər im). The part of Burma that extends into the Malay Peninsula. (See map, page 221.)

Thai (tī). Refers to Thailand and its largest group of people. Also, refers to a group of people from whom the present-day Thai, the Lao, and a group of

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fär; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

tribesmen called the Shan are descended. See **Lao**.

Tien Shan (tyen'shän'). A chain of high mountains stretching through northwestern China into the Soviet Union. (See map, page 12.) The highest peak rises 23,620 feet above sea level.

transpiration. The process by which plants give off through their leaves water that they have drawn out of the ground with their roots. This water is given off in the form of vapor. Scientists estimate that a medium-sized elm tree transpires about 15,500 pounds of water on a clear, dry day.

tropical. Typical of the tropics, the part of the earth between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

tundra. The cold, treeless plains that are located in or near Arctic areas.

tungsten. A rare metallic element that is silver-white in color and very hard. Used in making steel, filament wires for electric light bulbs, and other products.

Turkic. Refers to groups of people living in areas ranging from southeastern Europe to China, who speak related Turkic languages. There are six main groups of these languages, and each group has several variations or dialects.

underdeveloped. Refers to those countries in which most work is done by the muscle power of men and animals. In these countries, many natural resources are poorly used and the standard of living is low. In contrast are the developed countries, in which most work is done by power-driven machinery, resources are used extensively, and the general standard of living is high.

UNESCO. Short name for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. An agency of the United Nations. See **United Nations**.

United Arab Republic. The name adopted by Egypt and Syria upon their union as a single nation on February 1, 1958. The union was ended by a Syrian revolt in September, 1961. Since that time Egypt has continued to use the name. Although most of the United Arab Republic is on the continent of Africa, an area east of the Suez Canal is in Southwest Asia. (See map, page 40.)

United Nations. An organization formed in 1945 to work for world peace. More than 100 nations are members. Agencies related to the United Nations work to solve problems in fields such as health, agriculture, and labor.

veneer (və nir'). A thin sheet of wood, usually cut from a log of good quality to be glued onto a piece of less valuable wood.

Vietnam (vē et'näm'). A country in the eastern part of the Indo-Chinese Peninsula that was divided into two parts in 1954. These two parts are North Vietnam and South Vietnam. (Compare maps, pages 90 and 93.)

West. The countries that developed under the influence of Western civilization. See **Western**.

Western. Refers to the civilization that developed, under the influence of Christianity, from the ideas of the ancient Greeks and Romans. In the last two centuries, Western civilization has been greatly influenced by the Industrial Revolution, which introduced power-driven machinery for the production of most goods. Scientific development has also strongly influenced Western civilization.

West New Guinea (gin'i). The part of the island of New Guinea that came under

Indonesian administration, in 1963. (See map, page 91.) It had previously been administered by the United Nations. West New Guinea is called West Irian by the Indonesians.

World War I, 1914-1918. The first war in history that involved nearly every part of the world. The Central Powers — Germany, Austria, Turkey, and Bulgaria — were defeated by the Allies. These included Great Britain, France, Russia, Japan, and the United States.

World War II, 1939-1945. The second war in history that involved nearly every part of the world. The Allies, which included China, the United States, the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union,

and many other countries, defeated the Axis. The Axis included mainly Germany, Italy, and Japan. The Soviet Union, the United States, and Japan did not enter the war until 1941.

yaks. Buffalo-like oxen with long, shaggy hair, which are native to the Tibetan Plateau. The wild yak stands about six feet high at the shoulder and is black. Domesticated yaks, which are the offspring of wild yaks and Mongolian cattle, are somewhat smaller and are often partly white. Yaks are used as beasts of burden and as a source of meat, leather, and dairy products.

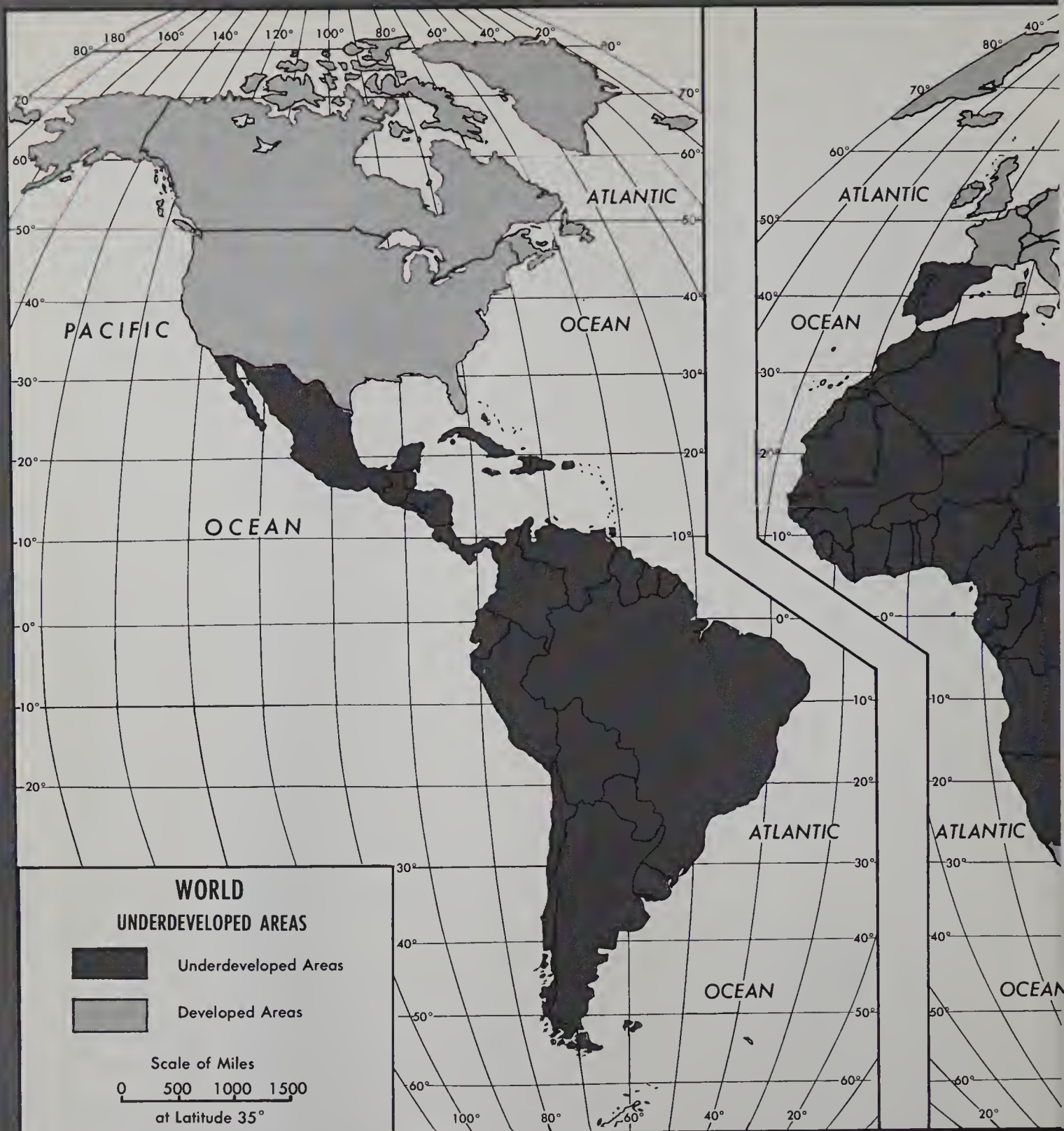
yaws. A highly contagious tropical disease that causes sores on the skin.

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, âge, câre, fär; let, ēqual, tèrm; it, ĭce; hot, ôpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pût, rûle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

Asia*

	Population	Area (sq. mi.)
Afghanistan	14,736,000	250,000
Bahrein	168,000	231
Bhutan	695,000	19,305
Brunei	93,000	2,226
Burma	23,664,000	261,789
Cambodia	5,900,000	69,898
Ceylon	10,625,000	25,332
China	735,000,000	3,691,502
Cyprus	600,000	3,572
Hong Kong	3,592,000	391
India (with Kashmir)	461,300,000	1,262,275
Indonesia	104,366,000	575,893
Iran	22,938,000	636,293
Iraq	7,039,456	167,568
Israel	2,474,700	7,993
Japan	98,000,000	142,726
Jordan	1,860,000	37,272
Korea, North	10,700,000	46,539
Korea, South	28,046,000	38,004
Kuwait	333,175	5,335
Laos	2,350,000	91,428
Lebanon	2,151,000	4,015
Malaysia	8,896,000	128,338
Mongolian People's Republic	1,019,000	604,247
Muscat and Oman	565,000	82,000
Nepal	9,700,000	54,362
Pakistan	100,709,000	365,529
Philippines	31,261,000	115,707
Qatar	55,000	4,000
Ryukyu Islands	936,000	848
Saudi Arabia	8,000,000	872,722
Sikkim	165,000	2,828
Singapore	1,775,200	224
South Arabia	1,200,000	112,000
Syria	4,980,000	71,228
Taiwan (Formosa)	11,884,000	13,952
Thailand	29,700,000	198,455
Trucial Oman	110,000	32,278
Turkey (including European part)	31,118,000	301,380
United Arab Republic (including African part)	28,500,000	386,100
U.S.S.R. (including European part)	226,253,000	8,649,489
Vietnam, North	17,300,000	60,156
Vietnam, South	15,500,000	66,280
West New Guinea	750,000	160,606
Yemen	5,000,000	75,290

*Figures are latest available; in some cases they are estimates.

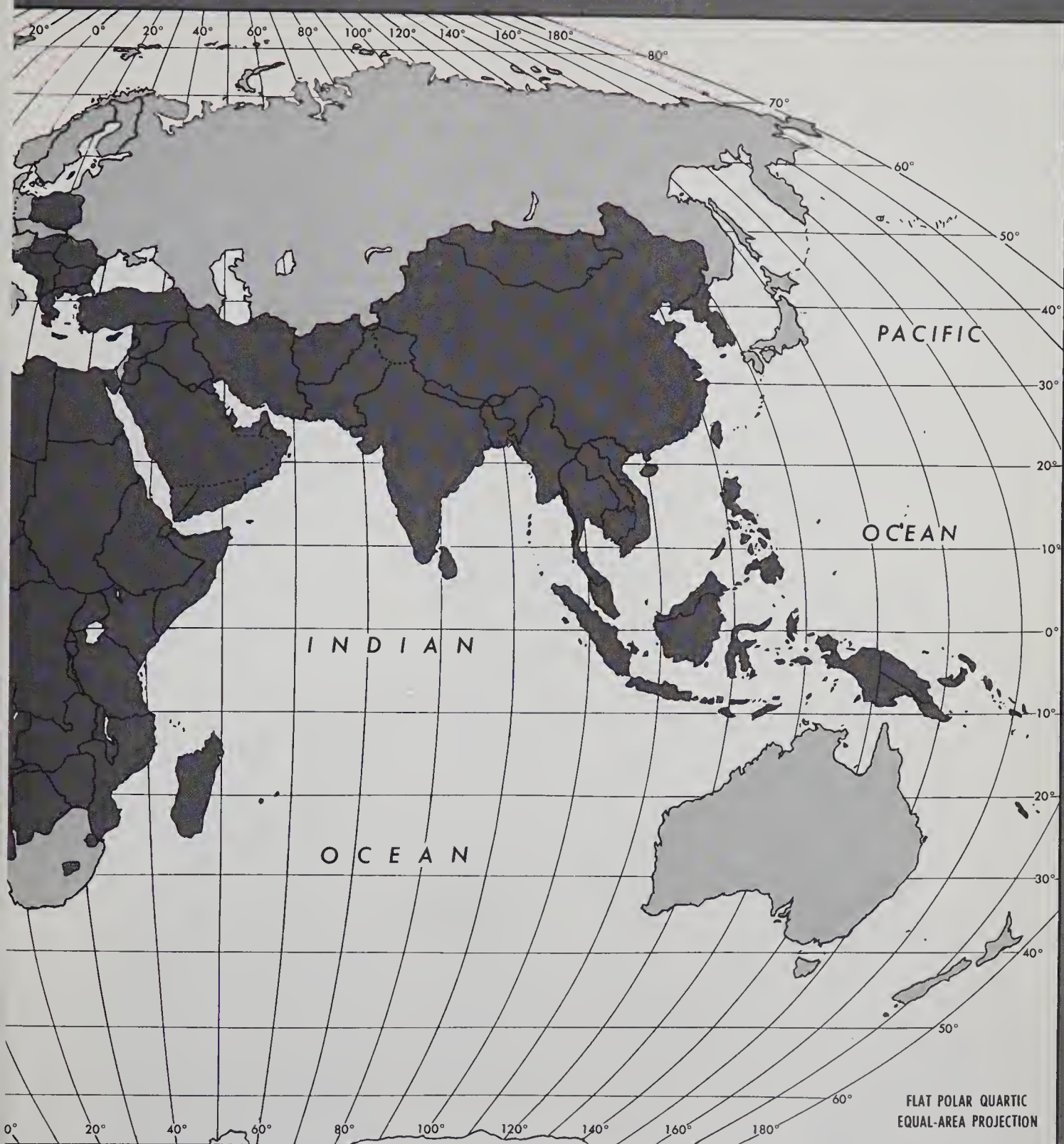


The map above shows the developed and underdeveloped parts of the world. The basic difference between these two groups of nations lies in the way their people produce the food and other goods they need. In the developed countries, this work is generally done with the help of power-driven machinery. In the underdeveloped countries, however, it is still generally done by hand or with simple tools driven by the muscle power of men or animals. The use of power-driven machinery enables the people of the developed world to produce much more than

those of the underdeveloped world. Consequently they enjoy a much higher standard of living.

The problems that hold back progress in the underdeveloped world frequently form vicious circles. For example, the farmers in underdeveloped countries generally raise so little food that their diets are inadequate and they cannot afford proper medical care. As a result, they do not have much energy and find it difficult to raise their level of productivity.

Several approaches are being tried to



solve the problems that hold back progress in underdeveloped countries. In Communist underdeveloped countries, such as China, dictatorial governments are forcing the people to work toward fulfilling development plans. All farms, factories, and other means of production in these Communist countries are under government control, and no opposition to the way the government runs them is permitted. The governments of many non-Communist underdeveloped countries also are taking a lead in directing their countries' progress. However, they

are using encouragement rather than force to obtain the cooperation of their people.

Neither the Communists nor the non-Communists are progressing rapidly in overcoming the problems of underdevelopment. This is because there are no quick or easy answers to these problems. The rich, developed countries of the world cannot ignore their weaker neighbors' struggle for a higher standard of living, however, for on the outcome of this struggle depends the peace of the world.

Books To Read

- Blair, Thomas A. *Climatology, General and Regional*. New York: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1942.
- Blanchard, Wendell. *Thailand*. (Human Relations Area Files, Inc.) New Haven: HRAF Press, 1958.
- Buss, Claude A. *Southeast Asia and the World Today*. Princeton: D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., 1958.
- Buttinger, Joseph. *The Smaller Dragon*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Inc., 1958.
- Butwell, Richard. *Southeast Asia Today — and Tomorrow*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Inc., 1961.
- Clyde, Paul H. *The Far East*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1958.
- Cressey, George B. *Asia's Lands and Peoples*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1963.
- Dobby, E.H.G. *Southeast Asia*. London: University of London Press Ltd., 1960.
- Durant, Will. *The Story of Civilization; Our Oriental Heritage*. New York: Simon and Schuster, Inc., 1954.
- Fessler, Loren. *China*. (Life World Library.) New York: Time Incorporated, 1963.
- Finch, Trewartha, Robinson, and Hammond. *Elements of Geography: Physical and Cultural*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1957.
- Ginsburg, Norton. *The Pattern of Asia*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1958.
- Groslier, Bernard. *The Arts and Civilization of Angkor*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, Inc., 1957.
- Hall, D.G.E. *A History of South-East Asia*. London: Macmillan & Co., Ltd., 1955.
- Hall, D.G.E. *Burma*. London: Hutchinson's University Library, 1950.
- Kahin, George McTurnan. *Governments and Politics of Southeast Asia*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press, 1959.
- Karnow, Stanley, and The Editors of *Life*. *Southeast Asia*. New York: Time Incorporated, 1962.
- LeBar, Frank M., and Suddard, Adrienne. *Laos*. (Human Relations Area Files, Inc.) New Haven: HRAF Press, 1960.
- Orwell, George. *Burmese Days*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and World, Inc., 1950.
- Palmer, R.R. *Atlas of World History*. Chicago: Rand McNally & Company, 1957.
- Payne, Robert. *Portrait of a Revolutionary: Mao Tse-tung*. New York: Abelard-Schuman, Ltd., 1961.
- Peffer, Nathaniel. *The Far East*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press, 1958.
- Pounds, Norman J. G. *Political Geography*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1963.
- Pounds, Norman J. G. *The Earth and You*. Chicago: Rand McNally & Company, 1962.
- Purcell, Victor. *The Chinese in Southeast Asia*. London: Oxford University Press, Inc., 1951.
- Reischauer, Edwin O., and Fairbank, John K. *East Asia: The Great Tradition*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1960.
- Robequain, Charles. *Malaya, Indonesia, Borneo and the Philippines*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1958.
- Schwartz, Benjamin. *Chinese Communism and the Rise of Mao*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1951.
- Scigliano, Robert G. *South Vietnam*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1963.
- Shabad, Theodore. *China's Changing Map*. New York: Frederick A. Praeger, 1956.
- Sickman, Laurence, and Soper, Alexander. *The Art and Architecture of China*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, 1960.
- Snow, Edgar. *The Other Side of the River*. New York: Random House, 1962.
- Spencer, J. E. *Asia East by South*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1954.
- Steiger, G. Nye. *A History of the Far East*. Boston: Ginn and Company, 1944.
- Steinberg, David J. *Cambodia*. (Human Relations Area Files, Inc.) New Haven: HRAF Press, 1959.
- Van Riper, Joseph E. *Man's Physical World*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., 1962.
- Vinacke, Harold M. *A History of the Far East in Modern Times*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1959.

INDEX

Explanation of abbreviations used in this Index:

p — pictures *m* — maps

- Aden (ä'dən), 19, *m* 19. *See also* South Arabia
- Aegean (i jē'an) Sea, 11, *m* 12
- Afghanistan (af gan'ə stan), 19, 58, 59, 295, *p* 83, *m* 19, 50
- Agriculture, *see* Farming, Herding, *and* names of countries
- Anawrahta (ə nō'rä tə), 224
- Ancestor worship, 140, 281
- Angkor (ang'kôr), Cambodia, 116, *p* 116, *m* 234
- Angkor Wat, 85, 116, 281, *p* 238
- Animism (an'ə miz'əm), 281; Cambodia, 236; Laos, 253; Malaysia, 270; Southeast Asia, 141, *p* 142; Vietnam, 246
- Annam, 241. *See also* Vietnam
- Annam coast, 108, 110, *m* 90
- Arabia (ə rä'bi ə), 40, *m* 19. *See also* Arabian peninsula
- Arabian peninsula, 43-45, *m* 43; climate, 43; history, 44, 45; land, 43, *p* 44; minerals, 45; people, 43; after World War I, 44
- Arab (ar'əb) League, 41
- Arabs, 40, 41, 44, 47, 48, 84, 281, *p* 41; in Indonesia, 205
- Aral (ar'əl) Sea, 36-37, *m* 12
- Arctic Ocean, 11, *m* 12
- Armenians (är mē'ni ənz), 38
- Arts in Southeast Asia, 195-202, *p* 195-202; dancing, 198, *p* 198, 200; literature, 200-201; music, 200, *p* 200; nonreligious art and architecture, 197-198, *p* 197; painting, 201, *p* 202; religious architecture and art, 196-197, *p* 195, 196; shadow-puppet plays, 199-200, *p* 199; wood carving, 198, *p* 201
- Aryans (är'i ənz), 52, 281, *p* 52
- Asahan (ä'sä hən') Falls, 165
- Asia, 9-86, 295, *m* 10-13; and the Cold War, 21-22; contrasts, 23, *p* 23; contributions to the world, 84-85, *p* 84; development of civilizations, 84-85; earning a living, 23; foreign control, 15, 18, 19; global view, 10-22; in 1910, 19, *m* 19; problems of independence, 21; nationalism, 15, 18; natural resources, 14, *p* 14; population, 15, 295; population distribution, *m* 17; regions, 23, 24, *m* 24-25; revolution of rising expectations, 18, 21, 290; standard of living, 23; underdevelopment, 74-83, 86; during and after World War I, 19; during and after World War II, 15, 18, 19. *See also* Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, East Asia, South Asia, Southeast Asia, Southwest Asia, *and* Soviet Asia
- Association of Southeast Asia, 220
- Assyrians (ə sir'i ənz), 48, 281
- Ayuthia (ä yüt tä yä), Thailand, 231, 232, 282, *p* 231, *m* 136
- Azerbaijdzhanians (az'ər bī-jän'i ənz), 38
- Babylonians (bab'i lö'ni ənz), 48, 282
- Bagan Siapiapi (bä'gän sē'ä-pi ä'pi), Indonesia, 157, *m* 136
- Baguio (bäg'ē ō), Philippines, *p* 113, *m* 136
- Bali (bä'li), Indonesia, 137, *p* 205, *m* 90
- Bamboo, 168, 282, *p* 169
- Bandung (bän'dung'), Indonesia, 208, *m* 136
- Bangkok (bang'kok), Thailand, 95, 136, 183-184, 229, 230-231, *p* 184, 230, *m* 90, 136
- Batavia (bə tä'vi ə), Indonesia, *see* Djakarta
- Batik (bə tēk'), 171-172, *p* 172
- Bedouins (bed'ü inz), 43
- Bhamo (bə mō'), Burma, 181, *m* 136
- Bhutan (bü tän'), 58-59, 282, 295, *m* 50
- Blue Mosque (mosk), *p* 40
- Bohol (bō hōl'), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Borneo (bôr'ni ō), 98, 100-101, *p* 101, *m* 90, 206, 268
- Borobudur (bôr'ə bü dūr'), 196, 209, *p* 196
- British, in Borneo, 269; in Malaya, 266; in Singapore, 272-273; in Thailand, 232
- British Borneo, 257, 258. *See also* Brunei, Sabah, *and* Sarawak
- Brooke, James, 269
- Brunei (brü nī'), 88, 98, 258, 268-270, 282, *m* 268
- Buddha (büd'ə), Gautama, 52-53, 139, 282
- Buddhism (büd'iz əm), 52-53, 85, 282, *m* 85; Bhutan, 58-59; Burma, 139, 190, 222; Cambodia, 139, 236; Ceylon, 59; India, 52-53; Indonesia, 209; Korea, 72; Laos, 139, 253; Malaya, 262; Mongolia, 29; Sikkim, 59; Thailand, 139, 229, *p* 140; Tibet, 29; Vietnam, 139-140, 246
- Buddhist (büd'ist) wats, 233, *p* 233
- Burma, 88, 89, 221-226, *p* 222-226, *m* 90, 221; area, 221;

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fär; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, püt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

- British in, 224-225; capital, 224; cities, 224, *m* 136; climate, 222; communication, 223; Communists, 225; currency, 221; earning a living, 222-223; education, 226, *p* 226; farming, 147-148, 223, *p* 148; farm products, 221, 223; festivals, 190-191, *p* 190; government, 226; history, 224-226; income, 221; independence, 225; industry, 223, *p* 223; Japanese in, 225; land, 221-222; literacy, 221; natural resources, 221, 222, *p* 222; people, 222, *p* 134, 224, 226; population, 221; rainfall, 30, 222; regions, 222, 223, *m* 221; religion, 139, 222; sports, *p* 192; transportation, 223, *p* 179, 181; World War II, 225
- Burmans, 222
- Cambodia (kam bō'di ə), 88, 89, 234-240, *p* 235-238, 240, *m* 90, 234; area, 234; arts, 198, *p* 195, 197; capital, 238, *m* 234; cities, 237, 238, *p* 237, *m* 234; climate, 235; communication, 238; currency, 234; earning a living, 236-237; education, 240; farming, 147-148, 236, *p* 235; farm products, 234, 236; festivals, *p* 191; French in, 239; government, 239-240, *p* 240; history, 238-239; homes, *p* 236; income, 234; independence, 239; industry, 237; land, 234; language, 236; literacy, 234; natural resources, 234, 235; people, 235-236, *p* 236, 239, 240; population, 234; rainfall, 235; regions, 235, 236; religion, 139, 236; transportation, 237-238, *p* 183
- Cambodians, 228, 235, 246
- Cao Dai (kou'dī'), 243, 246, 282, *p* 246
- Caspian (kas'pi ən) Sea, 11, 36, *m* 12
- Caucasus (kō'kə səs) Mountains, 11, *m* 12
- Cebu (sā bū'), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Cebu (city), Philippines, 218, *p* 219, *m* 136
- Celebes (sel'ə bēz), 98, 101, 206, *m* 91, 206
- Ceylon (si lon'), 50-51, 59, 295, *p* 59, *m* 50
- Chams (kamz), 245
- Chao Phraya (chou prī'ə) River, 230, *m* 90
- Chiang Kai-shek (chyäng' kī'shek'), 283
- Chiang Mai (jē äng'mī'), Thailand, 231, *m* 136
- China, 63-68, 295, *p* 62, 63, 66, 67, *m* 66; aids Vietnam, 242; autonomous regions, 27, 281; climate, 66; under communism, 65, 82; Communists, 64, 65; history, 63-65; land, 66; Nationalists, 64-65; natural resources, 66, *p* 66; people, *p* 62, 67; population, 295; becomes a republic, 64; problem of underdevelopment, 67
- China Proper, 61, 66, *m* 61. *See also* China
- Chinese, 32, *p* 62, 67; British Borneo, 258; Burma, 222; Cambodia, 235, 238; Indonesia, 205; Laos, 253; Malaysia, 258, 263, 270; Philippines, 216; Singapore, 257, 258, 259, 271; Thailand, 228; Vietnam, 241, 246
- Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, 24, 26-29, 32, *p* 26-29, 32, *m* 25, 27; climate, 27; history, 27; land, 27-28, *p* 26-28, 32; natural resources, 28; population, 27; rainfall, 27; size, 27
- Chinese Empire, 19, 116-117, *m* 19
- Cholon (shə lōn'), South Vietnam, 95, 249, *m* 90
- Christianity, 85, *m* 85; Ceylon, 59; Korea, 72; Malaysia, 270; Philippines, 216, 218; Southeast Asia, 119, 121, 140-141; Southwest Asia, 41; Vietnam, 246
- Chulalongkorn (chū'lā'lōng'-kōn), 232
- Cinchona (sin kō'nə) trees, 152
- Cities, *see* names of cities and names of countries
- Civilizations, 61, 84-85
- Clark Field, Philippines, 123
- Climate, Arabian peninsula, 43; Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, 27; dry season, 107, 108, 110; East Asia, 61; Indo-Chinese Peninsula, 108, 110, *p* 108, 110; Indonesia, 111; Korea, 72; Malay Peninsula, 111, *p* 111; Philippines, 112, *p* 112, 113; rainy season, 107, 108; Siberia, 35-36; South Asia, 51; Southeast Asia, 106-113, *p* 106, 108, 110-113, *m* 107, 109; Southwest Asia, 40; Tibet, 28; Transcaucasia, 38. *See also* names of countries
- Coconuts, 150-152, *p* 151
- Cold War, 21-22; Afghanistan, 59; India, 57; Nepal, 59; Southeast Asia, 89; Southwest Asia, 43
- Colombo (kə lum'bō) Plan, 174, 283
- Commonwealth of Nations, 259, 283
- Communication in Southeast Asia, 187, *p* 187. *See also* names of Southeast Asian countries
- Communism, 283; in the Americas, 21; Asia, 21-22; China, 65, 82; Eurasia, 21, *m* 21; Southwest Asia, 43; Soviet Union, 21
- Communist China, 174. *See also* China
- Communist Party of China, 283
- Communist Party of North Vietnam, 250-251
- Communists, 21-22, 67-68; Burma, 225; China, 64, 65, 82; Indonesia, 210; Korea, 71; Laos, 255; Malaya, 267; North Vietnam, 250-251; Philippines, 219-220; South Asia, 54, *p* 54; Southeast Asia, 89, 128; South Vietnam, 243-244; Tibetan revolts against, 29; attempt to solve underdevelopment, 82; Vietnam, 242
- Confucianism (kən fū'shən-izm), 283; Korea, 72; Malaya, 262; Vietnam, 140, 246

- Confucius (kən fū'shəs), 65, 283
- Continents, 11, 14, *m* 10, 11
- Copra (kop'rə), 145, 152, 284, *p* 152; Southeast Asia, 88
- Corregidor (kə reg'ə dōr) Island, Philippines, 284, *p* 125
- Crafts, 171-172, *p* 170-172
- Cyprus, 24, 284, *m* 40
- Dalai Lama (də lā'lā'mə), 29
- Dams, 165, 166, *p* 165
- Dark Ages, 84, 284
- Darul Islam, 210
- Developed countries, 75-76, 79, 80, 86, 296, 297, *p* 75, *m* 296-297
- Djakarta (jə kært'ə), Indonesia, 186, 207-208, *p* 208, *m* 136
- Dravidians (drə vid'i ənz), 52
- Dutch, Indonesia, 209, 210; Malaya, 266; Thailand, 232
- Dutch East India Company, 209, 284
- Dyaks (dī'aks), 270, 284
- Earning a living, crafts, 217; farming, 23, 36, 37, 38, 58, 69, 145, 205, 216, 222-223, 229, 236, 263; fishing, 36, 207, 216, 229, 236, 264; goods and services, 207, 237, 264; government, 237; herding, 29, 36, 37, 38; industry, 36, 37, 38, 173, 205, 216, 223, 229, 237, 264; lumbering, 36, 207, 216, 229; mining, 36, 207, 216, 229, 264; professions, 237, 264; trapping, 36. *See also* names of countries
- East Asia, 60-72, *p* 60, 62-67, 69-72, *m* 25, 61; climate, 61; divisions, 61, *m* 61; history, 61, 63, *p* 63; land, *p* 60, 65, 70; population density, 61; Westerners in, 61, 63
- East Indies, 209. *See also* Indonesia
- Education, Southeast Asia, 130, *p* 130. *See also* names of Southeast Asian countries
- Egypt (ē'jipt), 48, *m* 40. *See also* United Arab Republic
- Egyptians (i jip'shənz), 84
- Electric power, *see* Hydroelectricity
- Equal-area projections, 277
- Euphrates (ū frā'tēz) River, 47, *m* 12
- Eurasia, 11, 284; parts not under Communist control, *m* 21; parts under Communist control, 21, *m* 21
- Exports, Ceylon, 59; Southeast Asia, 143, 145, 147-148, 149, 150, 152, 156, 161, 164, 166, 167, 181, *p* 159, 167, 222
- Farming, Asia, 23; Cambodia, *p* 23; collective, 36, *p* 38, 47; India, 55, 56, *p* 56, 74; Japan, 23, 69, *p* 70; Mongolia, 32; Philippines, 104, 216, *p* 104, 216; Siberia, 36, *p* 35; Sinkiang, 32; Southeast Asia, 97, 100, 104, 143-153, *p* 23, 92, 104, 143-148, 150-153, *m* 149; Soviet Middle Asia, 37, *p* 37; Tibet, 28; Transcaucasia, 38, *p* 38; United States, *p* 75; Vietnam, *p* 247. *See also* Herding
- Farming methods, dry farming, 46, 284; India, 56; irrigation, 28, 37, 46, 51, 84; Israel, 48; shifting cultivation, 145; Southeast Asia, 145-146, *p* 146-148
- Farm products, abaca, 152, 281, *p* 153; barley, 28; beans, 148; coconuts, 56; coffee, 152; corn, 148; cotton, *p* 37; fruit, 38, 148; kapok, 152; palm oil, 145, 152; peas, 28; pineapple, 152; spices, 152, *p* 118; sugarcane, 148; sweet potatoes, 148; tea, 38, 145, 152, *p* 145; tobacco, 145, 152; wheat, 55, 66. *See also* Copra, Rice, Rubber, and names of countries
- Fertile Crescent, 44, 47-48, 84, 284-285, *m* 43
- Fish, as a food, 154; processing, 156, 157. *See also* Fishing
- Fishing, in coastal waters, 156-157, *p* 157; on Great Lake, 155-156, *p* 154, 156; with nets, 155, 156, 157; Siberia, 35, 36; Southeast Asia, 154-158, *p* 154-158; with traps, 155, 156, 157, *p* 155, 156; ways of improving, 157, *p* 158
- Flood control, 166
- Food consumption, *see* World food consumption
- Ford Foundation, 174
- Forest products, 166, 167, 168, *p* 167
- Forests of Southeast Asia, coastal, 167-168, *p* 168; mangrove, 168; monsoon, 166-167, *p* 167; mountain, 167; tropical rainforests, 166
- Formosa (fōr mō'sə), *see* Taiwan
- French, Cambodia, 239; Laos, 254, 255; Thailand, 232; Vietnam, 241, 242, 245
- French Indochina, 239, 241, 242, 254-255, 285, *m* 124
- Funan, 238-239. *See also* Cambodia
- Gama (ga'mə), Vasco da, 118, 119, 285, *m* 119
- Gandhi (gān'di), 53-54, 285
- Gautama Buddha, *see* Buddha, Gautama
- Geneva Agreements, 242, 255
- George Town, Malaysia, *see* Penang, Malaysia
- Georgians, 38
- Gnomonic (nō mon'ik) projection, 277, 285, *m* 277
- Government, *see* names of Southeast Asian countries
- Grazing, *see* Herding
- Great Lake, 95, 155-156, 234, *p* 154, 156, *m* 90, 234
- Greek civilization, 84
- Gulf of Siam, 237, *m* 90
- Haiphong (hī'fōng'), North Vietnam, 249, *m* 241

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fār; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

- Handicrafts, *see* Crafts
- Hanoi (hä noi'), North Vietnam, 95, 249-250, *p* 250, *m* 241
- Health, Southeast Asia, 130, 133, *p* 130
- Herding, Arabian peninsula, 43; India, 55; Iran, 46, *p* 45; Mongolia, 29, *p* 29; Siberia, 36; Sinkiang, 32, *p* 32; Soviet Middle Asia, 37; Tibet, 28, 29; Transcaucasia, 38; Turkey, 46
- Himalaya (him ə lä'ə) Mountains, 50, 286, *p* 26, 49, *m* 12-13
- Himalayas, *see* Himalaya Mountains
- Hinduism (hin'dü iz əm), 85, 286, *m* 85; Ceylon, 59; India, 52, 56, *p* 52; Indonesia, 209; Malaya, 263; Nepal, 59; Pakistan, 58; Sikkim, 59; Southeast Asia, 137, 197
- History, Arabian peninsula, 44, 45; Borneo, 269; Burma, 224-226; Cambodia, 238-239; China, 63-65; Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, 27; East Asia, 61, 63; Fertile Crescent, 48; India, 52-54, 56, *p* 52-54; Indonesia, 18, 209-211; Iran, 46-47; Japan, 68-69; Korea, 70-71; Laos, 254-255; Malaya, 265-267; Philippines, 218-220, *p* 121, 125, 127; Singapore, 272-273; South Asia, 52-54, *p* 52-54; Southeast Asia, 114-131, *p* 115-118, 121-123, 125-130, *m* 114, 119, 124; Thailand, 231-232; Turkey, 46-47; Vietnam, 241-244, *p* 242
- Hoa Hao (hō'ə hou'), 243, 246, 286
- Ho Chi Minh (hō chē min'), 241-242, 250, 286, *p* 122
- Hokkaido (hō'kī'dō), Japan, 70
- Homes, Arabian peninsula, 43, *p* 44; Cambodia, *p* 236; India, 56, *p* 55; Japan, 70; Sinkiang, 32; Thailand, 133-134, *p* 133
- Hong Kong, 64, 295, *p* 15, 64, *m* 61
- Huhs, 219, 286
- Hydroelectricity, 286; India, 57; Southeast Asia, 165-166, *p* 165
- Ibn-Saud (ib'en sä üd'), Abdul-Aziz, 44
- Imports, Ceylon, 59; Japan, 69; Southeast Asia, 161, 176, 177, 181
- India, 51, 52-53, 54, 55-57, *p* 50-52, 54-57, *m* 50; area, 295; caste system, 52, 56; cities, *p* 51; climate, 55, 56; and the Cold War, 57; farming, 55, 56, *p* 56, 74; herding, 55; history, 52-54, 56, *p* 52-54; homes, 56, *p* 55; independence, 53-54, *p* 53; industry, 57, *p* 57; land, 55, *p* 50, 55; languages, 56; people, 55, 76-77, *p* 20, 51, 55-57; population, 295; religion, 52-53, *p* 52; utilization of resources, 56-57; approach to solving underdevelopment, 83
- Indians, Burma, 222; Singapore, 271; Thailand, 228; Vietnam, 246
- Indochina, *see* French Indochina
- Indo-Chinese Peninsula, 286, *m* 93; climate, 108, 110, *p* 108, 110; land, 94-95, *p* 94, 95
- Indo-European, 32, 47, 286
- Indonesia (in'dō nē'zhə), 88, 89, 204-211, *p* 205, 207, 208, 211, *m* 90-91, 93, 206; area, 204; arts, 198, *p* 198, 199, 201, 202; capital, 207-208; cities, 136, 207-209, *m* 136; climate, 111, 204; communication, 207; crafts, *p* 172; currency, 204; under Dutch rule, 18; earning a living, 205, 207, *p* 207; education, 130, 211, *p* 130, 202, 211; exports, 204; farming, 152, 205, *p* 92, 145-147; farm products, 204; festivals, 191; government, 211; history, 18, 209-211; income, 204; independence, 18, 210; problems of independence, 210; industry, 204, 205, 207, *p* 174, 207; islands, 206, *m* 206; land, 98-102, 204, *p* 99-101, 205; language, 205; literacy, 204; natural resources, 204-205; opposition to Malaysia, 258, 259; people, 205, *p* 139, 207, 208; plant and animal life, 99; population, 204; rainfall, 204; religion, 137, 139, 204, 205, 209, *p* 139; rubber, 148; sports, 193, *p* 193; temples, *p* 196; transportation, 207; during and after World War II, 209-210
- Industrial revolution, 75, 76, 286
- Industry in Southeast Asia, cement, 177, *p* 175; aid in establishing, 174-175; difficulties of establishing, 173-174; lack of modern factories, 172-173; food processing, 175, *p* 175, *m* 173; metal, 177, *p* 177, *m* 173; processing of raw materials, 176, *p* 161; shoe, 177, *p* 174; and the standard of living, 177; textile, 176, *p* 22, 176, 207, 223, *m* 173. *See also* names of countries
- Inner Mongolia, 27, *m* 27. *See also* Mongolia
- International Date Line, 275, *m* 275
- Intramuros, Manila, 218, *p* 218
- Ipoh (ē'pō), Malaysia, 265, *m* 262
- Iran (i ran'), 40, 45, 46-47, 295, *p* 45, 46, *m* 40; capital, *p* 46; climate, 46; herding, 46, *p* 45; history, 46-47; land, 45; land reform program, 42; minerals, 46; people, 46-47, *p* 46
- Iraq (i rak'), 48, 295, *p* 42, *m* 40
- Iron ore, *see* Natural resources
- Irrawaddy (ir'ə wod'i) Delta, 95, 145, 182
- Irrawaddy River, 95, 181-182, 223, *p* 179, *m* 90
- Irrigation, 84; Iran, 46; South Asia, 51; Southeast Asia, 166; Soviet Middle Asia, 37; Tibet, 28
- Islam (is'lām), 85, 286-287, *m* 85; Afghanistan, 59; Arabian peninsula, 44; India,

- 53; Indonesia, 209; Malaysia, 262, 270; Philippines, 216; Sinkiang, 32; Southeast Asia, 117, 139, 197, *p* 117; Southwest Asia, 40, *p* 40; Soviet Middle Asia, 38
 Israel (iz'ri əl), 23, 40, 41, 48, 295, *p* 47, *m* 40
- Japan, 61, 68-70, 295, *p* 60, 69, 70, *m* 61; cities, *p* 70; farming, 23, 69, *p* 70; history, 68-69; homes, 70; in 1910, 19, *m* 19; industry, 68, 69, *p* 69, 77; land, 70, *p* 60, 70; people, 69, 70, *p* 70, 81; World War II, 69, 123, 125-126, *p* 126, *m* 124; after World War II, 19, 69
- Japanese, Burma, 225; Cambodia, 239; Indonesia, 209-210; Laos, 254-255; Thailand, 232; Vietnam, 242
- Java (jä'və), 98, 99-100, 206, 207, *p* 92, 99, 100, *m* 90, 206; communication, 207; farming, 144-145, 149; land, *p* 92, 99, 100; population density, 133; transportation, 185, 207
- Jews, 41
- Jogjakarta (jäg'yə kært'ə), Indonesia, 208-209, *m* 136
- Jordan (jôr'dən), 48, 295, *m* 40
- Judaism (jü'dä iz əm), 85, 287, *m* 85
- Kalimantan (kal ə man'tan'), 100, 206, 207, *m* 90, 206
- Kashmir (kash mēr'), 54, 287, *m* 50
- Khmer (kmer) Empire, 116, *p* 115, 116
- Khmers, 235, 239, 287
- Korea (kô rē'ə), 61, 70-72, *p* 72; climate, 72, 80; geographical differences between North and South, 72; governments, 71; history, 70-71; homes 72, *p* 72; in 1910, 19, *m* 19; people, 72, *p* 72; political differences between North and South, 71; religion, 72; after World War II, 70-71
- Korean War, 68, 71, *p* 71
- Kuala Lumpur (kwä'lə lüm'pür'), Malaysia, 259, 265, *p* 259, 265, *m* 90, 262
- Lake Balkhash (bäl kash'), 36-37, *m* 12
- Land, Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, 27-28, *p* 26-28; East Asia, 61, *p* 60, 65, 70; Indo-Chinese Peninsula, 94-95, *p* 94, 95; Indonesia, 98-102, *p* 99-101; Malay Peninsula, 96-97, *p* 96; Philippines, 103-104, *p* 103-105; island of Singapore, 97; South Asia, 50-51, *p* 49, 50, 55, 58; Southeast Asia, 92-105, *p* 92, 94-97, 99-105; Southwest Asia, 40, *p* 39, 44, 45; Soviet Asia, 35, 36-37, 38, *p* 33, 35. *See also* names of countries
- Languages, Arabic, 44; Bahasa Indonesia, 205; Chinese, 236, 267, 273; English, 216, 263, 267, 273; French, 236; Indo-European, 32; Khmer, 236; Lao, 137; Malay, 263, 267, 273; Spanish, 216; Tagalog, 216, 292; Tamil, 267, 273, 292; Turkic, 32; Vietnamese, 236. *See also* names of countries
- Lang Xang, 254
- Lao (lä'ö), 253, 254, 287
- Laos (lous), 88, 89, 252-256, *p* 253, 254, 256, *m* 90, 252; area, 252; capital, 252, *m* 252; cities, 253; climate, 252; communication, 253; Communists, 255; currency, 252; earning a living, 253; education, 256; farming, 253; farm products, 252; French control, 254, 255; government, 255-256; history, 254-255; income, 252; independence, 255; industry, 252; land, 252; language, 137; literacy, 252; natural resources, 252; neutral nation, 255; people, 137, 253, *p* 254; population, 252; rainfall, 252; religion, 139, 253; royal residence, 252; transportation, 253, *p* 253
- Latitude, 274-275, *m* 274
- Lebanon (leb'ə nən), 40-41, 48, 295, *m* 40
- Legaspi (lä gäs'pē), 120
- Legong, 198, *p* 198
- Leng Trot, 198
- Lesser Sunda (sən'də) Islands, 102, *m* 90-91
- Leyte (lä'ti), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Lhasa (lä'sə), Tibet, 29, *m* 13
- Line of Demarcation, 120, *m* 119
- Lombok (lom bok'), Indonesia, 137, *m* 90
- Longitude, 275, *m* 274
- Luang Prabang (lü äng'prə bäng'), 254
- Luzon (lü zon'), Philippines, 104, 214, *p* 103, 104, *m* 91, 215
- Madjapahit (mä jä pä'hit), 209
- Madura (mə dūr'ə), Indonesia, 193, 206, *m* 206
- Magellan, Ferdinand, 120, 218
- Magsaysay (mäg sī'sī), Ramón, 219-220, 287
- Makasar (mə kas'ər), Indonesia, *p* 101, *m* 136
- Malacca (mə lak'ə), Malaysia, 117, 119, 260, 265-266, *p* 266, *m* 119, 262
- Malacca, Strait of, 88, *m* 90
- Malaya (mə lä'ə), 257, 258, 262-267, *p* 263-267, *m* 262; area, 262; cities, 264, 265, *p* 265, 266, *m* 262; climate, 262; communication, 265; Communists, 267; currency, 262; earning a living, 263-264; education, 267, *p* 158, 267; Europeans control, 265-266; farm products, 262, 264; fishing, *p* 157,

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, äge, cäre, fär; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, püt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; tñen; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

- 158; government, 260-261; history, 265-267; income, 262; independence, 266, *p* 266; industry, 262, *p* 264; land, 262, *p* 96; languages, 263, 267; literacy, 262; becomes part of Malaysia, 258; natural resources, 162-163, 263, *p* 162, 163; people, 263, *p* 264, 266; population, 262; ports, 264, 265, *p* 266; rainfall, 262; regions, 263, 264; religion, 139, 263; rubber, 263, *p* 264; transportation, 264-265, *p* 265; after World War II, 266
- Malayan states, *see* Malaya
- Malay Peninsula, 287, *m* 93; climate, 111, *p* 111; land, 96-97, *p* 96
- Malays (mā'lās), Indonesia, 205; Malaysia, 258, 263, 270, *p* 269; Singapore, 257, 271; Thailand, 228, 229
- Malaysia (mə lā' zhə), 88, 89, 257-261, 295, *p* 18, 257-261, *m* 90-91; capital, 265, *p* 259, 265, *m* 90; courts, 261; government, 260-261, *p* 258-261; history, 257-259; language, 263; relations with the world, 259-260; sports, 193. *See also* Malaya, Sabah, and Sarawak
- Mandalay, Burma, 224, *m* 136
- Manila, Philippines, 136, 186, 217-218, *p* 123, 217, 218, *m* 136
- Manufacturing, *see* Industry in Southeast Asia
- Mao Tse-tung (mä'ō dzu'dung), 287
- Map projections, equal area, 277; gnomonic, 277, 285, *m* 277; Mercator, 277, *m* 276
- Maps, relief, 278-279, *m* 278, 279; scale, 274; special purpose, 278, *m* 278; topographic, 279, *m* 279. *See also* List of Maps on page 5 and references to maps (indicated by *m*) under various related topics
- Map skills, 274-279, *m* 274-279
- Maracanda, *see* Samarkand
- Marine Fisheries School, 157
- Masbate (mäs bät'ē), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Mekong (mā kong') River, 95, 155, 234, 237, 253, *p* 253, *m* 90
- Mekong River Delta, 245, *p* 95
- Mercator (mēr kā'tər) projection, 277, *m* 276
- Meridians, 275, *m* 274
- Mindanao (min'də nă'ō), Philippines, 104, 214, *p* 105, *m* 91, 215
- Mindoro (min dô'rō), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Minerals, *see* Natural resources
- Mogul (mō'gul) Empire, 53, 287-288
- Moguls, 53
- Mohammed (mō ham'id), 44, 139, 288
- Moluccas (mə luk'əz), 102, 120, 288, *m* 91, 119
- Mongkut (mông'küt), 232
- Mongol (mong'gəl) Empire, 27
- Mongolia, 29, 32, *p* 29
- Mongolian People's Republic, 27, 295, *m* 27. *See also* Mongolia
- Mongoloids (mong'gəl oidz), 29, 61, 288
- Mongols, 27, 38, 288
- Monsoons, 51, 108, 110, 288
- Moslems (moz'ləmz), 53, 54, 58, 59, 119, 139, 205, 229, 288, *p* 139. *See also* Islam
- Mosques (mosks), 139, 288, *p* 117
- Moulmein (mül măn'), Burma, 224, *m* 136
- Mount Mayon (mä yōn'), Philippines, *p* 212
- Nam Viet, 241
- Nasser (näs'ər), Gamal Abdel, 42-43, 45, 288
- Nationalist government of China, 65, 283. *See also* Nationalists
- Nationalists, China, 64-65, 68
- Natural resources, bauxite, 164, *m* 160; chromium, 46, 164, *m* 160; coal, 14, 28, 35, 46, 56, 66, 164-165, *m* 160; control by Westerners, 160-161; copper, 46; copra, 88; fish, 35, 154-157; forests, 14, 35, 45, 56, 159, 166-168, *p* 33, 166-169, *m* 149; gold, 164, *m* 160; iron ore, 28, 46, 56, 66, 164, *m* 160; lead, 164, *m* 160; manganese, 164, 287, *m* 160; petroleum, 14, 28, 38, 42, 45, 46, 88, 159, 164, *p* 14, 42, 66, 164, *m* 160; phosphates, 164, 289, *m* 160; precious stones, 164, *m* 160; rivers, 14, 35, 56, 66, 95, 159; rubber, 88; teak, *p* 222; tin, 14, 66, 88, 159, 162-163, *p* 162, 163, *m* 160; tungsten, 14, 66, 293; water-power, 165-166, *p* 165. *See also* names of countries
- Negritos (ni grē'tōz), 216, 288
- Negros (nā'grōs), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Nepal (nə pōl'), 53, 58, 59, 295, *p* 58, *m* 50
- Netherlands East Indies, *m* 19. *See also* Indonesia
- New Guinea (gin'ī), 98, 101-102, *p* 102, *m* 91
- New Year's, 189-190, *p* 189
- Ngo Dinh Diem (nō din zim), 242-243, 244, 250
- Nile River Valley, 84
- Nipa (nē'pə) palms, 168, *p* 168
- North Borneo, *see* Sabah
- North Korea, 295, *m* 61. *See also* Korea
- North Pole, 274, 275, *m* 274
- North Vietnam (vē et'nām'), 88, 89, *m* 90; area, 243; capital, 248, *p* 250, *m* 241; Communists, 243-244, 250-251; currency, 243; earning a living, 247-248; education, 251; farming, 144-145, 247-248; farm products, 243; government, 250-251; income, 243; industry, 243, 248; land, *p* 94; literacy, 243; natural resources, 243; population, 243; population density, 133. *See also* Vietnam
- Novosibirsk (nō'vō sə birsk'), Siberia, 36, *p* 36, *m* 12
- Ottomans (ot'ə mənɹ), 44. *See also* Turks
- Pagan (pə gän'), Burma, 224, *m* 136

- Pagodas, 139, 224, *p* 224
- Pakistan (pak'ə stan), 54, 57-58, 295, *m* 50; cities, *p* 58; divisions, 57; land, 57; people, 57-58, *p* 58; population density, 57; religion, 58; member of SEATO, 58
- Palawan (pə lä'wən), Philippines, 104, 214, *m* 90-91, 215
- Palestine (pal'is tīn), *see* Israel
- Panay (pä nī'), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
- Pandan leaves, 171
- Parallels, 275, *m* 274
- Pathet Lao, 255
- Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, 123
- Pedicabs, 184, *p* 184
- Penang (pi nang'), Malaysia, 265, 289, *m* 262
- People, Arabs, 40, 41, 44, 47, 48, 84, 205, 281, *p* 41; Armenians, 38; Aryans, 52, 281, *p* 52; Azerbaidzhans, 38; Bedouins, 43; Burmans, 222; Cambodians, 228, 235, 246; Chams, 245; Chinese, 32, 116-117, 137, 157, 205, 216, 222, 228, 235, 238, 246, 253, 257, 258, 259, 263, 264, 270, 271, *p* 62, 67, 137; Dravidians, 52; Dyaks, 270, 284; early Southeast Asians, 115; Eurasians, 271; French, 245; Georgians, 38; Indians, 59, 115, 205, 222, 228, 246, 263, 271; Indo-European, 47; Japanese, 70; Jews, 41; Karens, 225; Kha, 137; Khmers, 116, 235, 239, 287, *p* 115; Lao, 253, 254, 287; Malays, 205, 216, 228, 229, 258, 263, 270, 271, *p* 269; Man, 137; Meo, 137; migrations, *m* 114; Moguls, 53; Mongoloids, 29, 61; Mongols, 27, 38; Moros, 216, 288; Negritos, 216, 288; Pakistanis, 263; Slavs, 36, 37-38; Spaniards, 216; Thai, 116, 228, 231, 292-293; Turkic, 38, 47; Uzbeks, *p* 37; Vietnamese, 235, 236, 238, 245, 253; Westerners, 121-122, 127, 160-161. *See also* names of countries
- People's Republic of China, 65. *See also* China
- Persia (pér'zhə), 289. *See also* Iran
- Persians (pér'zhənz), 47, 48, 289
- Peshawar (pe shä'wər), West Pakistan, *p* 58
- Petroleum, *see* Natural resources
- Philippines (fil'ə pēnz), 88, 89, 212-220, *p* 212, 213, 216-220, *m* 90-91, 93, 124, 215; area, 212; capital, 218, *m* 215; cities, 136, 217-218, *p* 113, 217-219, *m* 136, 215; climate, 112, 212, *p* 112, 113, 213; communication, 217; crafts, *p* 170; currency, 212; earning a living, 216-217, *p* 216; education, 130, 220, *p* 220; farming, 104, 216, *p* 104, 144, 216; farm products, 212, *p* 151, 153; festivals, *p* 188; government, 220; history, 218-220, *p* 121, 125, 127; income, 212; independence, 219, *p* 127; industry, 212, 216-217, *p* 175; islands of, 214; land, 103-104, 212, *p* 103-105, 212, 216; languages, 216; literacy, 212; opposition to Malaysia, 258; natural resources, 212, 216; people, 216, *p* 213; population, 212; rainfall, 212; religion, 141, 216, *p* 141, 188; and SEATO, 220; sports, 192, *p* 194; transportation, 217; World War II, *p* 123, 125
- Phnom Penh (pə nôm'pen'), Cambodia, 186, 237, 238, *p* 237, *m* 136, 234
- Ping River, 165, 231
- Plantations, Ceylon, 59, *p* 59; pepper, *p* 118; rubber, 59, 150, 236; Southeast Asia, 100, 145, 148, 150, *p* 145, 150, *m* 149; tea, 59, *p* 59, 145
- Plowing of the Holy Furrow, *p* 191
- Polo, Marco, 85
- Population, Asia, 15; Brunei, 268; Burma, 221; Cambodia, 234; China, 68; Chinese in Southeast Asia, 137; growth, 16, 17; Indonesia, 204, 205; islands of Indonesia, 206; Laos, 252; Malaya, 262; North Vietnam, 243; Philippines, 212; islands of the Philippines, 214; Sabah, 268; Sarawak, 268; Singapore, 271; Southeast Asia, 89, 132, 133; South Vietnam, 243; Taiwan, 65; Thailand, 227; United States, 132; West New Guinea, 205; world, 16, 17; world distribution, 16; *m* 16-17. *See also* Appendix, Population density, and names of cities
- Population density, Arabian peninsula, 43; Ceylon, 59; East Asia, 61; East Pakistan, 57; Eurasia, *m* 138; Java, 133; North Vietnam, 133; South Asia, 51; Southeast Asia, 132, 133, *m* 138; Thailand, 133
- Ports, Burma, 224; Cambodia, 237; Hong Kong, 64, *p* 64; Indonesia, 157, 208; Malaya, 264, 265, *p* 266; North Vietnam, 249; Philippines, 217-218, *p* 217; Singapore, 97, 272, *p* 272; Southeast Asia, 136; South Vietnam, 249; Thailand, 230
- Port Swettenham, Malaysia, 264, *m* 262
- Portuguese, in Indonesia, 209; in Malaya, 266; in Southeast Asia, 118-119, 120; in Thailand, 232
- Portuguese Timor, 19, 98, *m* 19
- Quezon (kā'sôn) City, Philippines, 218, *m* 215
- Quinine, 152

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, āge, cāre, fār; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, pūt, rûle, ūse; child; long; thin; tñen; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

- Raffles, Sir Stamford, 272-273
 Rahman, Tunku Abdul, 258, *p* 258
 Rainfall, Chinese and Mongolian Middle Asia, 27; South Asia, 51; Southeast Asia, 107, 108, 110, 111, 112, *m* 109; Southwest Asia, 40; world, 30-31, *m* 30-31. *See also* names of Southeast Asian countries
 Ramayana (rā mā'yə nə), 198, 200, 290
 Rangoon, Burma, 95, 180-181, 224, *p* 181, *m* 136
 Rattan (ra tan'), 168, 290
 Raw materials, 152, 161, *p* 159
 Red China, 68. *See also* China
 Red River, 95, 248, *m* 90
 Red River Delta, 95, 144-145, 245, 248
 Religion, ancestor worship, 140, 281; animism, 141, 236, 246, 253, 270, 281, *p* 142; Buddhism, 29, 52-53, 58, 59, 72, 85, 139-140, 197, 209, 222, 229, 236, 246, 253, 262, *p* 140, *m* 85; Cao Dai, 243, 246, 282, *p* 246; Christianity, 41, 59, 72, 85, 119, 121, 140-141, 216, 218, 246, 262, *m* 85; Confucianism, 72, 140, 246, 262; Hinduism, 52, 56, 58, 59, 85, 137, 197, 209, 263, 286, *p* 52, *m* 85; Hoa Hao, 243, 246, 286; Islam, 32, 38, 40, 44, 53, 59, 85, 117, 139, 197, 209, 216, 262, 270, 286-287, *p* 40, 117, *m* 85; Judaism, 85, 287, *m* 85; Roman Catholicism, 141, 197, 216, 236, 243, 246, *p* 141, 188; Shinto, 291; Taoism, 246, 262, 292. *See also* names of countries
 Revolution of rising expectations, 18, 21, 290
 Rice, China, 66; India, 55, 56, *p* 56; Southeast Asia, 97, 143, 145, 147-148, 149, 175, 236, *p* 92, 147, 205, 228, *m* 149
 Rivers, Brahmaputra, 50, *m* 13; Chao Phraya, 230, *m* 90; Euphrates, 47, *m* 12; Ganges, 50, *m* 13; Indus, 50, *m* 13; Irrawaddy, 95, 181-182, 223, *p* 179, *m* 90; Mekong, 95, 155, 234, 237, 253, *p* 253, *m* 90; Red, 95, 248, *m* 90; Saigon, 249; Tigris, 47, *m* 12
 Roman Catholicism, Cambodia, 236; Philippines, 141, 197, 216, *p* 141, 188; Vietnam, 243, 246
 Rubber, 88, 97, 143, 145, 148, 149, 150, 236, *p* 150, 159, 161, 264, *m* 149
 Russia, 21, 27, 290. *See also* Soviet Union
 Russian Empire, 19, *m* 19
 Sabah, 257, 258, 260, 261, 268-270, 290, *m* 268
 Saigon (sī gon'), South Vietnam, 95, 248-249, *p* 128, 129, 189, 249, *m* 136, 241
 Saigon River, 249
 Samar (sä'mär), Philippines, 214, *m* 215
 Samarkand (sam'ər kand'), Soviet Union, 34
 Sarawak (sə rä'wäk), 257, 258, 260, 261, 268-270, *m* 268
 Saudi (sä ü'di) Arabia, 44, 295, *p* 44, *m* 40; petroleum, *p* 14
 Schools, *see* Education and names of Southeast Asian countries
 SEATO, *see* Southeast Asia Treaty Organization
 Selamatan, 191
 Shinpyu, 190
 Shinto, 291
 Shwe Dagon (shwä'dä gön') Pagoda, 85, 197, 224, 291, *p* 224
 Siam (sī am') 231-232, *m* 19. *See also* Thailand
 Siberia (sī bër'i ə), 34-36, *p* 33, 35, 36, *m* 34
 Sihanouk (sē'hə nük), 239-240
 Sihanoukville, Cambodia, 237, *m* 234
 Sikkim (sik'im), 58, 59, 291, 295, *m* 50
 Singapore (sing'gə pôr'), 258-259, 271-273, *p* 135, 272, 273, *m* 271
 Singapore (city), 97, 186, 272, *p* 97, 272, *m* 271
 Sinkiang (sin'kyäng'), 27, 32, *p* 32, *m* 27
 Sinkiang-Uighur (sin'kyäng'-wē'gər) Autonomous Region, *see* Sinkiang
 Sisavang Vong (sē'sə wän wông), *p* 256
 Slavs, 36, 37-38, 291
 Souphanouvong, 255
 South Arabia, 19, 291, 295; *m* 40
 South Asia, 24, 49-59, *p* 49-59, *m* 24-25, 50; British influence, 53-54; climate, 51; Communist aggression, 54, *p* 54; problems of independence, 54; land, 50-51, *p* 49, 50, 55, 56, 58; nationalist movement, 53-54; people, 51, 52, *p* 20, 51, 55-58; population density, 51; problem of poverty, 54-55
 Southeast Asia, 24, 87-273, *m* 25, 90-91; aid from other nations, 128-129, *p* 129; arts, 195-202, *p* 195-202; changes brought by Westerners, 121-122; Chinese influence, 116-117; cities, 95, 97, 135, 136, *p* 97, 135, 181, 184, 208, 217, 219, 237, 249, 250, 259, 265, 266, 272, *m* 136; climate, 106-113, *p* 106, 108, 110-113, *m* 107, 109; and the Cold War, 89; colonial period, 118-122, *p* 118, 121, *m* 124; communication, 187, *p* 187; Communists, 89, 128; differences in countries, 88; similarities of countries, 88; crafts, 171-172, *p* 170-172; early history, 115-117, *p* 115-117, *m* 114; early people, 115, *m* 114; early trade, 115, 117; earning a living, 133, 145, 173; economic dependency on outsiders, 161-162; education, 130, *p* 130; empires, 115-116; Europeans in, 118-120, *m* 124; exports, 143, 145, 147-148, 149, 150, 152, 156, 161, 164, 166, 167, 181, *p* 159, 167, 222; farming, 97, 100, 104, 143-153, *p* 23, 92, 104, 143-148, 150-153, *m* 149; farming methods, 145-146, *p* 146-148; farming problems, 145-147; festivals, 189-191, *p* 188-191; fishing, 154-158, *p* 154-158; forest products, 166, 167, 168, *p* 167; forests, 106, 166-168, *p* 166-169, *m* 149;

- geographical divisions, 93, *m* 93; health, 130, 133; history, 114-131, *p* 115-118, 121-123, 125-130, *m* 114, 119, 124; hydroelectricity, 165-166, *p* 165; imports, 161, 176, 177, 181; in 1910, 124, *m* 124; in 1942, *m* 124; independence, 122-129, *p* 122, 127, *m* 124; problems of independence, 126-128, 129; independent countries, 88; Indian culture, 115; industry, 161, 172-177, *p* 161, 174-178, *m* 173; under Japanese, 125-126, *m* 124; land, 92-105, *p* 92, 94-97, 99-105; land bridges, 99, *m* 98; mineral resources, *m* 160; natural resources, 88, 159-169, *p* 162-169; overview, 88-89; people, 132-142, *p* 132-135, 137, 139-142; plantations, 145, 148, 150, *p* 145, 150, *m* 149; population, 89; population density, 132, 133, 138, *m* 138; ports, 97, 136, 157, 180-181, 208, 217-218, 230, 237, 249, 264, 265, 272-273, *p* 181, 217, 266, 272; rainfall, 107, 108, 110, 111, 112, *m* 109; recreation and sports, 191-193, *p* 192-194; religion, 117, 119, 121, 137, 139-141, *p* 117, 139-142; rivers, 95, *m* 90-91; temperature, 106-107, *chart* 107; trade routes, 118-119, 120, *m* 119; transportation, 180-186, *p* 179-186, *m* 182, 185, 186; travel routes, 88-89; United States in, 120; vegetation, 106, *p* 106; volcanoes, 99-100, *p* 100, *m* 93; World War II, 123, 124, 125, *m* 124. *See also* names of Southeast Asian countries
- Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO), 58, 220, 232, 291
- South Korea, 295, *m* 61. *See also* Korea
- South Pole, 274, 275, *m* 274
- South Vietnam (vē et'nām'), 88, 89, *m* 90; area, 243; capital, 248, 249, *p* 249, *m* 136, 241; Communists, 243-244; crafts, *p* 171; currency, 243; earning a living, 246-247; education, 251; farming, 148, 246; farm products, 243; festivals, 189-190, *p* 189; government, 250; history, 242-244; income, 243; independence, 243; industry, 243, 247; literacy, 243; natural resources, 243; population, 17, 243. *See also* Vietnam
- Southwest Asia, 24, 39-48, *p* 39-42, 44-48, *m* 24, 40, 43; Cold War, 43; land, 40, *p* 39; location, 40; minerals, 42, *p* 14, 42; people, 40-41, *p* 41, 44, 46, 48; political differences, 41; problem of poverty, 41-42; approaches to solving poverty, 42-43; religion, 40-41, *p* 40; importance in world affairs, 43
- Souvanna Phouma, (sü wän'nä pü'mä), 255
- Soviet Asia, 24, 33-38, *p* 33, 35-38, *m* 24-25, 34
- Soviet Middle Asia, 31, 34, 36-38, *p* 23, 37, *m* 34
- Soviet Union, 19, 32, 34, 35, 36, 38, 43, 64, 68, 71, 83, 174, 295, *m* 34
- Spanish, 216, 218
- Spice Islands, *see* Moluccas
- Spices, 118
- Standard of living, Asia, 14, 23; Australia, 80; developed countries, 75, 296; Netherlands, 80; Switzerland, 80; Taiwan, 65; underdeveloped countries, 75, 297
- Straits Settlements, 273, 291
- Suez (sü ez') Canal, 40, 291
- Sukarno (sü kär'nō), 210, 211, 291-292, *p* 122
- Sulawesi (sü'lə wā'sē), *see* Celebes
- Sulu (sü'lü) Archipelago, Philippines, 104, 216, *m* 91, 215
- Sumatra (sü mǎ'trə), 98, 99, 100, 206, 207, *p* 100, *m* 90, 206
- Sumerians (sü mēr'i ənz), 84, 292
- Sun Yat-sen (sün'yāt'sen'), 292
- Surabaya (sü'rā bā'yä), Indonesia, 208, *m* 136
- Synthetics, 152
- Syria (sir'i ə), 48, 295, *m* 40
- Taiga (tī'gə), 35, 36, *p* 33
- Taiwan (tī'wän'), 65, 295, *p* 65, *m* 61
- Taj Mahal (täj'mə hä'l'), 85, *p* 84
- Taoism (tou'iz əm), 292; Malaya, 262; Singapore, 271; Vietnam, 246
- Tari Piring, 198
- Teak, 167, *p* 167, 222
- Temple of the Emerald Buddha, 230-231, *p* 230
- Temples, 139, 196, 197, 238, *p* 117, 196, 224, 230, 238, 246
- Tenasserim (tə nas'er im), 221, 224, *m* 221
- Tet, *see* New Year's
- Thai (tī), 228, 292-293
- Thailand, 88, 89, 227-233, *p* 228-233, *m* 90, 227; area, 227; arts, *p* 200; capital, 230-231, *p* 230, *m* 90; cities, 184, 229, 230-231, *p* 184, 230, *m* 136; climate, 228; communication, 230; currency, 227; dams, *p* 165; earning a living, 229, *p* 228, 229; education, 233, *p* 233; farming, 147-148, 229, *p* 143, 228, 229; farm products, 227, 228; fishing, *p* 155; forests, *p* 166; government, 232-233, *p* 232; health, *p* 130; history, 231-232; homes, 133-134, *p* 133; income, 227; industry, 227, 229, *p* 22, 175-177; land, 227; literacy, 227; natural resources, 228; people, 134, 135, 228-229, *p* 132, 135, 140, 142; population, 227; population density, 133;

PRONUNCIATION KEY: hat, äge, cäre, fär; let, ēqual, tērm; it, īce; hot, ōpen, ôrder; oil, out; cup, püt, rüle, ūse; child; long; thin; then; zh, measure; ə represents a in about, e in taken, i in pencil, o in lemon, u in circus. For the complete key, see page 280.

- rainfall, 228; regions, 227, 228, *m* 227; religion, 139, 141, 229, *p* 140, 142; SEATO, 232; sports, 192, *p* 192; transportation, 229-230, *p* 180, 182, 184-186
- Tibet (ti bet'), 27, 28-29, *p* 28; *m* 27
- Tien Shan (tyen'shän'), 32, 36, 293, *p* 32, *m* 12
- Tigris (tī'gris) River, 47, *m* 12
- Timor (tē'môr), 88, *m* 91
- Tin, 88, 159, 162-163, *p* 162, 163, *m* 160
- Tokyo (tō'ki ō), Japan, *p* 70, *m* 12
- Tonle Sap (tän'lā'sap') River, 155, *m* 234
- Transcaucasia (trans'kô kâ-zhə), 34, 38, *p* 38, *m* 34
- Transpiration, 109, 293
- Transportation in Southeast Asia, airways, 186, *p* 186, *m* 186; railroads, 184-185, *p* 185, *m* 185; roads, 182-184, *p* 182, 183, *m* 182; streets, 184, *p* 184; water, 180-182, *p* 179-181. *See also* names of Southeast Asian countries
- Turkey, 40, 43, 45-47, 295, *m* 40; climate, 45-46; farming, 46; herding, 46; history, 46-47; land, 45-46, *p* 39; minerals, 46; people, 46-47, *p* 46; religion, *p* 40
- Turkic, 32, 38, 47, 293
- Turkish Empire, 19, 44, 48, *m* 19
- Turks, 44, 47, 48
- Typhoons (tī fūnz'), 112
- Underdeveloped countries, 67, 74-83, 86, 293, 296-297, *p* 74, 82, 83, *m* 296-297; attitude of the people, 80-81; causes of underdevelopment, 77, 80-81, 86; climate as a factor, 80; colonialism as a factor, 80; Communist solution to problems, 82; non-Communist solution to problems, 83; differences between developed and underdeveloped countries, 75-76, 296; farming methods, *p* 74; living conditions, 76-77; population growth, 86; production methods, 75, 76; race inferiority as a factor, 77, 80; reasons for helping, 86; insufficient resources as a factor, 80
- UNESCO, 130, 293
- United Arab Republic, 42, 293, 295. *See also* Egypt
- United Nations, 54, 68, 71, 174, 293; Food and Agriculture Organization, 78, *p* 83
- United States, 64, 65, 68, 69; aid to Cambodia, 237; aid to Southeast Asia, 128-129, 174, *p* 129; aid to underdeveloped countries, 83; Korean War, 71; Philippines, 218-219; Southwest Asia, 43; Thailand, 232; Vietnam, 129, 242, 244; World War II, 125
- Ural (ūr'əl) Mountains, 11, *m* 12
- Urumchi (ù rùm'chē), China, 32
- Uzbeks (uz'beks), *p* 37
- Vientiane (vyaN'tyän'), Laos, 253, *m* 252
- Viet Cong, 244
- Vietminh (vē et'min'), 242, 255, *p* 242
- Vietnam (vē et'näm'), 241-251, *p* 242, 244, 246-251, *m* 241; Chinese influence, 140; Chinese rule, 241; cities, 248-250, *p* 249, 250, *m* 241; climate, 245; communication, 248; Communists, 242, 243-244; a divided country, 242; earning a living, 246-248; education, 251, *p* 251; farming, 246, 247-248, *p* 247; farm products, 247; French control, 241, 242; governments, 250-251; history, 116-117, 241-244, *p* 242; independence, 242; industry, 247, 248; land, 245, *p* 94, 244; natural resources, 245; people, 245-246, *p* 140; rainfall, 245; regions, 245, 247; religion, 139-140, 246, *p* 246; transportation, 248, *p* 248
- Vietnamese, in Cambodia, 235, 236, 238; in Laos, 253; in Vietnam, 245
- Vietnamese Independence League, *see* Vietminh
- Vietnamese Workers Party, 250-251
- Visayas (vi sǎ'yəz), Philippines, 103, *m* 91
- Volcanoes, 99-100, 102, 144, *p* 100, *m* 93
- Waterpower, 165-166, *p* 165
- Wayang kulit, 199-200
- Westerners, 77, 81, 89; in Cambodia, 236; in East Asia, 61, 63, *p* 63; in Indonesia, 205; in Japan, 68; in Laos, 253; in Malaysia, 263, 270; in Southeast Asia, 118-122, 127, 160-161; in Thailand, 232
- West Irian, 98, *m* 91. *See also* West New Guinea
- West New Guinea (gin'i), 88, 98, 101-102, 124, 204, 210, 295, *m* 91, 124
- World food consumption, 78-79, *m* 78-79
- World time zones, 275, *m* 275
- World War II, 294; Cambodia, 239; China, 64; Laos, 254-255; Southeast Asia, 123, 125-126, *p* 123, 125, 126; Thailand, 232; Vietnam, 242
- Yang di-Pertuan Agong, 260, *p* 260
- Yemen (yem'an), 45, 295, *m* 40

DATE DUE SLIP

NOV 18 RETURN	DUE EDUC OCT 09 '87
EDUC MR 18 '89	DUE EDUC OCT 21 '87
DUE EDUC MAR 25 '80	DUE EDUC OCT 28 '87
MAR 22 RETURN	NOV 02 RETURN
DUE EDUC OCT 18 '83	DUE EDUC JAN 18 '88
MA RETURN OCT 18 '83	JAN 13 RETURN
	RETURN NOV 07 '98
DUE EDUC JUN 13 '84	
JUN 14 RETURN	
DUE EDUC NOV 10 '86	
NOV 08 RETURN	
DUE EDUC JAN 13 '87	
JAN 07 RETURN	
DUE EDUC SEP 23 '87	
SEP 30 RETURN	
F255	

DS 508-2 W82 1966
WITHINGTON WILLIAM A
ASIA WITH FOCUS ON SOUTHEAST
ASIA

40801861 CURR



000030608350

RECOMMENDED FOR USE
IN ALBERTA SCHOOLS

R

2039245

DS
508.2
W82
1966
U of A

Withington, W.A.
Asia.

EDUCATION CURR.

B14689

